
By R. Lee Hadden

Topographic Engineering Center
Engineer Research and Development Center (ERDC)
US Army Corps of Engineers
7701 Telegraph Road
Alexandria, Virginia 22315

UNCLASSIFIED / UNLIMITED
Guadalcanal

This page left blank
Guadalcanal

REPORT DOCUMENTATION PAGE

Public reporting burden for this collection of information is estimated to average 1 hour per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing this collection of information. Send comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden to Department of Defense, Washington Headquarters Services, Directorate for Information Operations and Reports (0704-0188), 1215 Jefferson Davis Highway, Suite 1204, Arlington, VA 22202-4302. Respondents should be aware that notwithstanding any other provision of law, no person shall be subject to any penalty for failing to comply with a collection of information if it does not display a currently valid OMB control number. PLEASE DO NOT RETURN YOUR FORM TO THE ABOVE ADDRESS.

1. REPORT DATE 02-2007

2. REPORT TYPE: Bibliography


6. AUTHOR(S) HADDEN, Robert Lee

7. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES)
US Army Corps of Engineers
Topographic Engineering Center
1201 Telegraph Road
Alexandria, VA 22315-3864
ATTN: CEERD-TO-I

9. SPONSORING / MONITORING AGENCY NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES)
Geospatial Information Library (GIL)
7701 Telegraph Road
Alexandria, VA 22315-3864

12. DISTRIBUTION / AVAILABILITY STATEMENT
Unclassified/Unlimited

13. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES:

14. ABSTRACT
This bibliography on the geographical, water and geological information of Guadalcanal was begun to fill a request for current information needed for the forensics recovery of the bodies of the US Marines of the Lt Col. Frank B. Goettge Reconnaissance patrol that was ambushed in August 1942.

Part I of this report is a bibliography of the geology, geography and natural history of the island.

Part II is a bibliography on the history of the island, including accounts of the Battle of Guadalcanal. This bibliography brings together selected citations from a variety of different cartographic, geographical, geological and hydrological resources and a number of specialized library collections. Most of the citations have location information on where these items can be located and either used on site, or borrowed through inter-library loan, or where copies of the items can be purchased from the originating source, or through commercial document delivery services.


16. SECURITY CLASSIFICATION OF:
   a. REPORT
   b. ABSTRACT
   c. THIS PAGE

   Unclassified

   Unlimited

   Unlimited

17. LIMITATION OF ABSTRACT
   Unlimited

18. NUMBER OF PAGES
   359

History of Guadalcanal

Introduction

During Memorial Day weekend of 2007, the US Army Corps of Engineer’s Topographic Engineering Center (TEC), part of the Engineer Research and Development Center (ERDC), was asked by the US Marine Corps to supply period and modern maps, imagery and current geological data about the island of Guadalcanal in the Solomons. The data are to support the expedition team of Doug Drumheller\(^1\), John Innes\(^2\) and Tom McLeod\(^3\), who will search for the bodies of the missing Goettge Reconnaissance Patrol. They will also search for the remains of twenty year-old Pvt. Robert J. Budd and eighteen year old Pvt. Thomas W. Phillips, two marines who were both killed in action on Guadalcanal on August 27, 1942.

As stated in their preliminary report, “The purpose of the 2007 Guadalcanal Expedition was to survey two potential MIA August 1942 recovery areas. The main project area involves a search for the remains of the massacred Goettge Patrol. The second project is to locate the Budd/Phillips MIA remains located west of Honiara. Successful surveys were made of both areas.”\(^4\)

Lieutenant Colonel Frank B. Goettge led a reconnaissance patrol of twenty-five US Marines on the island of Guadalcanal on August 12, 1942. The purpose of the mission was to investigate allegations that a number of Japanese forces were willing to surrender to the Americans. The patrol was ambushed, and only three survivors made it back to the American base at Henderson Field.

This doomed patrol was described in one book, “First Offensive: The Marine Campaign for Guadalcanal”, when the author, Henry I. Shaw, Jr., stated: “A captured enemy naval rating, taken in the constant patrolling to the west of the perimeter, indicated that a Japanese group wanted to surrender near the village of Kokumbona, seven miles west of the Matanikau. This was the area that Lieutenant Colonel Goettge considered held most of the enemy troops who had fled the airfield. On the night of 12 August, a reconnaissance patrol of 25 men led by Goettge himself

---

\(^1\) In 1994, Mr. Drumheller retired after a 30-year career with Westinghouse Electric Corporation. Mr. Drumheller held engineering and management positions in electronics, manufacturing, systems engineering and project management. After retirement, he started and operated a small business-consulting firm, which provided computer and business systems to restaurants and small retail businesses. Mr. Drumheller currently spends his time supporting WW-II MIA Pacific recovery activities with historical research, photography, plus computing and mapping skills.

\(^2\) Mr. Innes is a native of Brisbane, Australia; however, he resides on Guadalcanal nine months a year where he operates a company supplying computer hardware and software to the Solomon Island government. John spends his spare time searching for MIAs, conducting WW-II tours and preserving the history of Guadalcanal. Historians recognize John as, “Mr. Guadalcanal”. The team is fortunate to have a man of John’s caliber on site to coordinate the recovery activities, without John, recoveries would be virtually impossible. In 2005, Mr. Innes had the honor of escorting retired Marine Corps Commandant Mike Hagee during his visit to Guadalcanal.

\(^3\) Mr. McLeod is a noted author, WW-II Pacific historian, staff writer for the Old Breed News, and Historian for the 1\(^{st}\) Marine Division Association. Tom owns and operates a research museum, the “Museum of the Pacific” ([www.museumpacific.com](http://www.museumpacific.com)), in Texas. Besides his many other activities he is an advisor to the Marine Corps Museum and Marine Corps University. Mr. McLeod appears regularly on the History, Discovery and Military channels and has served as an advisor to movie production companies such as Eastwood Productions, Flight 33-TV and Greystone Productions. Tom regularly leads historical tours to Guadalcanal and New Guinea searching for and recovering Marine Corps MIAs. He is a member of The Company of Military Historians.

left the perimeter by landing craft. The patrol landed near its objective, was ambushed, and virtually wiped out. Only three men managed to swim and wade back to the Marine lines. The bodies of the other members of the patrol were never found. To this day, the fate of the Goettge patrol continues to intrigue researchers."

The fate of the Americans left behind is still unknown today. The Japanese forces who buried the bodies were themselves killed during the ensuing battle of Guadalcanal, and the location of the graves have never been discovered.

The members of the 2007 Guadalcanal Expedition were able to further describe what they have learned from their research about the fate of the missing Goettge Patrol. Combing through the reports and communications from the period in different archives and libraries, they are able to piece together some of the conflicting accounts of the conflict. In their report, they state:

United States Marines landed on Guadalcanal, in the Solomon Islands, on 7 August 1942, which began a four-year trek to Tokyo to revenge a Japanese surprise attack on Pearl Harbor. The 1st Marine Division’s Intelligence Section received reports on 10 August indicating that a group of Japanese construction workers, on the west bank of the Mataniko River, wanted to surrender due to a lack of food and medicine. Colonel Frank Goettge, Division Chief of Intelligence, received permission to land a 25-man humanitarian patrol west of the Mataniko River.

Colonel Goettge’s Patrol boarded a landing craft and departed the Marine perimeter around 7:30 PM on 12 August. Unable to see landmarks because of the moonless pitch-black night, Colonel Goettge also ordered the landing craft to return to the perimeter. Unknown to the patrol, freshly landed Japanese troops had established a beachhead defense in the landing area. The Japanese massacred the Goettge Patrol, except for three enlisted men ordered to swim to Marine lines for help.

Japanese records indicate they beheaded five Marines and disposed of their remains in the ocean. The Japanese buried the remaining seventeen Marines, along with seven Japanese, in four trenches. On 18 August, the Marines reconnoitered the area finding visual evidence of the ill-fated Goettge Patrol. Due to increasing Japanese forces, headquarters ordered the reconnaissance patrol to return to base after destroying the area but without an extensive survey of the burial location.

The Mataniko River area became a major fighting area during the period of September to December 1942. To date, there are no records indicating recovery of any remains of any member of the patrol. One of the remaining mysteries of WW-II is the disappearance of the ill-fated Goettge Patrol.

There have been several attempts to locate the patrol remains during the past twenty years... Over the last decade scientists and technologists have developed

---

ground radar and high-resolution resistivity equipment to detect abnormalities in the ground including the location of gravesites. Experts in this field believe that this technology can locate the trenches. Forensic scientists and anthropologists have indicated that the remains should contain sufficient DNA to allow for identification.

In December 2006, a team member discovered an excellent reconnaissance photograph of the Goettge Patrol landing area dated “18 August 1942”. Somewhere in this photograph are the trenches containing the remains of the Goettge Patrol.⁶

The 2007 Guadalcanal Expedition wanted all the information available concerning the area of interest from TEC. They wanted water and geological data, topology, drainage, soil, agricultural patterns and crops, geographic data such as roads and buildings, and historical data as well. Special interest was centered on the area of the missing patrol east of Guadalcanal’s capital, Honiara.

Much of this data had been collected years ago by the Allied forces during the engagement and immediately after the battles in 1942 and 1943. Other data had been collected by British and Australian scientists when the island group were a British Protectorate, and before the Solomon Island’s independence on July 7, 1978.

This support effort has been expanded to cover the natural history of the island to further help the researchers, and extended again to cover the history of the island, particularly personal accounts of the battle of Guadalcanal. Such data can be mined for information relating to buildings and terrain experienced by the troops, which may give clues to the locations of landmarks and sites useful in discovering the missing marines.

After their return from Guadalcanal to Australia, members of the 2007 Guadalcanal Expedition reported their activities and their preliminary results of investigations on September 6, 2007:

The team spent considerable time and effort on the Goettge Patrol area. Activities included taking over a hundred photographs of the three parcels that constitute the Goettge area, reviewing the project with parcel owners, and determining the location of the 1942 Mataniko Village. The onsite survey showed that several 1942 huts are along the current public road. The group feels that the public road was once part of the government trail shown on the 1942 reconnaissance photograph. One concern is the amount of fill added to the area since 1942.

A detailed analysis of the data is required; however, the preliminary review is positive for an electronic scan of the area based on the following:

- The area is accessible
- The terrain is flat with few obstructions
- Support facilities are near by

---

Parcel owners are positive and interested
• Native support is readily available
• Logistics should not be a problem
• The Solomon Islands Land Office wants to participate

Budd/Philips Area
Ken Budd has made numerous trips to Guadalcanal trying to locate the remains of his brother, Robert Budd, who was killed on August 27, 1942. Ken made available the documents from his previous trips along with a suggested search area. The team went to the area and determined the location of the new search area. The concern is that a Solomon Islands family has taken up residence on the property. Although there are buildings on the land, there is still a large open area conducive to an investigation. The next step, by the local team member, is to obtain permission to enter the property and determine the feasibility of searching the area using either conventional or electronic techniques.

This bibliography began as a research project and as our data assistance to this expedition project, looking for the geological information which has been printed on this island. However, so many other citations from the history and the natural history of the islands and the battle were retrieved, that it was decided they could be added to make a literature overview and review of the printed articles, books and media on Guadalcanal and the Solomon Islands.

Guadalcanal and the Solomons

Although little prehistory of the Solomon Islands is known, excavations indicate that a hunter-gatherer people lived on the larger islands as early as 1000 B.C. The European discoverer of the Solomons was the Spanish explorer Álvaro de Mendaña de Neira (aka Alvaro de Mendana Y Neyra), who set out from Peru in 1567. Guadalcanal was named by this explorer after his ship visited the island in 1568. By the way, the place name, “Guadalcanal”, comes from a municipality in the province of Sevilla in Andalusia, Spain. The name origin is from an Arabic term, Wād al-Khānāt, which means “Valley of the Stalls”. This refers to a number of refreshment stalls that were erected here during the Moslem rule of Andalusia. Guadalcanal in Spain lies about 100 kilometers north-northwest of Seville.

The British mariner Philip Carteret entered Solomon waters in 1767. A few years later, the English navigator Lieutenant John Shortland explored the sheltered anchorages along the northern coast in 1788. English traders followed, and the island was annexed (1893) by the British as part of the Solomon Islands Protectorate. By the late 19th century the islands were being exploited for labour to work the plantations of Fiji and other islands and in Queensland, Australia. About 30,000 labourers were recruited between 1870 and 1910. To protect their own interests Germany and Britain divided the Solomons between them in 1886; but in 1899 Germany transferred the northern islands, except for Buka and Bougainville, to Britain (which already claimed the southern islands) in return for recognition of German claims in Western Samoa (now Samoa) and parts of Africa. The British Solomon Islands Protectorate was declared in 1893, partly in response to abuses.

---

8 From the Wikipedia. See: http://en.wikipedia.org
associated with labour recruitment and partly to regulate contacts between islanders and European settlers, but mainly to forestall a threat of annexation by France. Colonial rule began in 1896. Although generally humane, administrators were more concerned with promoting the interests of European traders and planters than with those of the islanders, and islanders were punished harshly for offenses against colonial law and order. The murder of government tax collectors on Malaita in 1927 was answered with a savage punitive expedition, which was backed by an Australian warship. Together with some of his associates, Basiana, the leader of the assassins, was hanged, and his young sons were forced to witness the execution.9

The Solomon Islands’ economy is based mainly on fishing, coconuts, timber, cocoa, and fruit; there are occasional workings in alluvial gold and silver. During World War II it was the scene of bitter land and sea fighting between U.S. and Japanese forces. Self-government was achieved in 1976 and independence two years later. Ethnic violence, government malfeasance, and endemic crime have undermined stability and civil society. In June 2003, then Prime Minister Sir Allen Kemakeza sought the assistance of Australia in reestablishing law and order; the following month, an Australian-led multinational force arrived to restore peace and disarm ethnic militias. The Regional Assistance Mission to the Solomon Islands (RAMSI) has generally been effective in restoring law and order and rebuilding government institutions.

Population

The bulk of the population depends on agriculture, fishing, and forestry for at least part of its livelihood. Most manufactured goods and petroleum products must be imported. The islands are rich in undeveloped mineral resources such as lead, zinc, nickel, and gold. Prior to the arrival of the Regional Assistance Mission to the Solomon Islands (RAMSI), severe ethnic violence, the closing of key businesses, and an empty government treasury culminated in economic collapse. RAMSI’s efforts to restore law and order and economic stability have led to modest growth as the economy rebuilds.

The island ethnic groups are: Melanesian 94.5%, Polynesian 3%, Micronesian 1.2%, other 1.1%, unspecified 0.2%, according to the 1999 census. The languages of the Solomon Islands are many. Melanesian pidgin in much of the country is the lingua franca; English is the official language, but is spoken by only 1%-2% of the population, and there are 120 indigenous languages used today. The major religious groups are: Church of Melanesia 32.8%, Roman Catholic 19%, South Seas Evangelical 17%, Seventh-Day Adventist 11.2%, United Church 10.3%, Christian Fellowship Church 2.4%, other Christian 4.4%, other 2.4%, unspecified 0.3%, none 0.2% (1999 census)

Only 2.04% of the land is in permanent crops. Only about 0.62% of the land is arable. The major economic activities include fishing; forestry and timber products; mining for gold, bauxite, phosphates, lead, zinc and nickel; agricultural production of cocoa beans, coconuts, palm kernels, rice, potatoes, vegetables and fruit; animal husbandry with cattle and pigs.10

Physical Geography

The Solomon Islands form an archipelago in the southwestern Pacific Ocean, covering an area of some 280,000 square miles (725,197 sq. km.), slightly smaller in land area than Maryland, with land covering 11,599 sq. mi. (27,556 sq. km.) northeast of Australia. With terrain ranging from ruggedly mountainous islands to low-lying coral atolls, the Solomons stretch in a chain southeast from Papua New Guinea across the Coral Sea to Vanuatu.

Guadalcanal is the largest island of the Solomon Islands. With an area of some 2,047 square miles (5,302 square km), it is of volcanic origin with a mountainous spine (Kavo Range) that culminates in Mount Makarakomburu (8,028 feet or 2,447 meters), that is the highest point in the country. The islands have a tropical monsoon, and has few extremes of temperature and weather. The climate is tropical oceanic; that is, hot and humid, but relieved by cool winds and abundant, year-round rainfall. Temperatures seldom exceed 90° F (32° C) and rainfall generally averages 120–140 inches (3,000–3,500 millimetres) a year.

Many short, rapid streams, including the Mataniko, Lunga, and Tenaru, tumble from the wooded mountains to the coast, which in some places is lined with mangrove swamps.

“The island is mostly mountainous and the main range, the Kavo Mountains, is volcanic and reaches a height of 2,440 m/8,805 ft. Guadalcanal has dense forests, but extensive areas are treeless and covered in grass growing to a height of almost 2 m/6.5 ft. This grass extends over the plains and up into the mountains, but the watercourses are lined with scrub and timber. Many streams of Guadalcanal consist, in ordinary weather, of dry beds of stone and sand, water appearing only at a rock outcrop in the bed. A brilliant yellow orchid (Dendrobium) grows on the island. Guadalcanal contains evidence of having been upraised more than once and it would seem from the raised beaches, common round the coast, that the upheaval is still going on.”

The capital city of Honiara, situated on Guadalcanal (the largest island) has 54,600 inhabitants; the other principal towns are Gizo, Auki, and Kirakira.

The islands command a strategic location on sea routes between the South Pacific Ocean, the Solomon Sea, and the Coral Sea.

Earthquakes and destructive cyclones also occur regularly. On April 2, 2007, an undersea earthquake measuring 8.1 on the Richter scale occurred 345 km west-northwest of the capital city, Honiara. The resulting tsunami devastated coastal areas of Western and Choiseul provinces with dozens of deaths and thousands dislocated. The provincial capital of Gizo was especially hard hit. There are also some hot springs on Savo, where a volcano last erupted in the 1840s. Solomon Islands has a number of other volcanoes. Tinakula in the Santa Cruz group and Kavachi, a submarine volcano near New Georgia, for example, have erupted regularly every few years, and Simbo Island has a solfatara (a volcanic area or vent that yields only hot vapours and sulfurous gases).

Although there were 35 airports on the Solomons in 2006, only two had paved runways. The roadways on the islands totaled 1,360 km; of which 34 km were paved and 1,326 km of the roads were unpaved (1999). The ports and terminals were located at: Honiara, Malloco Bay, Shortland Harbor, Viru Harbor, Yandina.

Heavily wooded, mountainous terrain is characteristic and, although there are extensive plains, only those on the northerm side of Guadalcanal have been developed for large-scale agriculture. As in most island groups, animal life is limited. Many of the economic problems of the

---

islands include unrestrained human activity such as deforestation and soil erosion. Also, many of
the surrounding coral reefs are dead or dying.\(^\text{12}\)

This bibliography and report is published in two separate sections: “The Natural History of
Guadalcanal” and “The History of Guadalcanal”.

“The Natural History of Guadalcanal” section is a science “catch-all” section that includes
maps, reports, books, video and journal articles concerning scientific investigations of the island.
These items are generally refereed, but not all are, especially the older materials. “Natural history”
is an umbrella term for what are now usually viewed as a number of distinct scientific disciplines.

Most definitions of “Natural History” include the study of living things, e.g. agriculture,
anthropology, biology, including bio-medicine, botany, sociology and zoology; other definitions
extend the topic to include paleontology, ecology or biochemistry, as well as geology, geography,
physics and even meteorology. This bibliography is heaviest in geological citations.

“The History of Guadalcanal” section of this document includes maps, reports, books,
journal articles and other media concerning the island’s history, politics and development. These
items are generally refereed materials, but not all are, especially the older materials or personal
accounts. The history section includes citations to works on the exploration and early development
of the islands, and accounts of the early missionaries, commerce and plantations of Guadalcanal.

The largest part of the bibliography is concerned with the Battle of Guadalcanal, part of the
Solomon Islands Campaign during World War II. Czech, English, German, Japanese and Polish
language materials are included.

Post World War II accounts and citations also include recent ethnic, political and social
trends and conflict.

Online: [http://search.eb.com/eb/article-53966](http://search.eb.com/eb/article-53966)
Resources Consulted

A number of resources were consulted for this project. Wherever possible, the author has included location information to show where the materials may be obtained from lending libraries through inter-library loan, or from commercial agencies such as document delivery services. Many archives, unique items, or frail materials, may only be viewed at the location of the document holder. Where these restrictions apply, the author has tried to indicate whether it can be borrowed or not.

Researchers should be aware that the Library of Congress, other national libraries, museums and almost all governmental archives, frequently do not lend materials except as “last resort”. And they may not lend their materials even then. Consult with your local library for access to these citations.

Aquatic Sciences and Fisheries Abstracts (ASFA). The Aquatic Sciences and Fisheries Abstracts Bibliographic Database is the principal information product produced through the cooperative efforts of the international network of ASFA Partners see: http://www.fao.org/fi/asfa/partners.asp and a commercial ASFA Publishing Partner, CSA. The database contains approximately 1 million bibliographic references or records to the world’s aquatic science literature accessioned since 1971. “Aquatic Sciences and Fisheries Abstracts (ASFA) is an International Cooperative Information System which comprises an abstracting and indexing service covering the world’s literature on the science, technology, management, and conservation of marine, brackish water, and freshwater resources and environments, including their socio-economic and legal aspects.”

ASFA 1: Biological Sciences and Living Resources. “For scientists involved in the cooperative management of the world’s living aquatic resources, ASFA 1 provides extensive coverage of basic and applied research on aquatic organisms. All aspects of marine, freshwater, and brackish water organisms and environments are examined, including information on biology and ecology of aquatic organisms, exploitation of living resources, and related legal, policy, and socioeconomic issues. Since natural resources are an important feature of ASFA 1, fisheries receive particular attention, with comprehensive sections that put scientists and managers in touch with the latest fishing methods, statistics, aquaculture, food technology, productivity, conservation, and marketing.”

Australian War Memorial and Library: http://www.awm.gov.au
Bacteriology Abstracts (Microbiology B) (commercial databank- subscription required)
The British Library. “We hold over 13 million books, 920,000 journal and newspaper titles, 57 million patents, 3 million sound recordings, and so much more.” See: http://www.bl.uk/
CSA Technology Research Database (commercial databank- subscription required)
Deutsche Nationalbibliothek (German National Library). Maintains a web catalogue of the collections in Leipzig and Frankfurt. See: http://www.ddb.de/
The Defense Technical Information Center (DTIC) holds military reports collected since World War II. See: http://stinet.dtic.mil/
Dissertation Abstracts (commercial databank- subscription required)
Earthquake Engineering Abstracts (commercial databank- subscription required)
Elsevier Scientific (commercial databank- subscription required)
Environmental Sciences and Pollution Mgmt. (commercial databank- subscription required)
GeoBase (commercial databank- subscription required)
GeoRef (commercial databank- subscription required). GeoRef is also a document delivery company. See: http://www.agiweb.org/georef/dds/index.html


History Resource Center (commercial databank- subscription required)

ISBN: International Standard Book Number. This unique number can be used to identify and locate library holdings of a particular book or report title. See: http://www.isbn.org/standards/home/index.asp

ISSN: International Standard Serial Number. This unique number can be used to locate libraries which have subscriptions to this journal, magazine or serial. See: http://www.issn.org/

Japanese National Diet Library (NDL). This is the library of the Japanese Diet, located in Tokyo. The NDL consists of the Tokyo Main Library, the Kansai-kan and the International Library of Children’s Literature (ILCL). See: http://opac.ndl.go.jp/index_e.html

Library of Congress Control Number – LCCN: This is a unique number applied by the Library of Congress to identify individual publications. This number can be used to identify copies of this item in libraries held in the US and abroad. See: http://www.loc.gov/marc/lccn_structure.html

Library of Congress Geography and Map Reading Room. “The Geography and Map Division has custody of the largest and most comprehensive cartographic collection in the world with collections numbering over 5 million maps, 72,000 atlases, 6,000 reference works, over 500 globes and globe gores, and numerous plastic relief models, and a large number of cartographic materials in other formats, including electronic.” http://www.loc.gov/rr/geogmap/

Metereological & Geoastrophysical Abstracts (commercial databank- subscription required)


National Archives and Records Center (NARA) http://www.archives.gov/index.html


National Library of Canada http://www.collectionscanada.ca/

National Technical Information Service (NTIS). See: www.ntis.gov

OCLC www.worldcat.org

Reader’s Guide Retrospective (commercial databank- subscription required)

US Air Force Historical Studies Office The Air Force Historical Studies Office (AFHSO) is located in Washington, D.C. at the Anacostia Naval Annex. It is a part of the Air Force History and Museums Program, headquartered at the Pentagon. We house the “rapid response” team of historians who provide historical information and analysis to our country’s leaders, as well as the authors who document the Air Force’s activities and history. http://www.airforcehistory.hq.af.mil/

US Army Center for Military History http://www.army.mil/cmh/

US Army Heritage and Education Center (AHEC) The Army Heritage and Education Center (AHEC) began in June of 1999 by the Secretary of the Army Louis Caldera, who was committed to pursuing an Army museum at Carlisle Barracks, Pennsylvania. The museum was to be joined with the pre-existing U.S. Army Military History Institute and with the overall mission was dedicated to focus on the heritage of the Army. The project was a means of further improving the Army’s educational capabilities by more fully communicating the holdings of the Institute to the U.S. Army and the American People. http://www.carlisle.army.mil/ahec/AHEC_history.htm

US Geological Survey Library Today the library holds over 1.7 million books and journals, 700,000 maps, 370,000 microforms, 270,000 pamphlets, 260,000 black-and-white photographs, 60,000 color transparencies, 15,000 field record notebooks, and 250 videocassettes. Materials include USGS publications as well as those produced by state and foreign geological surveys,
scientific societies, museums, academic institutions, and government scientific agencies.

www.usgs.gov\library

US Marine Corps History Division The History Division is located on Marine Corps Base Quantico, Virginia, near the Gray Research Center of the Marine Corps University. 

US Navy Historical Center As the official history program of the United States Navy, the Naval Historical Center manages the Navy Department Library, twelve Navy museums, art collections, archives, and an underwater archaeology program. The Center prepares and publishes reference, documentary, analytical, and narrative works on the history of the United States Navy. 
http://www.history.navy.mil/

Acknowledgements

The author acknowledges with thanks the contributions of the following historians and librarians who helped make this bibliography possible: Michael J. Brodhead, US Army Corps of Engineers History Office; Helen Sherman, Diane Schnurpusch and the Reference Staff at the Defense Technical Information Center (DTIC); Bret W. Rodgers, USMC; Wayne Olson, Reference Librarian, National Agriculture Library; Ed Redmon and Habte M. Teclemariam, Reference Librarians, Library of Congress; Cliff Nelson, US Geological Survey Historian; Bruce Wallace, Brenda Graff, and Bob Bier of the US Geological Survey Library.

Peter Flahavin, an author and researcher on Guadalcanal “who has been into military history” since his youth, has kindly located and supplied some of the public domain photographs used in this report.

Special thanks also goes to Mr. Willie Sayyad of RefWorks.com. Because of the generous donation of Mr. Sayyad and RefWorks.com, the author was able to place citations electronically and manually from many card catalogs and different resources into one large database. From this database, it was fairly easy to produce this bibliography quickly and efficiently.

Some of the foreign language (Japanese or European languages) materials were electronically translated through AltaVista’s BabelFish service at: http://babelfish.altavista.com/tr or MicroSoft’s new online service (Beta version), http://translator.live.com/.
History of Guadalcanal

Geology, Geography and Natural History of Guadalcanal

Abe, S. and Dotsu, Y. 1977. “Research Report of the T.S. Kakuyo Maru, Nagasaki University. 1. A Note on Yellowfin Tuna Fishing with Hand Line in the Northwestern Coral Sea in October, 1976.” Suisan Kaiyō Kenkyūkai hō/Bulletin of the Japanese Society of Fisheries Oceanography. (no.31), 7-11. (1977). Descriptors: hand lining; fishing grounds; Thunnus albacares; Coral Sea; catching methods; bait; Marine. TR: FA7801275. Abstract: Tuna fishing with hand line in the northwestern Coral Sea off Australia originated in 1965 when a tuna long liner operating in that water area had a great catch with hand lines upon making the tuna school come up to the surface layer by the use of ground-bait. This water area has been recognized as a fishing ground for hand lines rather than long lines. The hand line fishing ground is mainly located within the range 14-18 degree S 145-148 degree E. The fishing period is only about a month from late October to early December. In late October, 1976, the water area where the tuna school appears is very small within a circle of 5 sea miles in radius though the location changes from day to day. On October 25, 1975, the T.S. Kakuyo Maru found a school of yellowfin tuna in the water area around 16 degree 07’S/146 degree 51’E and caught 650 tuna (mean body weight 25 kg) by one purse seine operation after throwing slices of frozen mackerel and having the school come up to the surface layer. On October 25, 1976, yellowfin tunas were caught with hand line around 16 degree 49’S 146 degree 52. 5’E. In this operation, two individuals of the eleotrid goby Ophieleotris aporos, measuring approximately 15 cm in body length were used as live bait to fish the tuna in an experimental attempt. The goby were selected from among over 20 individuals caught at Guadalcanal Isl. and Tulagi Isl. of the Solomons and kept alive in two aquaria on board before the Kakuyo Maru went to the Coral Sea. A tuna was caught in each of two trials immediately after throwing the hand line with the live bait hooked at the caudal peduncle. Although experimental cases are few, this fact indicates that live bait is superior to frozen one, also in hand line fishing of tuna in this area, and it is expected that the catch efficiency can be increased by the use of live bait. Since the eleotrid goby is a fish commonly found in the brackish water zone at the mouth of river in Guadalcanal Isl. and Tulagi Isl., and is hardy enough to be kept collectively in a small marine aquarium on board, it may serve as an appropriate live bait fishing with hand line. Database: ASFA 1: Biological Sciences and Living Resources. ISSN: 0388-9149.


Allen, John Barry and Deans, T. 1965. “Ultrabasic Eruptives with Alnoeitic-Kimberlitic Affinities from Malaita, Solomon Islands.” Mineralogical Magazine. Mineralogical Society: London, United Kingdom. Volume 34, Pages 16-34. Descriptors: Alnoeitic kimberlitic like rocks; igneous rocks; Malaita; Melanesia; Oceania; petrology; plutonic rocks; Solomon Islands; ultramafics; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: Detrital gravels with ilmenite, garnet, rutile, and zircon in stream beds and elsewhere on Malaita, one of the larger of the Solomon islands in the south Pacific, have been traced back to ultrabasic rocks intermediate between melilite basalts, alnoeites, and kimberlites, which are the first record of alkaline rocks in the area. The host
rocks are alnoeite, with olivine and clinopyroxene phenocrysts, olivine nodules, and other xenocrysts, an alnoeite breccia, and ankaratrite. Chemical analyses are given and compared with similar material from Sweden, Texas, Germany, and Madagascar. Discussion centers about the differing proportion of alkalis, the effect of ultrabasic inclusions and the kimberlitic affinities, with the conclusion that the Malaita rocks provide a good example of the close relation between melilite-bearing eruptives and kimberlites. ISSN: 0026-461X.


Anderson, Ian. 1995. “Lawless loggers 'will go on plundering paradise'.” New Scientist. September 16, 1995, page 6. Abstract: Unrestrained logging on South Pacific islands may be halted if a new code governing forestry is adopted this week by prime ministers from the South Pacific region meeting in Madang, Papua New Guinea. But critics say that the code will be useless unless island governments back it up with laws that can be enforced. "The code is a quick fix, not a permanent solution," says Grant Rosoman from Greenpeace in New Zealand. The code aims to change logging practices in the Solomon Islands, Papua New Guinea, Vanuatu and Fiji. Other islands do not have enough forest to make logging worthwhile. Logging in the Solomon Islands is seen as the worst example of overexploitation. According to the Australian government, the islands' forests will disappear in a decade if the present rate of logging continues. ISSN: 0262-4079.

Andrews, J. E. 1970. Sediment Core Descriptions; Solomon Islands, 1968-1969, and Murray Fracture Zone, 1967. Honolulu, HI, United States: Hawaii Institute of Geophysics, University of Hawaii. HIG. Volume: 70-25, 16, page(s): 133. Descriptors: composition; core logs; East Pacific; interpretation; Melanesia; Murray fracture zone; North Pacific; Northeast Pacific; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; properties; sedimentary petrology; sediments; Solomon Islands; well logging; Sedimentary petrology. ISSN: 0440-4866.

Arai, M., Mizukoshi, C., Kubochi, F., Kakutani, T. and Wataya, Y. 1994. “Detection of Plasmodium Falciparum in Human Blood by a Nested Polymerase Chain Reaction.” Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1994 November. Volume 51, Issue 5, Pages 617-26. Abstract: We have developed a simple method for direct detection of Plasmodium falciparum parasites in infected human blood using a nested polymerase chain reaction. Whole blood (10 microliters) was obtained by finger puncture and suspended in a microcentrifuge tube containing phosphate-buffered saline. For removal of components that might inhibit the PCR, blood samples were treated with saponin and washed by centrifugation. After three cycles of a two-step incubation (3 min at 94 degrees C and 3 min at 55 degrees C), the first amplification was done with oligonucleotide primers specific for the junction region of the gene coding for the dihydrofolate reductase-thymidylate synthase in P. falciparum. A 1-microliter portion of the first amplification was then amplified again with a second set of primers, and 226-basepair fragments were generated. The amplified products were analyzed by agarose gel electrophoresis with ethidium bromide staining. Experiments with cultured parasites showed that the method could detect as few as 13 parasites in 10 microliters of whole blood. In 1991, 101 samples from 98 donors were collected in Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. Eight of these samples gave positive results by both examination of thin blood smears and by the nested PCR. There was a correlation between parasite densities and the intensity of the results by the nested PCR. The method is suitable for detection of asymptomatic parasite carriers and evaluation of medical treatment on clinical cases. Availability: NLM.


Arculus R J, Dawson J B, Mitchell R H, Gust D A and Holmes, R. D. 1984. “Oxidation States of the Upper Mantle Recorded by Megacryst Ilmenite in Kimberlite and Type A and B Spinel Lherzolites.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 85, Issue 1, Pages 85-94. Descriptors: Africa; Arizona; Excelsior; Frank Smith; fugacity; Gila County Arizona; igneous rocks; ilmenite; intrusions; kimberlite; lherzolite; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; Mukorob; Oceania; oxidation; oxides; oxygen; peridotites; petrology; pipes; plutonic rocks; San Carlos; Sekameng; Solomon Islands; Southern Africa; spinel; ultramafics; United States; upper mantle; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0010-7999.


Asaeda, Toshio; Templeton Crocker; American Museum of Natural History. 1933. The Templeton Crocker Expedition. Visual Material: Videorecording: Videocassette. New York:

Assistance in Land Evaluation, Solomon Islands. Terminal statement. Rome (Italy). FAO. Agriculture Dept. 6 pages. Descriptors: Land economics and policies; Land Suitability; Land Resources; Land Classification; Technical Aid; Evaluation; Solomon Islands. Assistance in Land Evaluation, Solomon Islands, SOI/6755. FAO Library.

Atu, W. T. 2005. “Fishing for Drummerfish (Kyphosidae) with Termites and Spider Webs on the Weather Coast of Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands.” Tradit. Mar. Resour. Manag. Knowl. Inf. Bull. Issue 18, Pages 3-8. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Artisanal fishing; Bait; Catching methods; Coastal fisheries; Fishing technology; Lagoon fisheries; Sociological aspects; Article Taxonomic Terms: Kyphosus; Article Geographic Terms: ISEW, Pacific, Solomon Islands. Rudderfishes; Marine. Notes: Printed matter, Internet; English version dated August 2005version Francaise, Ressources Marines et Traditions, Octobre 2005; TR: CP0600024. Abstract: This paper describe a unique traditional fishing method called bulukochi which was used to capture drummerfish (Kyphosidae) at Sukiki community on the weather coast of Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. This traditional fishing method was used for many generations but is now infrequently practiced. The origin of the bulukochi fishing method in legend is told. The method is given, including rituals, taboos and a description of beliefs attached to the ritual. The termites, or Kochi, are found in the bush and a ritual is performed before the termites are harvested and mashed into a paste. The fishing pole is prepared with the sticky laobaulu spider web. The technique for the fishing is described. The bulukochi fishing method described in this paper is a highly skilled and sacred fishing method that is an important component of Solomon Island cultural heritage.

Database: ASFA 1: Biological Sciences and Living Resources. ISSN: 1025-7497. URL: 
http://www.spc.int/coastfish/News/Trad/18/Traditional18.pdf; 
http://www.spc.int/coastfish/News/TradVF/18VF/Trad-VF-18.pdf

Autar, Rohit. 1996. “Potential Geothermal Development in the Pacific Islands.” Bulletin - Geothermal Resources Council. Geothermal Resources Council: Davis, CA, United States. Volume 25, Issue 2, Pages 59-62. Descriptors: Australasia; development; exploration; Fiji; geothermal energy; geothermal fields; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Polynesia; possibilities; Samoa; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Vanuatu; Economic geology, geology of energy sources. ISSN: 0160-7782.

Auzende, J M, Collot, J Y, Lafoy, Y, et al. 1994. “Evidence for Sinistral Strike-Slip Deformation in the Solomon Island Arc.” Geo-Mar. Lett. Springer International: Berlin-Heidelberg, International. Volume 14, Issue 4, Pages 232-237. Descriptors: Australian Plate; bathymetry; deformation; echo sounding; faults; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; hot spots; island arcs; lagoons; Mborokua Basin; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Plate; plate tectonics; reflection methods; Russel Basin; seismic methods; shore features; Solomon Islands; SOPACMAPS; strike slip faults; subduction; surveys; tectonics; tension; transtension; volcanic features; Woodlark Basin; Structural geology; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0276-0460.

Auzende, Jean Marie, Kroenke, Loren W, Collot, J Y, Lafoy, Y. and Pelletier, Bernard. 1996. “Compressive Tectonism Along the Eastern Margin of Malaita Island (Solomon Islands).” Mar. Geophys. Res. D. Reidel Publishing Company: Dordrecht, Netherlands. Volume 18, Issue 2-4, Pages 289-304. Descriptors: bathymetry; compression tectonics; crust; geophysical methods; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; gravity anomalies; Malaita; mapping; Melanesia; mid ocean ridges; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanic crust; Pacific Ocean; plate convergence; seismic
methods; seismic profiles; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; tectonics; West Pacific; 18 Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics; Oceanography. Notes: CN: Seafloor mapping in the West and Southwest Pacific. Noumea, New Caledonia. Nov. 4-9, 1994. ISSN: 0025-3235.

B

Baker, R. C. 1950. “An Occurrence of Saline Ground Water on Guadalcanal.” Transactions - American Geophysical Union. Volume 31, Issue 1, Pages 58-60. Descriptors: Guadalcanal; saline ground water; water supply. Abstract: Guadalcanal island is largely mountainous, but on the north side there is a coastal plain about 40 miles long which averages eight miles in width and stands about 15 feet above sea level. This plain is composed of the coalesced deltas of several large rivers. Most of the military installations of World War II were located on this plain near its western end. Wells drilled for water supply disclosed a body of saline ground water between the Lunga and Nalimbu rivers. The saline water probably is ocean water that was incorporated into the sediments as the coastal plain was built. The location and shape of the body of salt water appears to be controlled largely by the permeability of the material. ISSN: 0002-8606.

Baker, George. 1949. “Note on Volcanic Rocks, with Special Reference to Plagioclase Feldspars, from Mount Bogana, Bougainville Island, Solomon Islands.” Transactions - American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 30, Issue 2, Pages 250-262. Descriptors: Andesine phenocrysts; Australasia; Bougainville; igneous rocks; Melanesia; mineral data; Mount Bogana; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; petrogenesis; Solomon Islands; volcanic rocks; Mineralogy; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: “The described rocks consist of ejected pebbles and andesitic scoria that form the greater part of the recent, symmetrical volcanic cone of Mt. Bogana, and slightly older andesitic flows that occur to the southwest in the valley of the Torokina River.... The characteristics of the andesine phenocrysts in the unaltered hornblende andesites are described in some detail, because in them, twinning, zoning, welding of crystals, and inclusions of earlier products of crystallization are best represented.” ISSN: 0002-8606.

Baird, Nicola. 1996. “Unwisdom of the Solomons.” New Scientist magazine, 27 January 1996, page 31. Abstract: Which product "reinvigorates any time fatigue overtakes you"? If you believe the sales pitch, it's oxygen. Canisters containing about 10 minutes' worth of 99.5 per cent pure oxygen are sold in Britain as an "aid to healthier living, countering the effects of smog and pollution". And in Japanese cities, bottled oxygen is available at bars and from dispenser machines. But if you are tempted to splash out on some fresh air, why stop at an ordinary variety when you could treat yourself to lungfuls of pure tropical rainforest oxygen? Of course, there's absolutely no difference - one oxygen molecule is just the same as another. But that's just a small inconvenience to those behind one of the most bizarre marketing projects of our times. The idea comes from the government of Solomon Islands, a string of islands scattered over some 1.35 million square kilometres of the southwestern Pacific. Plans to bottle and sell not just oxygen but also water from the country's rainforests were outlined just over a year ago by the Prime Minister, Solomon Mamaloni. The plan is part of a major restructuring of the Ministry of Forests, Environment and Conservation, and comes at a time when past efforts to achieve a sustainable forest policy in the Solomons have been largely abandoned. Last year, the government-owned plantations were sold and more than 450 forestry workers made redundant. At the Forest Research Station in Munda, Western Province, scientists were as dismissive of the bottled oxygen scheme as staff at the Office of the Prime Minister were of the research station's work. It is not only forestry experts that the
The government has failed to convince. Around the capital, Honiara, the plans to sell oxygen and water are privately described as "unworkable" and "mad". Critics see them as a smoke screen designed to divert attention from a disastrous logging policy. A forestry inventory completed in 1992 put the sustainable rate of harvest at 325 000 cubic metres of timber per year. Escalating extraction since then has brought the sustainable yield down to 275 000 cubic metres per year. Yet the government has issued logging licences allowing an annual cut of 4 million cubic metres, a rate of extraction that would leave Solomon Islands logged out in just three years. In fact, the logging companies, which are mostly foreign owned, are not equipped to cut quite this fast. But even at the present estimated cutting rate - 700 000 cubic metres last year - the resource cannot last more than 10 years. ISSN: 0262-4079.

Baldwin, J T, Swain, H D and Clark, G. H. 1978. “Geology and Grade Distribution of the Panguna Porphyry Copper Deposit, Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 73, Issue 5, Pages 690-702. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; economic geology maps; geologic maps; grade; maps; Melanesia; metal ores; mineralization; mining geology; Oceania; ore bodies; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; production; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; West Pacific; Economic geology of ore deposits; color geologic maps. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Baranzagi, M, Oliver, J. and Isacks B. 1977. “Relative Excitation of the Seismic Shear Waves S (Sub n) and L (Sub g) as a Function of Source Depth and their Propagation from Melanesia and Banda Arcs to Australia.” Ann. Geofis. Istituto Nazionale di Geofisica: Rome, Italy. Volume 30, Issue 3-4, Pages 385-407. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; Banda Arc; Benioff zone; body waves; Coral Sea; earthquakes; elastic waves; Indian Plate; island arcs; Melanesia; New Britain; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; S waves; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surface waves; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Seismology. ISSN: 0365-2556.

Barazangi, Muawia, Isacks, Bryan, Dubois, J. and Pascal, Georges. 1974. “Seismic Wave Attenuation in the Upper Mantle Beneath the Southwest Pacific.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 24, Issue 1-2, Pages 1-12. Descriptors: attenuation; Australasia; body waves; crust; data; earthquakes; elastic waves; Fiji; Fiji Plateau; island arcs; lateral; Malay Archipelago; mantle; Melanesia; Oceania; P waves; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; S waves; sea floor spreading; seismic waves; seisograms; seismology; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; southwest; structure; tectonophysics; upper mantle; Vanuatu; variations; volcanoes; zoning; 19 Seismology. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Natural History of Guadalcanal


Batty, M. 1987. “Eel Fishing- Pilot Project in Solomon Islands.” South Pacific Commission Fisheries Newsletter. Noumea no. 42. pp. 38-39. 1987. Issue 42, Pages 38-39. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: net fishing; fishing gear; trap nets; fishery development; Article Taxonomic Terms: Anguilla; experimental fishing; Solomon I. Marine. Abstract: The findings are presented of a trial conducted in the Solomon Islands in order to test fyke nets for the exploitation of the eel resources in North East Guadalcanal. Species obtained were mainly Anguilla bicolor, A. obscura and A. marmorata. Catches were found to be very good and prospects for development of this sector are promising. ISSN: 0248-076X.

Baumer A and Fraser, R. B. 1975. “Panguna Porphyry Copper Deposit, Bougainville.” Monograph Series - Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy. Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: Melbourne, Victoria, Australia. Volume 5, Economic geology of Australia and Papua New Guinea, Issue 1, Metals, Pages 855-865. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; Melanesia; metal ores; Oceania; ore deposits; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0155-3399.


Beebe, N. W., Bakote’e, B., Ellis, J. T. and Cooper, R. D. 2000. “Differential Ecology of Anopheles Punctulatus and Three Members of the Anopheles Farauti Complex of Mosquitoes on Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands, Identified by PCR-RFLP Analysis.” Med Vet Entomol. 2000 September. Volume 14, Issue 3, Pages 308-12. Notes: Research Support, Non-U.S. Gov’t Abstract: From a series of larval collections made across northern Guadalcanal during the dry season, October-November 1997, four members of the Anopheles punctulatus group of mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) were identified using PCR-RFLP analysis. Anopheline larvae were found in 54/57 (95%) of the sites sampled, comprising An. farauti Laveran sensu stricto (32 sites), An. farauti species no. 2 (39 sites), An. farauti no. 7 (36 sites) and An. punctulatus Dönitz (10 sites). Anopheles punctulatus occurred only on the coastal plain, where it was associated with the more transient sites. Anopheles farauti sensu lato was more widespread throughout the survey region, with similar proportions of all three sibling species in both transient and permanent sites. Two members of the An. farauti complex, An. farauti s.s. and species no. 2, were found in brackish water. All breeding sites of An. punctulatus were cohabited by An. farauti s.l., sometimes by all three sibling species. Anopheles farauti s.s. was the only species collected on human bait, with a much higher biting rate early in the evening (57 bites/human/hour at 18.30-20.00 hours) than later (0.8 bites/human/hour at 21.00-24.00 hours). Database: PubMed. Availability: NLM. ISSN: 0269-283X.


Bell, D., Bryan, J., Cameron, A., Fernando, M., Leafasia, J. and Pholsyna, K. 1997. “Malaria in Honiara, Solomon Islands: Reasons for Presentation and Human and Environmental Factors Influencing Prevalence.” Southeast Asian Journal of Tropical Medicine and Public Health. 1997 September. Volume 28, Issue 3, Pages 482-8. Abstract: During February and March 1995, out-patients attending health clinics and the Central Hospital in East Honiara, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands, were surveyed with the aim of determining factors influencing the differing rates of malaria, the proportion of transmission occurring within the town, and the reasons for presentation. Three hundred and nine adult patients, who were sick and had blood smears taken, were asked about their general knowledge of malaria transmission. Of those interviewed, 120 were visited at their home in East Honiara, to determine variables. EpiInfo 5.1 was used in analysis. A history of fever alone was not a good indicator of parasitemia. Most precautions, including bed nets, window screens and personal precautions were of little benefit. Significant protection was afforded individuals and families with indoor kitchens. Patients not completing their antimalarial treatment fared worse in terms of parasitemia and malaria history. Most malaria/parasitemia was indigenous to Honiara. Many patients had a good knowledge of malaria transmission and mosquitoes, but this did not translate into a lower rate of parasitemia or malaria. Database: PubMed. Availability: NLM. ISSN: 0038-3619.


Blake, D. H. and Miezitis, Y. 1966. “Geology of Bougainville and Buka Islands Territory of New Guinea.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1966/62, page(s): 56. Descriptors: areal geology; Australasia; Bougainville; Buka Island; Cenozoic; copper ores; gold ores; igneous rocks; intrusions; Melanesia; metal ores; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; SB5608; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; tectonics; volcanic rocks; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN/ISBN: 0811-062X.

Blake, D. H. and Miezitis Y. 1967. “Bougainville and Buka Islands, New Guinea.” Australian Academy of Science: Canberra, Australia. Pages 188. Descriptors: areal geology; Australasia; Bougainville; Buka; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; Areal geology.


Booth, S. 1985. “Position Paper: Solomon Islands.” Hydrogeological Mapping in Asia and the Pacific Region. Verlag Heinz Heise, Hannover West Germany. Descriptors: Solomon Islands; Water resources development; Hydrogeology; Mapping; Hydrologic maps; Water demand; Islands. Notes: CL: Groundwater; Data-acquisition; Groundwater-management. Abstract: Water resource assessment in the Solomon Islands has been confined to meeting the immediate needs of small scale demand. Progress in water resources assessment and development has been limited by a shortage of professional expertise; in 1983 this shortcoming was alleviated by the secondment from New Zealand of a Water Resources Officer. Approximately 66% of the Solomon Islands have now been geologically surveyed at the 1:50,000 scale, and 1:50,000 topographic maps are available for the whole country. The Solomon Islands Geological Survey is interested in the methods other Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific countries employ to acquire and present their hydrogeological information and is particularly interested in assessing the usefulness of hydrogeological maps in an island(s) context. ISSN: 0936-3912.

Borsaru, Mihai, Ceravolo, Charles, Charbucinski, Jacek and Eisler, Peter L. 1984. “Field Trials of Borehole Logging Probes for Density Determinations in Low-Grade Ore Deposits.” The Log Analyst. Society of Professional Well Log Analysts: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 25, Issue 1, Pages 22-31. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; boreholes; Bougainville; calibration; Co 60; cobalt; copper ores; density; economic geology; geophysical surveys; igneous rocks; instruments; interpretation; isotopes; Melanesia; metal ores; metals; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; plutonic rocks; radiation; radioactive isotopes; regression analysis; Solomon Islands; statistical analysis; surveys; well logging; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0024-581X.

Bourke, Royce. 2005. “A Baptism of Fire.” Resource Stocks. Aspermont. Ledderville, West: Aust., Australia. Volume 2005, Issue February-March, Pages 86, 88. Descriptors: Andurambah Deposit; Australasia; Australia; copper ores; D’Aguilar Block; D’ Aguilar Gold; data bases; data processing; drilling; gold ores; Manumbar Mine; Mbetilonga Deposit; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; mineral exploration; mines; molybdenum ores; Oceania; ore grade; Queensland Australia; SG5610 9345; Solomon Islands; veins; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 1441-9750.

Bourrouilh F, Bizon, G. and Baumann P. 1976. “La Plate-Forme Carbonatee De l’Ile De Rennell (Solomon, Sud-Ouest Pacifique) Est Au Minimum d’Age Miocene Moyen Translated Title: The Carbonate Platform of Rennell Island, Solomon Islands, Southwest Pacific, is at the very Least of Middle Miocene Age.” Comptes Rendus Hebdomadaires Des Seances De l'Academie Des Sciences, Serie D: Sciences Naturelles. Gauthier-Villars: Paris, France. Volume 282, Issue 22, Pages 1921-1924. Descriptors: age; biostratigraphy; carbonate rocks; Cenozoic; dolostone; Foraminifera; Globigerinacea; Globigerinidae; Invertebrata; Katacyclolypeus; Lepidocyclina; limestone; lithostratigraphy; Melanesia; microfossils; middle Miocene; Miocene; Myogypsina; Neogene; Oceania; Orbitoidaceae; Orbustria; Protista; Rennell Island; Rotaliina; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; Stratigraphy. ISSN: 0567-655X.

“Bougainville; Australia's most Formidable Mining Undertaking.” 1972. Australian Mining. Thompson Publications Australia: Chippendale, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 64, Issue 4, Pages 60-65. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; exploration; Melanesia; metal ores; Oceania; ore deposits; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; production; reserves; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0004-976X.
“The Bougainville Copper Venture.” 1969. Australian Mining. Thompson Publications Australia: Chippendale, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 61, Issue 8, Pages 67-71. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; exploration; fractures; history; igneous rocks; Melanesia; metal ores; Oceania; ore deposits; Papua New Guinea; plutonic rocks; possibilities; production; Solomon Islands; Western Australia; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0004-976X.

Branch, C. D. 1967. “Mount Bagana and Lake Loloru, Bougainville, T.P.N.G.” Report - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Australian Geological Survey Organisation: Canberra, A.C.T., Australia. Volume 107, Pages 11-15. Descriptors: activity; Australasia; Bougainville; lake dakataua caldera; mechanism; Melanesia; Mount Bagana Lake Loloru; New Britain; Oceania; Pacific Islands; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; volcanism; volcanoes; volcanology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: In this report on the most recent investigations at Mount Bagana (Territory of Papua and New Guinea) it is noted that the most prominent activity is a continuous emission of steam from the whole summit area, and on the western flank a new lava flow is advancing at the rate of a few inches per hour. However, activity appears to be mild and stable. Water temperatures at Lake Loloru crater are little changed since 1955 readings. ISSN: 0084-7100.

Branch, C. D. 1967. “Mount Balbi Volcano Complex, Bougainville, T.P.N.G.” Report - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Australian Geological Survey Organisation: Canberra, A.C.T., Australia. Volume 107, Pages 1-9. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; eruptions; igneous rocks; lake loloru; Melanesia; mount bagana; Mount Balbi; Oceania; Pacific Islands; Papua New Guinea; petrology; prediction; Solomon Islands; volcanic rocks; volcanism; volcanoes; volcanology; 05 Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: The last eruption of Mount Balbi, a 9000-ft volcanic cone which rises high above the Emperor range on Bougainville island, Territory of Papua and New Guinea, occurred between 1800 and 1850. The volcano complex, which surrounds a solfatara field where nuee ardente deposits occur, is considered, on the basis of air photographs, to be located at the intersection of three major lines of weakness. The nature of the deposits and the presence of chlorine gases in the fumarole emissions indicate future eruptions are to be expected. ISSN: 0084-7100.

British Overseas Development Administration, Land Resources Division, United Kingdom. 1974. Descriptors: agriculture; Florida Islands; forests; Guadalcanal Island; irrigation; land management; land use; land use maps; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Savo Island; Solomon Islands; 22 Environmental geology; color land use maps. Notes: In the collection: Land resources of the British Solomon Island Protectorate. 1974. (8 sheets); MC: LAT: S100000; S090500; LONG: E1610000; E1593000. Map Scale: 1:150,000.

British Overseas Development Administration, Land Resources Division, United Kingdom. 1974. Land use 1962-1971; 1:150,000 British Solomon Islands Protectorate, Guadalcanal and the Florida Islands. United Kingdom: British Overseas Development Administration, United Kingdom. Descriptors: agriculture; Florida Islands; forests; Guadalcanal Island; irrigation; land management; land use; land use maps; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Savo Island; Solomon Islands. Notes: Pieces: 8; Map Scale: 1:150,000. Type: colored land use map; Latitude:S100000, S090500 Longitude:E1610000, E1593000. GeoRef Accession Number: 2002-066189.

Natural History of Guadalcanal


de Broin C E, Aubertin, F. and Ravenne C. 1977. “Structure and History of the Solomon-New Ireland Region.” Ed. Technip: Paris, France. Pages 37-49. Descriptors: Australasia; Cenozoic; crust; evolution; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; island arcs; marine methods; Melanesia; Miocene; Neogene; New Ireland; Oceania; Oligocene; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; structure; subduction; subduction zones; surveys; tectonophysics; Tertiary; trenches; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Notes: International symposium on the geodynamics of the South-West Pacific. Noumea, New Caledonia. Aug. 27-Sept. 2, 1976.

Brooks, J. A. 1963. “Seismic Wave Velocities in the New Guinea-Solomon Islands Region.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1963/38, page(s): variously paginated. Descriptors: Australasia; body waves; earthquakes; elastic waves; internal structure; Melanesia; Oceania; P waves; Papua New Guinea; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands; velocity structure; Seismology. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.

Brooks, J. A. 1961. “Tsunami Effects of the Chilean Earthquake of 22nd may 1960 in New Guinea and Adjacent Areas.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1961/3, page(s): 4. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; Cairns Australia; earthquakes; effects; Guadalcanal; Honiara; Mackay Australia; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Port Moresby Papua New Guinea; Queensland Australia; seismology; Solomon Islands; Townsville Australia; tsunamis; Seismology. Abstract: Gives a brief account of the effects of the tsunami in the different areas. Includes 5 tide gauge records. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.


petrology; phase equilibria; Solomon Islands; volcanic; volcanic rocks; West Indies; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0576-758X.

Brown, G M and Schairer, J. F. 1971. “Chemical and Melting Relations of some Calc-Alkaline Volcanic Rocks.” Memoir - Geological Society of America. Geological Society of America (GSA): Boulder, CO, United States. Volume 130, Pages 139-157. Descriptors: calcalkalic; Caribbean region; experimental studies; genesis; geochemistry; igneous rocks; magmas; Melanesia; melting; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Solomon Islands; volcanic; volcanic rocks; West Indies; Geochemistry. Abstract: Experimental studies on petrogenesis of rock suites from the West Indies and Pacific Ocean. ISSN: 0072-1069.


Brown, M. J. F. 1974. “A Development Consequence; Disposal of Mining Waste on Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” Geoforum. Pergamon: Oxford, International. Volume 18, Pages 19-27. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper; drainage systems; environmental geology; fluvial features; heavy metals; Jaba River; Kawerong River; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; metals; mining; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; pollution; rivers; rocks; Solomon Islands; tailings; waste disposal; Environmental geology. ISSN: 0016-7185.


Bruns, T. R., Vedder, J. G., Hart, P. E. and Mann, D. M. 1989. “Multichannel Seismic-Reflection Profiles Across the Solomon Islands Arc; Guadalcanal-Malaita, Vella Lavella-Choiseul, and Bougainville-Buka Regions; Geology and Offshore Resources of Pacific Island Arcs; Solomon Islands and Bougainville, Papua New Guinea Regions.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Volume 12, Pages 323-328. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; Buka; Choiseul Island; geophysical methods; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; Guadalcanal Island; island arcs; Malaita Island; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; reflection methods; seismic methods; seismic profiles; Solomon Islands; surveys; Vella Lavella Island. Notes: Non-USGS publications with USGS authors; References: 4; illus. incl. geol. sketch maps; USGS Library.

Bruns, Terry R. and Vedder, John G. 1990. “Petroleum Prospects for Offshore Sedimentary Basins in the Eastern Papua New Guinea and Solomon Islands Regions; Fifth Circum-Pacific Energy and Mineral Resources Conference; Abstracts.” AAPG Bull. Jun. Volume 74, Issue 6, Pages 961-962. Descriptors: anticlines; Australasia; basins; Bougainville; Buka; eastern Papua New Guinea; economic geology; faults; folds; genesis; Guadalcanal; Indispensable Strait; Mbokokimbo Basin; Melanesia; New Georgia Sound; New Ireland; Oceania; offshore; Papua New Guinea; petroleum; possibilities; Queen Emma Basin; reefs; reservoir rocks; sedimentary basins; Solomon Islands; Solomons Trough; source rocks; stratigraphic traps; structural traps; traps; volcaniclastics. Notes: Non-USGS publications with USGS authors; ISSN: 0149-1423.

the Sepik Provinces of Papua New Guinea. At the village of Yauatong, indoor-resting Anopheles punctulatus had an infection rate of 47.3% and an infective rate of 3.4%. ISSN: 0035-9203.

Buchbinder, B. and Halley, R. B. 1986. “Source-Rock Evaluation of Outcrop Samples from Guadalcanal, Malaita, and the Florida Island Group, Solomon Islands; Geology and Offshore Resources of Pacific Island Arcs; Central and Western Solomon Islands.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Volume 4, Pages 267-275. Descriptors: carbon; economic geology; energy sources; Florida Islands; geochemistry; Guadalcanal; kerogen; Malaita; Melanesia; natural gas; Oceania; organic carbon; organic compounds; organic materials; outcrops; petroleum; reflectance; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; source rocks. Notes: Non-USGS publications with USGS authors. References: 9; illus. incl. 2 tables, sketch map; Latitude: S120000, S063000 Longitude: E1630000, E1550000; USGS Library.

Bultitude, R. J. 1979. Bagana Volcano, Bougainville Island Geology, Petrology, and Summary of Eruptive History between 1875 and 1975. Port Moresby, Papua New Guinea: Geological Survey of Papua New Guinea. Memoir - Geological Survey of Papua New Guinea. Volume: 6, page(s): 35. Descriptors: andesitic composition; Australasia; Bagana; Bougainville; chain silicates; clinopyroxene; composition; eruptions; lava; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; plagioclase group; pyroxene group; silicates; Solomon Islands; volcanism; volcanoes; volcanology; Quaternary geology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology.

Bultitude, R. J. 1976. “Eruptive History of Bagana Volcano, Papua New Guinea, between 1882 and 1975.” Elsevier Sci. Publ. Co.: New York, N.Y., United States. Pages 317-336. Descriptors: 1882 1975; ash falls; Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; chemical composition; dust clouds; eruptions; igneous rocks; lava flows; Melanesia; mineral composition; modal analysis; Mount Bagana; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; volcanic; volcanoes; volcanology; Quaternary geology.


Carman, Graham D. 2003. “Geology, Mineralization, and Hydrothermal Evolution of the Ladolam Gold Deposit, Lihir Island, Papua New Guinea.” Special Publication (Society of Economic Geologists (U.S.)). Society of Economic Geologists: Littleton, CO, United States. Volume 10, Pages 247-284. Descriptors: alteration; Australasia; breccia; brines; carbon dioxide; Cenozoic; classification; cooling; copper ores; D H; disseminated deposits; epithermal processes; fluid inclusions; geothermal systems; gold ores; hydrogen; hydrogen sulfide; hydrothermal alteration; igneous rocks; inclusions; isoote ratios; isotopes; Ladolam Deposit; Lihir Island; magmas; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; meteoric water; mineral assemblages; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; mining; mining geology; mixing; molybdenum ores; Neogene; O 18 O 16; Oceania; open pit mining; oxygen; paleosalinity; Papua New Guinea; paragenesis; pH; Pleistocene; Pliocene; porphyry copper; porphyry molybdenum; Quaternary; resources; S 34 S 32; Solomon Islands; stable isotopes; sulfur; surface mining; temperature; Tertiary; veins; volcanic rocks; wall rock alteration; Economic geology; geology of ore deposits; Isotope geochemistry. Notes: Includes appendix. Abstract: The Ladolam gold deposit on Lihir Island, Papua New Guinea, is one of the world's largest epithermal gold deposits with a gold resource of 37 million oz. Open-pit mining commenced at Ladolam in 1997. Epithermal gold mineralization formed at 32 wt % NaCl equiv) is explained by open-system boiling and vapor loss. Fine-grained auriferous pyrite and adularia
precipitated in breccias at approximately 200 degrees C, immediately above an anhydrite-K feldspar alteration zone as fluids vented to the surface. Pyritic ores were deposited by rapid cooling associated with mixing of the magmatic ore fluid (delta (super 18) O approximately 6 per mil) with cool ground water (delta (super 18) O < or =0 per mil) and boiling. The delta (super 34) S values of pyrite (-7 to +2 per mil) and deep anhydrite (13+ or -2 per mil) suggest a magmatic sulfur source. Stage III epithermal: Quartz and calcite veins formed under hydrostatic boiling point for depth conditions. Upwelling stage III fluids at 230 degrees C were moderately saline (5+ or -0.5 wt % NaCl equiv) and contained low abundances of dissolved gases (up to 3.5 wt % CO (sub 2) + H (sub 2) S). This brine mixed with dilute meteoric ground water (near 0 wt % NaCl equiv at 170 degrees + or -10 degrees C), depositing quartz as it cooled. Isotopic compositions of deep carbonates (delta (super 13) C = -4 per mil, delta (super 18) O = 14 per mil) indicate a magmatic origin for the brine (delta (super 13) C(CO (sub 2) ) approximately -3 per mil, delta (super 18) O (H (sub 2) O) = +6 per mil). At Lienetz, an advanced argillic cap formed due to tectonic uplift of this area relative to Minifie. Silicic breccia ores in the Lienetz area contain pyrite-marcasite with lighter delta (super 34) S values (-13 to -2 per mil) compared to pyrite from Minifie (delta (super 34) S, -3 to -1 per mil). Lienetz ores probably formed at temperatures below 200 degrees C as reduced fluids mixed with descending, oxidised acid-surface waters beneath the advanced argillic cap. Gold from the earlier transitional stage II event may have been remobilized by the acid-sulfate waters and reprecipitated as electrum with fine-grained quartz in this mixing zone. Geothermal fluids in the modern system are neutral-pH chloride-sulfate brines that have a salinity similar to stage III (approximately 5.5 wt % NaCl equiv) but contain few if any magmatic volatiles. The modern system is +6 per mil, delta D = +25 per mil) and are diluted by meteoric waters (delta (super 18) O = -6 per mil, delta D = -40 per mil) within the top few hundred meters. These waters discharge into the Kapit-Coastal and Luise harbor areas, while acid-sulfate hot springs of steam-heated origin are associated with areas of steaming ground to the west and north of the major orebodies. ISSN/ISBN: 1547-3112; 1-887483-90-X.

Chambers Lynne M, Pringle Malcolm S and Fitton, J. Godfrey. 2002. “Age and Duration of Magmatism on the Ontong Java Plateau; (Super 40) Ar- (Super 39) Ar Results from ODP Leg 192.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 83, Issue 47, Suppl., Pages 1444. Descriptors: absolute age; age; Ar Ar; basalts; Cretaceous; dates; Deep Sea Drilling Project; DSDP Site 289; igneous rocks; large igneous provinces; Leg 130; Leg 192; Leg 30; magmatism; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Ocean Drilling Program; Oceania; ODP Site 1183; ODP Site 1185; ODP Site 1186; ODP Site 1187; ODP Site 803; ODP Site 807; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; periodicity; Solomon Islands; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Geochronology. Notes: CN: American Geophysical Union 2002 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 6-10, 2002. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Chapman, J H and Evans, H. J. 1978. “Wagina Island Bauxite; Exploration and Mining Assessment.” United Kingdom: United Kingdom. Pages 7 pages. Descriptors: bauxite; economic geology; economics; evaluation; exploration; Melanesia; mineral exploration; mining geology; Oceania; ore deposits; Solomon Islands; Wagina Island; Economic geology of ore deposits. CN: Eleventh Commonwealth mining and metallurgical congress. Hong Kong, Hong-Kong. 1978. Notes: Paper #5. ISSN: 0700-5741.


Chase, Thomas E and Seekins, Barbara A. 1988. “Submarine Topography of the Vanuatu and Southeastern Solomon Islands Region.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 8, Pages 35-36. Descriptors: bathymetric maps; environment; geophysical surveys; interpretation; maps; marine environment; Melanesia; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; submarine environment; surveys; topography; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Oceanography; Applied geophysics.

Chen, M., Frohlich, C. and Taylor, F. W. 2006. “Seismological, Geological and Geomorphic Aspects of Arc Segmentation and their Relation to Subducting Bathymetric Features in the Solomon Island Arc, SW Pacific Ocean.” EOS Transactions, American Geophysical Union. Volume 87, Issue 52, Pages Suppl. 26 Dec. Descriptors: Islands; Segments; Seismicity; Boundaries; Seismic phenomena; Tectonics; Segmentation; Geology; Geomorphology; Seismic engineering; Spreading; Northwest; Cross sections; Keyboards; Pianos; Subsidence; Stations; Fragmentation; Seismology. Abstract: Arc segmentation partitions forearcs into multiple blocks so that the forearc behaves like a “keyboard on a piano” as each segment potentially interacts with the downgoing plate in a different tectonic style. For example, parts of the forearc of the Solomon Islands arc has undergone hundreds of meters of rapid subsidence and uplift during late Quaternary time. Other parts have undergone only minor late Quaternary movements. We use seismology, geology, and geomorphology to identify arc segments in order to evaluate how bathymetric features on the subducting plate influence seismicity and active tectonics and cause overriding plate segmentation. Seismic rupture areas for large earthquakes, seismicity patterns, seismicity cross sections, focal mechanisms, and seismic moment calculations all reveal that the central arc being underthrust by the Woodlark Basin system of active sea-floor spreading is very different from the northwest and southeast parts of the arc. Woodlark subduction is characterized by sparse seismicity, gentle subduction angle, and thrust faulting with some normal and strike-slip components. Observations from geologic maps, coastal geomorphology, and emerged coral reefs show that the arc segments are undergoing varying amounts and rates of uplift and submergence.
Larger islands such as Guadalcanal and San Cristobal have both drowning and emerging coastlines. This information indicates the individual segments have dramatically different histories of vertical tectonics. We identify three supersegments: Bougainville, New Georgia, and Guadalcanal-San Cristobal. Smaller segments subdivide each supersegment. Thus we identify nine major boundaries, seven minor boundaries, and six possible boundaries. The classification of each boundary depends on the strength of evidence supporting its existence and the amount of change in tectonic behavior across the boundary. We speculate that subduction of the young Woodlark Spreading Center with seamounts and ridges on its fracture zone makes central Solomon Islands different from the rest of the island arc with low seismicity, high uplift rate, radical drainage patterns, fragmented islands and small arc segments. Database: Earthquake Engineering Abstracts. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Chivas, A R, Andrew, A S, Sinha, A K and O Neil, J. R. 1982. “Geochemistry of a Pliocene-Pleistocene Oceanic-Arc Plutonic Complex, Guadalcanal.” Nature (London). Volume 300, Issue 5888, Pages 139-143. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; calc alkalic composition; Cenozoic; continental crust; crust; differentiation; fractional crystallization; geochemistry; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; island arcs; isotopes; Koloula igneous complex; magmas; major elements; mantle; Melanesia; metals; Neogene; O 18 O 16; Oceania; oxygen; partial melting; petrology; plate tectonics; Pleistocene; Pliocene; plutonic rocks; pollution; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; stratigraphy; strontium; tectonophysics; Tertiary; trace elements; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0028-0836.

Chivas, A R, Andrew, A S and Sinha, A. K. 1981. “Characteristics of an Oceanic Island Arc Magma Chamber from Guadalcanal and its Tectonic Implications.” Abstracts with Programs - Geological Society of America. Volume 13, Issue 7, Pages 426. Descriptors: alkali metals; alkaline earth metals; calc alkalic composition; Chakachaka Gabbro; chemical composition; complexes; cyclic processes; differentiation; dikes; evolution; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; Inamumu zoned pluton; intrusions; island arcs; isotopes; K Rb; Koloula igneous complex; magma chambers; magmas; Melanesia; metals; O 18 O 16; Oceania; overprinting; oxygen; petrology; plutonic rocks; ratios; Rb Sr; rubidium; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; Vasuata Quartz Diorite; 05A Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Notes: Geological Society of America, 94th annual meeting; the Paleontological Society (73rd); the Mineralogical Society of America (62nd); the Society of Economic Geologists (61st); Cushman Foundation (32nd); Geochemical Society (26th); National Association of Geology Teachers (22nd); Geoscience Information Society (16th). Cincinnati, OH, United States. Nov. 2-5, 1981. ISSN: 0016-7592.

Chivas, A R and Wilkins, R. W. T. 1977. “Fluid Inclusion Studies in Relation to Hydrothermal Alteration and Mineralization at the Koloula Porphyry Copper Prospect, Guadalcanal.” Economic Geology: Bulletin of the Society of Economic Geologists. Volume 72, Issue 2, Pages 153-169. Descriptors: applications; calc alkalic; complexes; copper ores; economic geology; exploration; fluid inclusions; gases; genesis; geologic thermometry; Guadalcanal; host rocks; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous rocks; inclusions; Koloula; liquids; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; Oceania; ore deposits; porphyry copper; processes; salinity; Solomon Islands; zoning; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous processes; igneous rocks; Koloula Complex; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits; genesis; mineralization; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; petrography; porphyry copper; processes; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; structural controls; structure; West Pacific; zoning. References: 59; illus. incl. tables, geol. sketch maps. Abstract: The Koloula Igneous Complex on the island of Guadalcanal consists of a low-K calc-alkaline sequence of 26 different intrusive phases. The oldest phase is a leucogabbro within which occurs a tabular cumulate body of olivine pyroxenite. Younger phases include diorites, quartz diorites, tonalites and trondhjemite, and aplite dikes. Two major cycles of igneous activity are recognized, as well as at least four periods of andesitic dike intrusion. Four distinct episodes of hydrothermal alteration occurred within the sequence of igneous events. Two of these episodes were associated with porphyritic intrusions of tonalite composition that show textural and fluid inclusion evidence consistent with boiling. These intrusions are spatially and temporally associated with minor copper mineralization. The earlier, or A, alteration system has five distinguishable concentric zones. The innermost is sulfide free and contains alkali feldspar-quartz-magnetite-actinolite + or - pyroxene (salite). It is succeeded by zones consisting of potassic and propylitic alteration assemblages, containing chalcopyrite and bornite in the potassic zones. The later, or B, system is characterized by four zones in which chlorite, sericite, and lesser amounts of clay minerals have overprinted an earlier potassic alteration. Here, copper mineralization (average grade 0.17ppm Cu) is best developed in chloritic fractures and quartz veins. Within the B system, the fluids responsible for hydrothermal alteration became progressively less saline and to some extent cooler during the system’s evolution. It is likely that ocean water played a significant role in the later stages of the B system. The gradual decrease in the K (super +)H (super +) ratio of the B system fluids is responsible for the observed alteration veinlet sequence: phlogopite --> chlorite --> sericite. Peripheral vein assemblages of the B system were formed at lower temperatures than the final sericite and sericite-clay alteration within the center of the system. These peripheral assemblages are now composed mainly of poorly crystalline illite and interstratified illite-smectite. The final-stage veins consist of laumontite + or - smectite that postdate at least part of the B system and are widespread throughout the Koloula Igneous Complex. The solutions responsible for laumontite deposition were low temperature (nearly equal 250 degrees C) and water rich (X (sub CO (sub 2) ) < or =0.03). Electron probe studies of alteration minerals indicate that hydrothermal pyroxene, amphibole, and usually biotite are more magnesian and contain less TiO (sub 2) than primary (magmatic) mafic silicates from the same, or similar, rock types. Secondary biotites from the B system are progressively less magnesian and richer in octahedral aluminium with increasing distance from the center of the B alteration area. Secondary alkali feldspar from the A system is somewhat more sodic in the outer alteration zones than in the center of the system. Within the B system, illite crystallinity and molybdenite polytypism of samples are related to distance from the center of alteration. The compositions of chlorite (usually pynchiochlorite or ripidolite), sericite, and epidote (22 to 30 mole % pistacite) are not related to spatial position within alteration zones but reflect the initial chemical composition of the rock or mineral which they have replaced. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Chivas, A. R. 1976. “Magmatic Evolution and Porphyry Copper Mineralization of the Koloula Igneous Complex, Guadalcanal.” International Geological Congress, Abstracts--Congres Geologique Internationale, Resumes, no.25, Vol.1, Section 2, Petrology; Igneous Rocks Associated with Island-Arc Volcanism. Issue 25, Pages 48. Descriptors: biotite; Cenozoic; chemical composition; copper ores; differentiation; economic geology; Guadalcanal; igneous activity; Koloula igneous complex; magmas; Melanesia; metal ores; mica group; mineralization; Oceania;
ore deposits; Pleistocene; porphyry copper; Quaternary; sheet silicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; zoning. Notes: IGC, International Geological Congress. USGS Library.

Chivas, A. R. 1975. “Geochemistry of the Koloula Igneous Complex, Guadalcanal.” Bulletin - Australian Society of Exploration Geophysicists. Jun. Volume 6, Issue 2-3, Pages 64-65. Descriptors: Australasia; Cenozoic; chemical composition; complexes; composition; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; Koloula Complex; Melanesia; Neogene; Oceania; petrology; Pleistocene; Pliocene; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; volcanic. ISSN: 0314-2876.

Chivas, A. R., Andrew, A. S. and Sinha, A. K. 1981. “Characteristics of an Oceanic Island Arc Magma Chamber from Guadalcanal and its Tectonic Implications; Geological Society of America, 94th Annual Meeting.” Abstracts with Programs - Geological Society of America. Sep. Volume 13, Issue 7, Pages 426. Descriptors: alkali metals; alkaline earth metals; calc-alkalic composition; Chakachaka Gabbro; chemical composition; complexes; cyclic processes; differentiation; dikes; evolution; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; Inamumu zoned pluton; intrusions; island arcs; isotopes; K/Rb; Koloula igneous complex; magma chambers; magmas; Melanesia; metals; O-18/O-16; Oceania; overprinting; oxygen; petrology; plutonic rocks; ratios; Rub/Sr; rubidium; Solomon Islands; Sr-87/Sr-86; stable isotopes; strontium; Vasuata Quartz Diorite. Notes: 1 table; ISBN: 0016-7592.

Chivas, A. R., Andrew, A. S., Sinha, A. K. and O’Neil, J. R. 1982. “Geochemistry of a Pliocene-Pleistocene Oceanic-Arc Plutonic Complex, Guadalcanal.” Nature. Volume 300, Issue 5888, Pages 139-143. Descriptors: phase transitions; geophysics; crystal growth; fractionation; strontium. Abstract: The Koloula Igneous Complex, on the island of Guadalcanal, consists of a low-K calc-alkaline sequence of 26 different intrusive phases. The major intrusions are characterized by K/Rb > 400, Rb/Sr < 0.06, delta super(18) O of 5.7 to 7.2 and uniform super(87)Sr/ super(86)Sr of 0.70372. This article presents the first data describing oxygen and strontium isotopic behaviour within a plutonic suite that formed by crystal fractionation. ISSN: 0028-0836.

Chivas, A. R. and McDougall, I. 1978. “Geochronology of the Koloula Porphyry Copper Prospect, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands; Porphyry Copper Deposits of the Southwestern Pacific Islands and Australia.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Aug. Volume 73, Issue 5, Pages 678-689. Descriptors: absolute age; age; amphibole group; Australasia; biotite; Cenozoic; chain silicates; clinoamphibole; copper ores; cyclic processes; dates; diorites; economic geology; gabbros; genesis; geochronology; Guadalcanal; hornblende; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous activity; igneous processes; igneous rocks; K/Ar; Koloula Complex; lower Pleistocene; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mica group; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; Neogene; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Pleistocene; Pliocene; plutonic rocks; porphyry copper; Quaternary; sheet silicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; Tertiary; tonalite; volcanic rocks; West Pacific. Abstract: K-Ar ages are reported for the major intrusive and mineralization episodes from the Koloula Igneous Complex. Two major cycles of igneous activity occurred. Cycle 1 rocks (gabbro including olivine pyroxenite, diorite, Vasuata Quartz Diorite, dolerite dikes, granodiorite, and aplite dikes) are at least 4.5 m.y. old. The major cycle 2 intrusions (quartz diorites and tonalites) were emplaced 2.4 m.y. ago. In one of these bodies (Inamumu Zoned Pluton) hydrothermal alteration and mineralization followed within a short interval not exceeding 0.3 m.y. Within this mineralized area (A system) the average age from primary biotite of 1.55 m.y. indicates a protracted cooling history. A satellite pluton (Kolokemau Tonalite), that on field evidence is younger than the main cycle 2 intrusive episode, has an age of 2.0 m.y. A second episode of mineralization (B system) is spatially
and temporally associated with the Chikora Tonalite Porphyry and a series of trondhjemite dikes. The preferred age for strongly altered whole rocks from this system is 1.7 to 1.6 m.y. An andesitic dike that locally postdates this alteration has an age in the range 1.7 to 1.5 m.y. A date of 24.4 m.y. is reported for tonalite from the Poha Diorite Complex, another igneous body on the island of Guadalcanal. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Chivas, A. R. and Wilkins, R. W. T. 1977. “Fluid Inclusion Studies in Relation to Hydrothermal Alteration and Mineralization at the Koloula Porphyry Copper Prospect, Guadalcanal.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Apr. Volume 72, Issue 2, Pages 153-169. Descriptors: applications; calc-alkalic; complexes; copper ores; economic geology; exploration; fluid inclusions; gases; genesis; geologic thermometry; Guadalcanal; host rocks; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous rocks; inclusions; Koloula; liquids; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; Oceania; ore deposits; porphyry copper; processes; salinity; Solomon Islands; zoning. Abstract: The Koloula Igneous Complex on the island of Guadalcanal, part of the British Solomon Islands Protectorate, consists of a calc-alkaline sequence of 26 intrusive phases ranging from leucogabbro through diorites and granodiorites to andesite dikes. The intermediate and felsic rocks of the younger central part of the complex are host to porphyry copper mineralization, characterized by two well-defined separate alteration systems. The earlier or “A” system has five distinguishable concentric zones. The innermost is sulfide free and contains K feldspar-quartz-magnetite-actinolite-pyroxene (salite). It is succeeded by zones containing potassic and propylitic assemblages, with chalcopyrite and bornite associated with the potassic zones. The later, or “B” system, is characterized by four zones in which sericite and lesser amounts of clay minerals predominate. Fluid inclusion assemblages are closely similar to those from porphyry copper deposits of the Bingham type. Three types of inclusions are common: gas-rich, moderately saline, highly saline inclusions which contain NaCl + or - KCl + or - hematite + or - birefringent phases. Homogenization temperatures obtained from moderately and highly saline inclusions range up to approximately 700 degrees C in the A system and up to 480 degrees in the B system. There is a continuous variation in salinity from 2 percent equivalent NaCl in some two-phase inclusions up to approximately 60 percent equivalent NaCl in some highly saline inclusions. The evolution of fluids in the A hydrothermal system has not proved easy to elucidate, but the best development of high-salinity inclusions containing KCl daughter crystals is found in areas of strong potassic alteration. Information derived from the sequence of secondary fluid inclusion planes and from the coincidence of alteration and late-intrusive activity suggests that in the B system high-salinity fluids dominated the early phase of alteration and moderate-salinity fluids dominated the later phases. It is considered that both hydrothermal systems developed predominantly under lithostatic pressure conditions with a cover of about 3 km. Counts of inclusions in primary quartz in standard petrographic thin sections reveal a close relationship between fluid inclusion abundance and the location of Cu soil geochemistry anomalies. Such counts may well prove to be a simple preliminary exploration technique for porphyry copper prospect evaluation. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Chivas, Allan Ross. 1977. Geochemistry, Geochronology and Fluid Inclusion Studies of Porphyry Copper Mineralization at the Koloula Igneous Complex, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. Descriptors: 4, xx, 414 leaves; Copper ores- Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands); Porphyry-Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands); Porphyry- Inclusions; Fluid inclusions- Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands); Dikes (Geology)- Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands); Geochemistry-Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands); Hydrothermal deposits- Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands); Thesis/dissertation; Manuscript. Notes: Dissertation: Thesis (Ph. D.)--University of...

Chong, Michel and Campos, Claudia. 1996. “Extended Overdetermined Dual-Doppler Formalism in Synthesizing Airborne Doppler Radar Data.” Journal of Atmospheric and Oceanic Technology, Boston, MA. Volume 13, Issue 3, Pages 581-597. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Doppler radar data processing; Doppler radar observation of airflow. Notes: June 1996. Refs. figs. table. Abstract: During the intensive observing period of the field phase of the Coupled Ocean-Atmosphere Response Experiment (COARE) of the Tropical Oceans and Global Atmosphere (TOGA) program, airborne Doppler radars capable of fore-aft scanning (dual-Doppler analog) were involved in aircraft missions in which highly coordinated and parallel tracks were flown (quad-Doppler analog). Pairs of observations from each radar can be used to infer the wind components through an iterative dual-equation solution, while combining them allows a direct determination. Errors from these two analysis methods are discussed, in particular those induced from geometrical considerations. Due to these geometrical limitations, neither the dual-Doppler nor the quad-Doppler approach can take advantage of the whole volume sampling. To overcome the limitations and to increase considerably the synthesis domain, the overdetermined dual-Doppler (ODD) technique is proposed in an extended version (EODD). EODD includes solutions to these problems as well as means to mitigate the inevitable contribution of errors in estimating the vertical velocity, previously described in early studies. The EODD technique is applied to data collected in a squall line that occurred near Guadalcanal Island on 22 February 1993, from Doppler radars aboard the two NOAA WP-3D aircraft. Similar airflow structures, consistent with those from previous studies, are obtained from application of the EODD method to dual-Doppler and quad-Doppler observations, indicative of the validity of using the proposed method to solve either dual- or quad-Doppler data configurations. Database: Meteorological & Geoastrophysical Abstracts. ISSN: 0739-0572.


Christiansen, Sofus. 1964. “On Lake Tegano, Rennell Island, and some Remarks on the Problem of Rennell's Origin.” Geografisk Tidsskrift. Kongelige Danske Geografiske Selskab: Copenhagen, Denmark. Volume 63, Part 1, Pages 99-111. Descriptors: genesis; geomorphology; lacustrine features; lakes; landform evolution; Melanesia; Oceania; Rennell island; Solomon Islands; Geomorphology. Abstract: The probable connection between Lake Tegano, on Rennell island (Mugaba), an emerged atoll in the British Solomon islands, and open ocean, and the morphology of the lake bottom are discussed. General comments on the morphology and origin of Rennell island are presented. ISSN: 0016-7223.

Clark, G. H. 1990. “Panguna Copper-Gold Deposit.” Monograph Series - Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy. Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: Melbourne, Victoria, Australia. Volume 14, Pages 1807-1816. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; distribution; economic geology; gold ores; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Panguna Deposit; Papua New Guinea; processes; Solomon Islands; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0155-3399.

Clifton, R A, Keyes, W F, Buterman, W C, Corrick, J. D. and Wyche, C. 1976. “The Mineral Industry of Other South Pacific Islands.” Minerals Yearbook.1973, Vol. U. S. Bureau of Mines: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 3, Pages 1183-1193. Descriptors: 1973; Australasia; Christmas Island; economic geology; economics; Fiji; industry; Melanesia; metals; Micronesia; mineral resources; Nauru Island; New Caledonia; New Islands; nonmetals; Ocean Island; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; petroleum; production; Solomon Island; Solomon Islands; Vanuatu; Economic geology, general. ISSN: 0076-8952.

Clifton, R A, Potter, M J, Buterman, W C, Corrick, J. D. and Wychem C. 1977. “The Mineral Industry of Other South Pacific Islands.” Minerals Yearbook.1974, Vol. U. S. Bureau of Mines: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 3; Area reports, Issue international, Pages 1267-1278. Descriptors: 1974; Australasia; Christmas Island; economic geology; economics; Fiji; gas; Melanesia; metals; Micronesia; mineral resources; natural; natural gas; Nauru Island; New Caledonia; nonmetals; Ocean Island; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; petroleum; production; Solomon Islands; Vanuatu; Economic geology, general. ISSN: 0076-8952.

Coleman, P. J. 1963. “Tertiary larger foraminifera of the British Solomon islands, southwest Pacific.” Micropaleontology; January 1963; v. 9; no. 1; pages 1-38. Abstract: “Three distinctive faunas are distinguished among larger foraminifera from Tertiary localities of the Solomon islands--the San Jorge fauna, Aquitanian (uppermost Oligocene-lowermost Miocene), the Anubia fauna (Burdigalian), and a third fauna comprising Pliocene to Recent species. The various species, two of which are new, are systematically described. A review of the structure and stratigraphy of the islands is included.”


Coleman Patrick Joseph and McTavish, R. A. 1964. “Association of Larger and Planktonic Foraminifera in Single Samples from Middle Miocene Sediments, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands, Southwest Pacific.” Journal of the Royal Society of Western Australia Volume 47, Part 1, Pages 13-24. Descriptors: Cenozoic; Foraminifera; Guadalcanal region; Invertebrata; Melanesia; microfossils; Miocene; Miocene foraminifera; Neogene; Oceania; paleontology; Protista; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; 10 Invertebrate paleontology. Abstract: Although generally mutually exclusive,
larger foraminifera and planktonic species have been found in association in certain middle
Miocene localities of the Guadalcanal area. The stratigraphic setting and age significance of the
association are discussed. The association of larger foraminifera with planktonic species of the
Sphaeroidinellopsis seminulina fauna was contemporaneous during Vindobonian time. Some of the
species persisted into the Tortonian. ISSN: 0035-922X.
Petroleum: Possibilities and Marked Gravity Anomalies in North Central Guadalcanal. British
Solomon Islands. Descriptors: p. 112-119, 2 folded leaves of plates; Geology- Solomon Islands-
Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Gravity anomalies- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands-
Guadalcanal; Petroleum- Geology- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal
(Solomon Islands). Notes: Reprinted from: The British Solomon Islands Geological Record, 1959-
Coleman, Patrick J. Great Britain and Directorate of Overseas Surveys. 1959. “Geological
Sketch Map of North-Central Guadalcanal, B.S.I.P.” London: Directorate of Overseas Surveys.
Descriptors: Geology- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- Maps. Notes: Description: 1 map; col. 31 x
49 cm. Map Info: Scale [1:158,000]. Notes: “Drawn and photographed by Directorate of Overseas
OCLC: 42864807.
Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Tectonics; Geochemistry; Seismology; Article Geographic
Terms: Solomon I; India Plate; I, Pacific Plate; Marine. Abstract: The Solomon chain is made up of
a part of the Ontong Java Plateau on the north-east flank, a central Early Tertiary tholeiitic
province, and a Plio-Pleistocene volcanic pile on the west-southwest flank. Evidence that the Early
Tertiary province arose as an arc with NE-facing polarity is ambiguous and limited especially by
lack of refined geochemical data. If low-angle obduction of the Plateau over the central province
could be proven, then this would be strong indirect evidence of an old subduction zone, but the
relation between these two can just as well be interpreted as one of high angle strike-slip. The
young volcanics are geochemically peculiar and not a typical young arc assemblage. The seismicity
is puzzling does not define a subduction zone. In terms of juvenile arc development the absence of
volcanics east of western Guadalcanal is altogether anomalous. Given the fact of the Line Islands
and notion of volcanic accumulations along fracture zones and leaky transforms, then the Solomons
can be speculatively interpreted as an old oceanic fracture system that has been incorporated into an
Database: ASFA: Aquatic Sciences and Fisheries Abstracts. OCLC: 5268895.
Collinson, Clifford W. 1926. Life and Laughter ‘Midst the Cannibals. London: Hurst &
Studies on Fossils from the Solomon Islands.” Pages 49-53. Descriptors: Cenozoic; Invertebrata;
Melanesia; Oceania; paleontology; Quaternary; Russell group; Solomon Islands; Solomon islands,
Russell group, fossils; General paleontology. Notes: Ann. Kentucky Nat. Hist., Louisville, art. 7;
Abstract: “By a restudy of the fauna of the coral deposit on the island of Pavuvu in the Russell
group of the Solomon islands, the geologic age of the deposit is found to be Pleistocene-Recent,
and more probably Recent.”
Volume 3, Issue 2, Pages 21-23. Descriptors: Cenozoic; Invertebrata; Melanesia; Oceania;
paleontology; Russell group; Solomon Islands; Solomon islands, Russell group, fossils; Tertiary;
General paleontology. Abstract: Lists the corals and mollusks which have been generically
identified in a collection made on Pavuvu in the Russell group of the Solomon islands, and briefly describes a few of the doubtful forms. The fossils are considered Tertiary in age.


Cooper A K, Cochrane G R and Bruns, T. R. 1989. “Velocity-Structure of the Upper Crust Beneath the Solomon Islands-Bougainville Island Arc.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 12, Pages 23-46. Descriptors: Australasia; basement; Bougainville; Cenozoic; crust; geophysical methods; geophysical survey; igneous rocks; island arcs; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; refraction methods; sedimentary rocks; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; seismic methods; surveys; velocity structure; upper crust; velocity; velocity structure; Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics.


Cooper, A K, Wood, R A, Bruns, T R and Marlow, M. S. 1982. “Crustal Structure of the Solomon Islands Arcs from Sonobuoy Refraction Data.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 63, Issue 45, Pages 1120. Descriptors: causes; crust; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; island arcs; marine methods; marine sedimentation; Melanesia; New Georgia Sound; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; reflection methods; refraction methods; sedimentation; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; sonobuoys; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; structural geology; surveys; tectonics; tectonophysics; velocity structure; volcanism; volcanology; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Structural geology. Notes: CN: American Geophysical Union, 1982 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 7-15, 1982. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Atmospheric Circulation; Optical Radar; Pacific Ocean; Troposphere; Water Vapor; EDB/540110; Atmospheric boundary layer; Marine meteorology; CEPEX experiment; Atmospheric sciences Meteorological data collection analysis and weather forecasting. Abstract: Los Alamos National Laboratory (LANL) participated in the Central Equatorial Pacific Experiment (CEPEX) by fielding a water-vapor Raman lidar on board the Research Vessel Vickers. The lidar measured water vapor concentration from the surface to lower tropospheric altitudes in order to support the CEPEX goal of evaluating a hypothesis regarding feedback mechanisms for global circulation models. This report describes some of the features observed within the marine Atmospheric Boundary Layer (ABL) and the lower troposphere. Data was collected continuously 24 hours per day over the equatorial Pacific from March 8th to March 21st of 1993 while in route between Guadalcanal and Christmas Island (the transect was at approximately 2\(^\circ\) south latitude). The lidar collected vertical transects of water vapor concentration up to 10 km during night operations and 4 km in the day. The vertical lidar profiles of water vapor were produced by summing the data over a period up to 600 seconds. The water-vapor Raman lidar measured the properties of the marine ABL as well as the lower and mid-troposphere. From the lidar water vapor profiles, “images” of water vapor concentration versus altitude and date or sea surface temperature will be produced along with other products such as latent heat fluxes. The Raman water vapor lidar data will be used to better understand the role of transport and exchange at the ocean-atmosphere interface and throughout the marine atmosphere. Funder: Department of Energy, Washington, DC. Conference on agricultural and Forest Meteorology (21st), Boston, MA, Mar 1994. Sponsored by Department of Energy, Washington, DC. ERA citation 19:013051. NTIS: DE94006235XSP.

Cooper, D. I., Eichinger, W. E., Barr, S., et al. 1996. “High-Resolution Properties of the Equatorial Pacific Marine Atmospheric Boundary Layer from Lidar and Radiosonde Observations.” Journal of Atmospheric Sciences. July. Volume 53, Issue 14, Pages 2054-2075. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: atmospheric boundary layer; air-sea coupling; lidar; radiosondes; ocean-atmosphere system; aerosols; water vapour; Article Geographic Terms: Equatorial Pacific; Marine. TR: CS9707012. Abstract: A “thermostat” mechanism for cooling the Equatorial Pacific is being tested with data collected during the Central Equatorial Pacific Experiment. The Los Alamos National Laboratory participated by fielding two shipboard lidars that collected nearly continuous data over the Pacific from 10 to 21 March 1993 as the ship sailed from Guadalcanal to Christmas Island. A Raman lidar measured water vapor mixing ratio in the lower troposphere, especially in the marine atmospheric boundary layer (ABL), and an aerosol backscatter lidar measured height and thickness of clouds to an altitude of 20 km. The data collected from these two lidars were used to determine ocean-atmosphere phenomenology, which in turn, affects the climatology of the Central Pacific. Agreement between coincident radiosonde and the Raman water vapor lidar measurements was typically within plus or minus 0.25 g kg super(-1) of water. Divergence between the two instruments occurred at transitions between distinct layers in the lower marine atmosphere. Reasons for this divergence will be discussed. Above the ABL the lidar and radiosonde are in excellent agreement. A wealth of detail is apparent in the lidar-derived profiles. For example, there are large variations in water vapor mixing ratio-the expression of the inherent low-frequency, intermittent, atmospheric turbulence that produces spatially discrete features such as convective plumes. These features define the structure and extent of the ABL. Using the ABL structural characteristics, an analysis of the relationship between entrainment zone (EZ) height and observed sea surface temperature (SST) revealed counterintuitive behavior—that the height of the EZ decreases as SST increases in the range between 27 degree and 30 degree C. ISSN: 0022-4928.

Cooper Patricia, A. and Taylor Brian. 1985. “Polarity Reversal in the Solomon Islands Arc.” Nature (London). Macmillan Journals: London, United Kingdom. Volume 314, Issue 6010, Pages 428-430. Descriptors: Benioff zone; earthquakes; intermediate focus earthquakes; island arcs; Melanesia; movement; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; plate collision; plate convergence; plate tectonics; reversals; seismicity; seismology; seismotectonics; shallow focus earthquakes; Solomon Islands; subduction; subduction zones; tectonics; tectonophysics; trenches; Wadati Zone; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics; Seismology. ISSN: 0028-0836.


Cooper, Patricia Ann. 1985. Seismicity, Focal Mechanisms and Morphology of Subducted Lithosphere in the Papua New Guinea-Solomon Islands Region. Honolulu, HI, United States: University of Hawaii. Descriptors: Australasia; Benioff zone; focal mechanism; Indian Plate; lithosphere; Melanesia; New Britain; Oceania; ophiolite; Pacific Plate; Papua New Guinea; plate boundaries; plate collision; plate tectonics; seismicity; seismology; Solomon Islands; subduction; tectonophysics; Seismology. CN: AGU 1984 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 3-7, 1984. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Cross, E. R. 1972. “Conus Gloriamaris Follow-Up.” Hawaii. Shell News. Volume 20, Issue 3, Descriptors: Marine. Abstract: Up till 1969 only similar to 100 specimens of C. gloriamaris were known. One fossil specimen, 20 million yrs old is now described as are several of the more recently collected specimens. After the preparation of a register for C. gloriamaris it is now apparent that similar to 200 specimens are in collections. It is hoped that in due course the register will be published. Data are requested for Guadalcanal collections of C. gloriamaris. ISSN: 0017-8624; OCLC: 1941145.


seismic zoning; seismicity; Solomon Islands; Seismology. Notes: Includes appendices; Access according to University regulations.


Daniel J, Collot J Y, Monzier M, et al. 1986. “Subduction Et Collisions Le Long De l'Arc Des Nouvelles-Hebrides (Vanuatu); Resultats Preliminaires De La Campagne SEAPSO Translated Title: Subduction and Collisions Along the New Hebrides Island Arc (Vanuatu); Preliminary Results of the SEAPSO Cruise, Leg I.” Comptes Rendus De l'Academie Des Sciences, Serie 2, Mecanique, Physique, Chimie, Sciences De l'Univers, Sciences De La Terre. Gauthier-Villars: Montrouge, France. Volume 303, Issue 9, Pages 805-810. Descriptors: Australasia; Australo Indian Plate; bathymetry; Bougainville; expeditions; faults; folds; geophysical surveys; Indo Australian Plate; Loyauté; Melanesia; New Hebrides Trench; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; Papua New Guinea; plate collision; plate tectonics; SEAPSO Leg I; shear; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction; surveys; tectonophysics; trenches; volcaniclastics; West Pacific; Wousi; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0764-4450.

Daniel J, Hawkins L V, Jouannic C, Larue, M. and Recy J. 1975. “Marine Geology on the East Margin of Indo-Australian Plate between New Caledonia and Solomon Islands.” Pages 396. Descriptors: faults; fracture zones; Indo Australian Plate; marine geology; Melanesia; mid ocean ridges; New Caledonia; Oceania; orientation; Pacific Ocean; Rennell Ridge; rift zones; Solomon Islands; structural geology; structure; tectonics; Vanuatu; Oceanography.

Davidson, Mary E. 1929. On a Small Collection of Birds from Torres Strait Islands, and from Guadalcanal Island, Solomon Group. San Francisco: Descriptors: 245-260; Birds- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Birds- Australia- Torres Strait Islands (Qld.). Notes: Caption title. LCCN: 53-3229. OCLC: 4628159.

Davies, Gareth R. and Neal, Clive R. 1987. “Mantle Megacryst and Host Volcanic Petrogenesis by Zone Refining and AFC; Evidence from the Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 68, Issue 44, Pages 1552. Descriptors: alnoite; augite; basalts; chain silicates; clinopyroxene; diapirs; fractional crystallization; geochemistry; igneous rocks; isotopes; lamprophyres; magmas; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; metals; mineral composition; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; plutonic rocks; pyroxene group; rare earths; silicates; Solomon Islands; stable isotopes; volcanic rocks; Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Notes: CN: American Geophysical Union, 1987 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 6-12, 1987. ISSN: 0096-3941. Davies H, Bani P, Black P, Smith I, Garaebiti, E. and Rodda P. 2005. “Oceania (Including Fiji, PNG and Solomons).” Elsevier Academic Press: Oxford, United Kingdom. Pages 109-122. Descriptors: areal geology; Australasia; energy sources; Fiji; geologic hazards; lithostratigraphy; Melanesia; mineral resources; New Caledonia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; petrology; plate collision; plate tectonics; Polynesia; Samoa; Solomon Islands; Tonga; Areal geology. ISBN: 0-12-636380-3.

Davies, H. L. 1985. “Mineral Potential of the Southwest Pacific Islands.” UNEP Regional Seas Reports and Studies. United Nations Environment Programme, Regional Seas Programme: Geneva, International. Volume 69, Pages 129-142. Descriptors: East Pacific Ocean Islands; economic geology; energy sources; Fiji; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral resources; Nauru; New Caledonia; nonmetal deposits; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Polynesia; production; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; Tonga; Vanuatu; volcanism; West Pacific; West Pacific Ocean Islands; 26A Economic geology, general, deposits. Abstract: The islands of the South Pacific produce minerals worth about one billion dollars each year. Chief revenue are the large porphyry copper-gold mine at Panguna on Bougainville Island in Papua New Guinea, the nickel mines of New Caledonia, and the phosphate exported from Nauru. Metals which have been produced in the past, from these and other islands, include gold and silver, base metals, antimony, cobalt, chromium, manganese and magnesite; other known metals and minerals include mercury, molybdenum, coal, hydrocarbons and probably uranium. In the immediate future a second large porphyry copper-gold mine will come into being in Papua New Guinea, at Ok Tedi near the Irian Jaya border. Other likely developments include the discovery of commercial accumulations of hydrocarbons in Papua New Guinea, and possibly in Tonga and Fiji, the discovery and/or development of other gold, silver, base metal, nickel, cobalt, chromium and phosphate deposits, in response to more thorough or sophisticated exploration, or improved metal prices; the better definition and possible commercial development of known deposits of bauxite, coal, mineral sands and metal-rich sea floor nodules; and the possible discovery of mercury and tungsten minerals,
platinum group metals, metals of the carbonatite association, sea floor volcanic vent minerals, diamonds, uranium and precious coral. ISSN: 1014-8647.

Dawson J B, Delaney J S and Smith, J. V. 1978. “Aspects of the Mineralogy of Alnoitic Breccia; Malaita, Solomon Islands; Comparison with Continental Kimberlites.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 67, Issue 2, Pages 189-193. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; alnoitic composition; augite; breccia; chain silicates; chemical composition; chromium; elastic rocks; clinopyroxene; composition; diopside; enstatite; garnet group; geochemistry; igneous rocks; kimberlite; lamprophyres; magnesium; Malaita; Melanesia; metals; mica group; mineral composition; nesosilicates; nickel; Oceania; orthopyroxene; orthosilicates; petrology; phlogopite; plutonic rocks; pyrope; pyroxene group; sedimentary rocks; sheet silicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; titanium; ultramasics; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0010-7999.

Dawson, J. B. 1979. “A Review of the Geology of Kimberlite.; 2.” Robert E. Krieger Publ. Co.: Huntington, NY, United States. Pages 241-251. Descriptors: Africa; age; Angola; Asia; Australasia; Australia; Borneo; Brazil; Central Africa; classification; Commonwealth of Independent States; Congo; Czechoslovakia; diatremes; distribution; East Africa; emplacement; Europe; Far East; global; igneous rocks; inclusions; India; Indian Peninsula; intrusions; kimberlite; Lesotho; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; Namibia; North America; Oceania; petrography; plutonic rocks; review; Scandinavia; Solomon Islands; South Africa; South America; Southern Africa; Tanzania; tectonics; ultramasics; USSR; Western Europe; Zimbabwe; Igneous and metamorphic petrology.

De, Weisse G. 1970. “Bauxite Sur Un Atoll Du Pacifique; l'Le De Rennell Dans l'Archipel Des Salomon Translated Title: Bauxite on a Pacific Atoll; Rennell, Solomon Islands.” Miner. Deposita. Springer-Verlag: Berlin, Federal Republic of Germany. Volume 5, Issue 2, Pages 181-183. Descriptors: analyses; bauxite; carbonate rocks; economic geology; genesis; laterites; limestone; Melanesia; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Rennell island; sedimentary rocks; soils; Solomon Islands; Tropical climate; weathering; Economic geology of nonmetal deposits. Abstract: Formed by dissolution of recently uplifted coral limestones, soil analyses, tabulated chemical data. ISSN: 0026-4598.


Denham, D. 1968. “Thickness of the Earth's Crust in Papua New Guinea and the British Solomon Islands.” Australian Journal of Science. Australian and New Zealand Association for the Advancement of Science (ANZAAS): Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 30, Issue 7, Pages 277. Descriptors: applications; Australasia; British solomon islands; crust; Crustal thickness; earthquakes; Malay Archipelago; marine geology; Melanesia; New Guinea; New Guinea Solomon islands; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua; Papua New Guinea; seismology; Solomon Islands; structural geology; structure; thickness; 16 Structural geology. Abstract: Preliminary results of an analysis of the P-wave spectrum from deep earthquakes recorded at the Port Moresby, Rabaul, and Honiara seismic stations indicate a large difference in crustal thickness between Port Moresby and the Solomon islands-New Britain region. The data may be revised by further study, however, since results obtained at Rabaul and Honiara were poor. ISSN: 0365-3668.

Denham, D. 1968. “Seismicity of Bougainville, 1960-1966.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1968/1, page(s): 12. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; earthquakes; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; SB5608; SB5612; seismic intensity; seismographs; seismology; Solomon Islands; Seismology. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.


EPR spectra; fossil man; geochronology; Holocene; Melanesia; Namu burial site; Oceania; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; spectra; Taumako; teeth; Geochronology; 24 Quaternary geology.


Depledge D R and Dench, N. D. 1995. “Geothermal Resources of Five Pacific Island Nations.” Proceedings of the New Zealand Geothermal Workshop. University of Auckland Geothermal Institute, Centre for Continuing Education 1979 -: Auckland, New Zealand. Volume 17, Pages 19-21. Descriptors: Australasia; exploration; Fiji; geothermal energy; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Polynesia; Samoa; Solomon Islands; Vanuatu; western Samoa; 29A Economic geology, geology of energy sources. Notes: CN: 17th New Zealand geothermal workshop. Auckland, New Zealand. 1995. Abstract: In 1993 several member countries of the South Pacific Applied Geoscience Commission (SOPAC), requested a survey of regional geothermal potential. This request reflects a growing interest in the countries of the southwest Pacific to find reliable domestic energy resources which could result in less dependence on imported fossil fuels. With financial assistance from the New Zealand government a report was prepared for SOPAC by Geothermal Energy New Zealand Limited (GENZL), on the resource data available and potential development of the geothermal fields. The report, published in June this year, includes a proposed exploration programme to complete pre-commercial studies in five countries. This paper describes the findings of the report and comments on the potential uses of geothermal energy in the developing countries of the South Pacific. ISSN/ISBN: 0111-6835; 0-85859-008-2.

Diamond, Jared M. 1984. “‘Normal’ Extinctions of Isolated Populations.” Univ. Chicago Press: Chicago, IL, United States. Pages 191-246. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; Australia; Aves; Barro Colorado Island; Brazil; Cenozoic; Chordata; Eastern U.S.; Ecuador; endemic taxa; extinction; Far East; Indian Ocean; Mammalia; Melanesia; New Zealand; Oceania; paleoecology; paleontology; Philippine Islands; Pleistocene; Quaternary; Sahul Shelf; Solomon Islands; South America; Sundra Shelf; Tasmania Australia; Tetrapoda; Timor Sea; United States; Vertebrata; Vertebrate paleontology. Notes: Sixth annual spring systematics symposium; Extinctions. Chicago, United States. May 13-14, 1983. ISBN: 0-226-58690-1.


Doran, Edwin. 1959. “Handbook of Selected Pacific Islands.” Pacific Missile Range Point MUGU, CA. 20 DEC 1959. 209 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Pacific Ocean Islands; Handbooks; Canton Island; Galapagos Islands; Johnston Island; New Guinea; Marshall Islands; Midway Island; Polynesia; Australia; Borneo; Terrain; Climate; Ecology; Population; Harbors; Roads; Buildings; Government (Foreign); Maps. Abstract: Available physical and economic geographical information concerning the following atolls, islands, and specific areas of certain islands is summarized: Abemama; Aitutaki; Baker; Barking Sands (Kauai); Biak; Bikini; Bora-Bora; Canton; Christmas; Clarion; Clipperton; Darwin (Australia); Ducie; Eniwetok; Fiji; Galapagos; Guadalcanal; Guadalupe; Henderson; Howland; Jarvis; Johnston; Kalae (Hawaii); Kaneohe Bay (Oahu); Kapingamarangi; Kuching (Borneo); Kure; Kusaie; Kwajalein; Laysan; Lisianski; Majuro; Manus; Midway; Mussau; Nauru; Northwest Cape (Australia); Ocean; Oeno; Palmyra; Pitcairn; Ponape; Rarotonga; Tahiti; Tarawa; Tongareva; Tongatapu; Truk; Wake; Woomera (Australia). Notes: Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC: AD0646916.

Natural History of Guadalcanal


Dunn J R, Fuller M, Green G, McCabe, R. and Williams I. 1979. “Preliminary Paleomagnetic Results from the Philippines, Marianas, Carolines and Solomons.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 60, Issue 18, Pages 239. Descriptors: Asia; Caroline Islands; Cenozoic; continental drift; Far East; magnetization; Mariana Islands; Melanesia; Micronesia; movement; natural remanent magnetization; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; paleomagnetism; Philippine Islands; plate tectonics; remanent magnetization; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; tectonophysics; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Notes: American Geophysical Union; 1979 spring annual meeting. Washington, D.C., United States. May 28-June 1, 1979. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Dziewonski Adam M, Franzen J E, Giardini D and Woodhouse, John H. 1984. “Global Seismicity of 1983.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 65, Issue 16, Pages 241. Descriptors: Arctic Ocean; Asia; Atlantic Ocean; Australasia; body waves; Bonin Islands; California; centroid moment tensors; Coalinga California; Commonwealth of Independent States; earthquakes; elastic waves; Far East; Fresno County California; global; Hokkaido; Idaho; Izu; Japan; Japan Sea; Kuril Islands; long period waves; Melanesia; Mid Atlantic Ridge; New Ireland; North Pacific; Northwest Pacific; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; seismic waves; seismicity; seismology; Solomon Islands; United States; USSR; West Pacific; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Seismology. Notes: AGU 1984 spring meeting. Washington, DC, United States. Apr. 14, 1984. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Eastoe C J and Eadington, Peter J. 1986. “High-Temperature Fluid Inclusions and the Role of the Biotite Granodiorite in Mineralization at the Panguna Porphyry Copper Deposit, Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 81, Issue 2, Pages 478-483. Descriptors: Australasia; biotite granodiorite; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; fluid inclusions; geologic thermometry; granites; granodiorites; high temperature; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous rocks; inclusions; intrusions; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; ore bodies; ore forming fluids; paleosalinity; Panguna Deposit; Papua New Guinea; plutonic rocks; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; stocks; temperature; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Eastoe, C. J. 1982. “Physics and Chemistry of the Hydrothermal System at the Panguna Porphyry Copper Deposit, Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 77, Issue 1, Pages 127-153. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; ore forming fluids; P T conditions; Papua New Guinea; phase equilibria;
physicochemical properties; porphyry copper; processes; Solomon Islands; theoretical studies; thermodynamic properties; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Eastoe, C. J. 1978. “A Fluid Inclusion Study of the Panguna Porphyry Copper Deposit, Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 73, Issue 5, Pages 721-748. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; data; economic geology; environment; fluid inclusions; framework silicates; genesis; geologic barometry; geologic thermometry; inclusions; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; Oceania; ore deposits; ore forming fluids; P T conditions; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; paleosalinity; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; quartz; reins; silica minerals; silicates; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; West Pacific; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

East-West Center, Minerals Policy Program, Honolulu, HI, United States. 19??.

“Opportunities for U. S. Industry in Gold Developments of Papua New Guinea, the Solomon Islands, Vanuatu and Fiji.” United States: Descriptors: Australasia; economic geology; Fiji; gold ores; Melanesia; metal ores; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; possibilities; Solomon Islands; Vanuatu; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Notes: PB: Pages: 24. 19??.

Elliott, Susan A. 1980. “Aedes Albopictus in the Solomon and Santa Cruz Islands, South Pacific.” Transactions of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene. Volume 74, Issue 6, Pages 747-748. Abstract: Surveys of mosquitoes in the South Pacific up until 1977 have shown the presence of Aedes albopictus only as far east as Papua New Guinea. During the visit to the Solomon Islands in 1978 to collect members of the Aedes (Stegomyia) scutellaris complex, Ae. albopictus was found in large numbers on Guadalcanal and was also present in the Santa Cruz Islands. This species has been incriminated as a vector of dengue haemorrhagic fever. ISSN: 0035-9203.


Espie, F. F. 1971. “The Bougainville Copper Project.” Proceedings - Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy. Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: Melbourne, Victoria, Australia. Volume 238, Pages 1-10. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper; economic geology; evaluation; Melanesia; metals; mining geology; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0004-8364.

earth metals; atolls; bauxite; calcrite; carbonate rocks; carbonatization; Cenozoic; chemically precipitated rocks; dedolomitization; diagenesis; dolomitization; geochemistry; limestone; major elements; Melanesia; metals; minor elements; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; paleoclimatology; reefs; Rennell; sedimentary petrology; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; stratigraphy; strontium; Tertiary; West Pacific; Sedimentary petrology. ISSN: 0222-4712.


Everingham, I. B. 1977. Preliminary Catalogue of Tsunamis for the New Guinea/ Solomon Islands Region, 1768-1972. Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Australian Geological Survey Organisation. Report - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 180, BMR Microform MF14, page(s): 78. Descriptors: catalogs; causes; Coral Sea; earthquakes; environmental geology; geologic hazards; Malay Archipelago; mass movements; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; slumping; Solomon Islands; Solomon Sea; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; tsunamis; volcanism; West Pacific; Environmental geology. ISSN: 0084-7100.

Everingham, I. B. 1974. “Large Earthquakes in the New Guinea-Solomon Islands Area, 1873-1972.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 23, Issue 4, Pages 323-338. Descriptors: 1873 1972; Australasia; calculation; catalogs; Circum Pacific; data; depth; earthquakes; faults; focus; history; lithosphere; magnitude; Malay Archipelago; mechanism; Melanesia; New Guinea; occurrence; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; rates; seismology; slip; Solomon Islands; southwest; tectonophysics; Solid Earth geophysics. Abstract: Compilation of data, seismicity catalog, fault slip rates. ISSN: 0040-1951.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Exon, N F and Johnson, R. W. 1986. “The Elusive Cook Volcano and Other Submarine Forearc Volcanoes in the Solomon Islands.” BMR Journal of Australian Geology and Geophysics. Australian Geological Survey Organization: Canberra, A.C.T., Australia. Volume 10, Issue 1, Pages 77-83. Descriptors: bathymetry; Cook; forearcs; island arcs; Kana Keoki; Melanesia; New Georgia Group; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; Rendova; seamounts; Solomon Islands; volcanoes; volcanology; Woodlark Basin; Oceanography. ISSN: 0312-9608.


Falvey, David A. 1992. “Evolution of the Island Arc and Marginal Basins of the Western Pacific.” Warta Geologi = Newsletter of the Geological Society of Malaysia. Persatuan Geologi Malaysia = Geological Society of Malaysia: Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia. Volume 18, Issue 6, Pages 258. Descriptors: Australasia; Australian Plate; basins; Cenozoic; Cretaceous; evolution; Fiji; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; island arcs; Melanesia; Mesozoic; New Britain; New Ireland; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; paleogeography; Papua New Guinea; plate convergence; rifting; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; Tasman Basin; Tertiary; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: Symposium on the Tectonic framework and energy resources of the western margin of the Pacific Basin. Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia. Nov. 29-Dec. 2, 1992. ISSN: 0126-5539.

Falvey, David A. 1983. “Plate Tectonic Evolution in the Southwest Pacific.” Bull. Mar. Sci. Rosenstiel School of Marine and Atmospheric Science, University of Florida: Coral Gables, FL, United States. Volume 33, Issue 3, Pages 778. Descriptors: biogeography; Bismark Basin; Cenozoic; Coral Sea; Cretaceous; East Pacific; evolution; Fiji Basin; Lau Basin; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; Polynesia; sea floor spreading; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; Southwest Pacific; Tasman Sea; tectonophysics; Tertiary; Tonga; Upper Cretaceous; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: Second international symposium on marine biogeography and evolution in the Pacific. Sydney, Australia. July 5-17, 1982. ISSN: 0007-4977.
Falvey, David A. 1982. “A Paleomagnetic Perspective on Southwest Pacific Tectonics.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 63, Issue 45, Pages 1120. Descriptors: asthenosphere; Australasia; Cenozoic; Fiji; Indian Plate; island arcs; Melanesia; microplates; Neogene; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; paleomagnetism; Papua New Guinea; plate rotation; plate tectonics; Pliocene; Polynesia; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; tectonophysics; Tertiary; Tonga; triple junctions; Vanuatu; West Pacific; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: American Geophysical Union, 1982 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 7-15, 1982. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Feinberg, R. 1996, vol. , no , pp. “Outer Islanders and Urban Resettlement in the Solomon Islands: The Case of Anutans on Guadalcanal” Journal de la Société des Océanistes. Musee De L’Homme: Paris. Volume 103, Issue 2, Pages 207 - 217. Abstract: L’A. montre que le repeuplement des insulaires dans les centres urbains reflète des changements culturels importants tant par l’accès à de nouvelles opportunités économiques et sociales, de nouvelles valeurs et projets que par les pressions et contraintes subies. Les problèmes liés à l’urbanisation devraient être compris à travers l’étude du système relationnel entre les communautés urbaines et celle de l’articulation entre les différentes orientations culturelles souvent incompatibles entre elles. L’étude de la population originaire d’Anuta à Guadalcanal offre un cas exemplaire: présentation du contexte ethnographique d’ensemble, arrivée et installation en ville des communautés traditionnelles, émergence de certains migrants en tant que nouveaux leaders reconnus par leur communauté émigrée en ville. Translated Abstract: This report shows that the repopulation of the islanders in the urban centres reflects important cultural changes so much by the access to new economic and social opportunities, new values and projects than by the pressures and constraints. The problems related to the urbanization should be included and understood through the study of the relational system between the urban communities and that of the articulation between the various often incompatible cultural orientations between them. The study of the population originating in Anuta with Guadalcanal offers an exemplary case: presentation of the overall ethnographic context, arrival and installation downtown of the traditional communities, and the emergence of certain migrants as new leaders recognized by their community downtown. ISSN: 0300-953X.


thought to be diagnostic for the saltwater-tolerant malaria vector species, An. farauti Laveran s.s. Salt tolerance in these two closely related isomorphic species appears to be a shared derived character within the Farauti Complex. Failure to differentiate An. farauti s.s. from An. farauti No. 7 will overestimate potential malaria vector numbers and waste limited larval control resources. Use of the SST should therefore be discontinued on Guadalcanal and other techniques such as allozyme electrophoresis used instead. Database: PubMed. Availability: NLM. ISSN: 0269-283x.

Foley, D. H., Meek, S. R. and Bryan, J. H. 1994. “The Anopheles Punctulatus Group of Mosquitoes in the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu Surveyed by Allozyme Electrophoresis.” Med Vet Entomol. 1994 October. Volume 8, Issue 4, Pages 340-50. Abstract: Four species within the Anopheles punctulatus group of mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) were identified by allozyme analysis of samples collected from thirty-three localities in Guadalcanal, Makira, Malaita, Temotu and Western Provinces in the Solomon Islands and six localities on Efate, Espiritu Santo, Maewo and Malekula Islands in Vanuatu. Three of these species are members of the An.farauti complex. A key is given to identify five species of the An.punctulatus group known to occur in the Solomon Islands using their isoenzyme characteristics. An. farauti No. 1 was widespread in coastal areas of the Solomon Islands and was the only species detected in Vanuatu, including Efate Island (where Faureville is the type locality of An. farauti Laveran sensu stricto). An. farauti No. 2 and An. punctulatus were common in the Solomon Islands in more inland areas. An. farauti No. 7, reported here for the first time, was found as larvae in freshwater at six localities on north Guadalcanal. Three other members of the An.punctulatus group which have been reported previously from the Solomon Islands: An.koliensis, An.renellensis and an electrophoretic variant of An. farauti sensu lato, were not found in our samples. Previously recognized vectors of malaria and bancroftian filariasis in the Solomon Islands are An.farauti No. 1 (i.e. An. farauti s.s.), An. koliensis and An. punctulatus s.s. Adult females of An. farauti No. 2 and An. farauti No. 7 were not attracted to human bait in areas where their larvae occurred, indicating that these two species are not anthropophilic and therefore unlikely to transmit human pathogens. Database: PubMed. Availability: NLM. ISSN: 0269-283x.

Ford, JH, Green, D C, Hulston, J R, Crick, I H and Sheppard, S. M. F. 1977. “Stable Isotope Studies on Bougainville and in Matupi Harbour, New Britain, Papua New Guinea.” Inst. Mining Metallurg.: London, United Kingdom. Pages 162. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; D H; geochemistry; hydrogen; igneous processes; isotopes; Matupi Harbour; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; New Britain; O 18 O 16; Oceania; ore deposits; oxygen; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; processes; ratios; Solomon Islands; stable isotopes; sulfides; volcanism; Economic geology of ore deposits. Conference: Joint meeting of the Geological Society of London, Volcanic Studies Group, and the Institution of Mining and Metallurgy. London, United Kingdom. Jan. 21-22, 1976. Abstract: Two case histories are presented in which light stable isotope ratios (D/H and (super 18) O/ (super 16) O) place important constraints on the origins of ore-forming fluids in the Panguna porphyry copper deposit (upper Pliocene) and on the nature of the volcanic exhalative environment at Matupi Harbour, near Rabaul.

Ford, J H and Green, D. C. 1977. “An Oxygen- and Hydrogen-Isotope Study of the Panguna Porphyry-Copper Deposit, Bougainville.” Journal of the Geological Society of Australia. Geological Society of Australia: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 24, Part 2, Pages 63-80. Descriptors: abundance; andesites; Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; D H; diorites; economic geology; geochemistry; granites; granodiorites; hydrogen; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous rocks; isotopes; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; O 18 O 16; Oceania; ore deposits; oxygen; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; plutonic rocks;
porphyry copper; quartz diorites; ratios; Solomon Islands; stable isotopes; volcanic rocks;
Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0016-7614.

Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; data; economic geology; genesis;
geochronology; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; major elements; Melanesia; metal
ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; Oceania; ore deposits; ore forming
fluids; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; processes;
silicates; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; trace elements; West Pacific;
Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Fountain, R. J. 1974. “Geological Relationships in the Panguna Porphyry Copper Deposit,
Bougainville Island, New Guinea.” Geol. Soc. Aust.: Sydney, Australia. Pages 30-31. Descriptors:
alteration; Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; copper ores; diorites; distribution; economic
geology; granites; granodiorites; igneous rocks; intrusions; Melanesia; metal ores; Neogene;
ocurrence; Oceania; ore deposits; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; Pliocene; plutonic rocks;
porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; Economic geology of ore deposits. Notes: Reprint
from Econ. Geol., Vol. 67, 1972; Summary of “The geology of the Panguna porphyry copper
deposit, Bougainville,” by Fraser, R. B. and “Alteration associated with the Panguna porphyry
copper deposit, Bougainville,” by Fountain, R. J.

Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; copper ores; diorites; economic geology;
genesis; granites; granodiorites; hydrothermal alteration; igneous rocks; intrusions; Malay
Archipelago; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralogy;
Neogene; New Guinea; Oceania; ore deposits; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; paragenesis; Pliocene;
plutonic rocks; porphyry; processes; Solomon Islands; sulfides; Tertiary; veins; zoning; Economic
geology of ore deposits. Abstract: Pliocene diorite-granodiorite intrusives in hornfelsed andesite,
four units, chalcopyrite and bornite, vein fillings, disseminated, paragenesis, hydrothermal

Fox, Charles E. 1924. The Threshold of the Pacific; an Account of the Social Organization,
Magic and Religion of the People of San Cristoval in the Solomon Islands. New York: A. A.

3, Pages 100. Abstract: J.L.O. Tedder has written a 62-page booklet called ‘Walks on
Guadalcanal.’ In this booklet Tedder warns of the many hazards and dangers that can confront a
potential hiker, but he also exhorts the intrepid to ignore these obstacles and explore Guadalcanal
Island. ISSN: 0002-8738.

A Draft Structure Plan for Guadalcanal. Suva: United Nations Development Advisory Team for the
South Pacific. Descriptors: 66 pages; Regional planning- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands-
Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Government publication; International government


Friedman, K. J., Bell, J. D. and Tiroba, G. 1998. “Availability of Wild Spat of the Blacklip Pearl Oyster, Pinctada Margaritifera, from ‘open’ Reef Systems in Solomon.” Aquaculture. Volume 167, Issue 3, Pages 283-299. Descriptors: Pinctada margaritifera; Pearl oysters; Spat; Collection; Settlement. Abstract: Spatial and temporal variation in abundance of spat of the blacklip pearl oyster, Pinctada margaritifera, was assessed over a 24-month period by deploying spat collectors at 24 sites spanning 500 km of Solomon Islands... ISSN: 0044-8486.


8, Issue The structure of the Earth's crust, based on seismic data, Pages 153-164. Descriptors: Australasia; Bismarck Sea; Central Pacific Basin; Coral Sea; crust; East Pacific Ocean Islands; Feni Island; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Hawaii; Line Islands; mantle; Melanesia; New Britain; New Georgia; New Ireland; north; Nuguria Island; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Polynesia; refraction; Santa Isabel; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; structure; subsidence; surveys; tectonophysics; thickness; United States; volcanic islands; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0419-0254.

G

Galea, Gauden, Powis, Brent and Tamplin, Stephen A. “Healthy Islands in the Western Pacific—international Settings Development.” Health Promotion International. Oxford: June 2000. Volume 15, Pages 169 - 178. Abstract: ...Rotary International) and leadership from WHO, a package of malaria control measures to protect the 65 000 inhabitants of Guadalcanal province, including Honiara, was put in place. Facilities for diagnosis and treatment of malaria were upgraded and insecticide-treated... ISSN: 0957-4824.


Geological Survey of Papua New Guinea. 1980. Report. Geological Survey of Papua New Guinea. Port Moresby, Papua New Guinea: Pages: 15. Volume 80/25, Descriptors: Australasia; Buka Island; economic geology; ground water; Hagogohei; Haku; Halia; Kessa Plantation; Malasang; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Sohano Limestone; soils; Solomon Islands; solution features; springs; surveys; Terra rossa; Tsitalato; water resources; Hydrogeology; hydrogeologic maps. ISSN: 0378-973X.

“Geology and Exploration.” 1972. World Mining. Technical Publishing Company: New York, NY, United States. Volume 8, Issue 11, Pages 56. Descriptors: alteration; Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; history; Melanesia; metal ores; mineralogy; mining geology; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits. Abstract: Porphyry copper deposit on Bougainville, Solomon Islands. ISSN: 0043-8707.


Natural History of Guadalcanal
gеothermal congress. Florence, Italy. May 18-31, 1995. Abstract: Thermal activity at the Paraso geothermal field, Vella Lavella, Solomon Islands, consists largely of steam-heated features, usually associated with vapor-dominated zones of a geothermal system. Chloride contents of up to 2400 mg/kg in some of the waters, however, point to the simultaneous discharge of waters from liquid-dominated parts of the system. Varying contamination of the neutral Cl waters with the steam-heated, acid waters greatly impedes application of standard solute geothermometers; only K/Na ratios provide an indication for the occurrence of high temperatures of 290 degrees C at depth. Gas geothermometers (CO(sub 2), CH(sub 4), H(sub 2)) are more reliable and confirm deep temperatures of close to 300 degrees C. The isotopic composition of the high Cl waters corresponds to an (super 18) O-shift of 6 per thousand or the presence of about 40% of “andesitic water” The isotopic composition of H(sub 2) S (sigma (super 34) S = 0 per thousand) and low CO(sub 2) He (75 000) and N(sub 2) He (450) ratios, however suggest a largely mantle origin, only little contaminated by volatiles from subducted sediments. The simultaneous discharge of fluids representative sediments. The simultaneous discharge of fluids representative of vapor-and liquid-dominated zones is likely to be due to the Paraso field being situated in a narrow valley, at close to sea level, preventing clear separation of vapor-and liquid-dominated discharge features. ISBN: 0-473-03123-X.

Gillett, R. 1987. Solomon Islands Fisheries Bibliography. Honiara, Solomon Islands: Fisheries Dept., Honiara. 62 p. Field Document; Bibliography. Descriptors: Fisheries and aquaculture - General aspects; Fisheries; Aquaculture; Fishery Biology; Fishing Vessels; Legislation; Aquatic Animals; Fishing Methods; Solomon Islands. FAO Library.

Gladstone, William. 1987. “Solomon's Volcanoes; Life on the Verge.” Australian Natural History. Australian Museum: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 22, Issue 5, Pages 210-214. Descriptors: craters; lakes; Melanesia; Oceania; regional; Simbo; Solomon Islands; Tinakula; volcanoes; volcanology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0004-9840.

Gladwin, M. T. 1985. “Piezomagnetic Monitoring in the South Pacific Region.” Pure Appl. Geophys. Birkhaeuser Verlag: Basel, Switzerland. Volume 122, Issue 6, Pages 921-932. Descriptors: Australasia; data acquisition; data processing; Earth; earthquakes; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; instruments; magnetic anomalies; magnetic field; magnetic methods; Melanesia; monitoring; noise; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Papua New Guinea earthquake 1982; Papua New Guinea earthquake 1983; piezomagnetism; precursors; prediction; seismology; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; standard deviation; statistical analysis; surveys; Seismology; Applied geophysics. ISSN/ISBN: 0033-4553.


Gladwin, M. T. and University of Queensland, Department of Physics, Saint Lucia, Queensl., Australia. 1981. “Tectonic Monitoring of the Solomon and New Hebrides Island Regions.” Australia: page(s): 3. Descriptors: earthquakes; measurement; Melanesia; monitoring;
neotectonics; observatories; Oceania; seismic networks; Solomon Islands; spatial distribution; tectonics; Vanuatu; Seismology; Structural geology. Notes: Includes appendices; fourth technical report. U. S. Geological Survey, Library, Reston, VA, United States.

Glover, R. B. 1975. “Review of Work on Geochemical Forecasts of Eruptions and Interaction of Seismic Phenomena and Geochemical Indicator in the South Pacific Area.” Bulletin Volcanologique. Springer International [for the] International Association of Volcanology and Chemistry of the Earth's Interior (IAVCEI): Heidelberg, International. Volume 39, Issue 1, Geochemistry of volcanic gases (first part), Pages 146-158. Descriptors: 1976; Asia; Australasia; current research; earthquakes; eruptions; Far East; geochemical methods; geochemistry; indicators; Indonesia; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; methods; New Guinea; New Zealand; Oceania; Pacific region; Philippine Islands; prediction; review; seismicity; Solomon Islands; south; Vanuatu; volcanoes; volcanology; White Island; Geochemistry. ISSN: 0366-483X.


Gowan, Mike and Fergus Glen. 2000. “The Gold Ridge Mine Tailings Storage Facility; an Australian Case History.” Society for Mining, Metallurgy, and Exploration, Littleton, CO, United States. Pages 399-404. Descriptors: construction; construction materials; controls; dams; design; gold ores; Gold Ridge Mine; Guadalcanal Island; metal ores; mining; mining geology; monitoring; safety; seepage; slurreries; Solomon Islands; stability; storage; tailings; tailings dams; tonnage; Engineering geology; Environmental geology. References: 11; 7 tables. ISBN: 0-87335-194-9.

Great Britain Directorate of Overseas Surveys, Land Resources Division, United Kingdom. 1974. Descriptors: Florida Islands; Guadalcanal Island; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Savo Island; soils; soils maps; Solomon Islands; Soils; color soils maps. Notes: In the collection: Land resources of the British Solomon Islands Protectorate. 1974.(8.); MC: LAT: S100000; S084800; LONG: E1610000; E1593000. Map Scale: 1:250,000. Library of Congress.

Great Britain Directorate of Overseas Surveys, Land Resources Division, United Kingdom. 1973. Descriptors: drainage basins; drainage patterns; Florida Islands; Guadalcanal Island; hydrogeologic maps; hydrology; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; rivers and streams; Savo Island; Solomon Islands; surface water; watersheds; Hydrogeology. Notes: In the collection: Land resources of the British Solomon Islands Protectorate. 1973.(8.); MC: LAT: S100000; S084800; LONG: E1610000; E1593000. Map Scale: 1:250,000. Library of Congress.

Great Britain, Directorate of Overseas Surveys, Land Resources Division, United Kingdom. 1974. Soil Associations; 1:250,000 British Solomon Islands Protectorate, Guadalcanal, and the Florida Islands. United Kingdom: British Overseas Development Administration, United Kingdom. Descriptors: Florida Islands; Guadalcanal Island; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Savo Island; soils; soils maps; Solomon Islands. Notes: Pieces: 8; 1 table; Map Scale: 1:250,000. Type: colored soils map; Latitude: S100000, S084800 Longitude: E1610000, E1593000; Database: GeoRef. Accession Number: 2002-066188. Library of Congress.

Great Britain, Directorate of Overseas Surveys, Land Resources Division, United Kingdom. 1973. Catchment Areas; 1:250,000 British Solomon Islands Protectorate, Guadalcanal and the Florida Islands. United Kingdom: British Overseas Development Administration, United Kingdom. Descriptors: drainage basins; drainage patterns; Florida Islands; Guadalcanal Island; hydrogeologic maps; hydrology; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; rivers and streams; Savo Island; Solomon Islands; surface water; watersheds. Pieces: 8; Map Scale: 1:250,000. Type: hydrogeologic map; Latitude: S100000, S084800 Longitude: E1610000, E1593000. GeoRef. Accession Number: 2002-066190.


Great Britain. Directorate of Overseas Surveys. 1976. “Guadalcanal.” DOS. Descriptors: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- Maps; Government publication; National government publication. Notes: Description: 1 map; col.60 x 99 cm. Map Scale 1:150,000. Relief indicated by contours and color. OCLC: 9269828.


Griffiths, G. H. 1974. “Guadalcanal.” Geological Society of Australia. Pages 32-38. Descriptors: airborne; applications; copper ores; economic geology; electromagnetic methods; exploration; geochemical methods; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; magnetic methods; Melanesia; metal ores; methods; mineral exploration; mineral
resources; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; porphyry; porphyry copper; radiometric surveys; Solomon Islands; surveys; 27 Economic geology of ore deposits. Notes: GeoRef.


Groody, Brian S. 1996. Is the Western Pacific Ocean Getting Warmer? A Long Term Isotopic Record of Corals from Nauru and Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. Princeton, NJ, United States: Princeton University. Pages: 46. Descriptors: Anthozoa; Cenozoic; climate; Coelenterata; El Nino; Guadalcanal; Holocene; Invertebrata; isotope ratios; isotopes; Melanesia; Micronesia; modern; Nauru Island; O 18 O 16; ocean circulation; Oceania; oxygen; Pacific Ocean; Quaternary; sea water; Solomon Islands; Southern Oscillation; stable isotopes; temperature; West Pacific; 02D Isotope geochemistry; 07 Oceanography. Abstract: The western equatorial Pacific is an important component of the El Nino Southern Oscillation (ENSO) which represents most of the interannual climate variability observed on a global scale. This event occurs on a time scale of two to ten years. An ENSO event occurs when the Walker circulation cell migrates from the Australasian maritime continent to the region of the equator and the date line. ENSO is marked by precipitation anomalies in the west and sea surface temperatures in the east. Massive corals that grow near the surface of the ocean are able to record changes in the delta (super 18) O of the ambient sea water in their aragonite skeletons. These changes result from increases in ocean water temperature and influx of isotopically depleted rain water. ENSO events are recorded particularly well since these two influences of the delta (super 18) O are the trademarks of ENSO occurrence. Corals were collected from Nauru (0.5S, 166E) and Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands (9.5S, 161E) and the delta (super 18) O of their skeletons was determined through mass spectrometry analysis. These isotopic records were compared with instrumental climate data (sea surface, temperature, sea level pressure) to evaluate the temporal and spatial variability associated with interannual climate fluctuations in the western Pacific. The Nauru records showed interannual warming trends with a periodicity of about 7.5 years and interdecadal warmings with a period of roughly 25 years. The record from Guadalcanal showed interannual warming on the order of 8.5 years and an interdecadal cycle of 35 years. However both records showed the same long-term trend: the western Pacific has warmed continuously over the course of the twentieth century. GeoRef Accession Number: 1996-065751.


Grover, J. C. 1968. “The British Solomon Islands; some Geological Implications of the Gravity Data, 1966.” Geophysical Monograph. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 12, Pages 296-306. Descriptors: 1966; anomalies; block; British; Earth; faults; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; gravity field; gravity methods; mantle; Melanesia; Oceania; shearing; Solomon Islands; structure; surveys; tectonics; Solid earth geophysics. Abstract: Gravity values related to major structures, block faulting, mantle shearing. ISSN: 0065-8448.


Grover, J. C. 1967. “Forecasting of Earthquakes; Correlation between Deep Foci and Shallow Events in Melanesia.” Nature (London). Macmillan Journals: London, United Kingdom. Volume 213, Issue 5077, Pages 686-687. Descriptors: Bougainville New Ireland group and Santa Cruz group; correlation; Deep focus and shallow; deep focus; earthquakes; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; prediction; shallow events; Solomon Islands; Seismology. Abstract: In the Solomon region of the southwest Pacific, deep-focus earthquakes have been concentrated at the northwestern end of the Bougainville-New Ireland group, and in a region to the southeast of the Santa Cruz group. Structurally, the deep foci of the two regions form broad abutments at different depths, which support a narrowing arch of seismicity along which shock waves travel upwards towards a center in the San Cristobal area. Evidence points to the existence of megashears, which must extend below the shallow crust into the mantle itself, in which nearly all the earthquakes appear to occur. A time-space correlation is postulated between deep foci and the shallower events: deep-focus shocks initiate thermo-energetic phenomena which radiate upwards along tectonic zones and trigger shallower earthquakes of the same order of magnitude as the deep shock, except where phenomena converge. The delays between a deep-shock and its related earthquakes are a function of the distance from, and the magnitude and depth of, the deep shock. ISSN: 0028-0836.

Grover, J. C. 1966. “Gravity Surveys in the British Solomon Islands; a Narrative.” Paper - Geological Survey of Canada. Geological Survey of Canada: Ottawa, ON, Canada. Pages 257-277. Descriptors: British section; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; gravity methods; marine geology; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Islands; Solomon Islands; structure; surveys; Oceanography. Notes: 66-15. Abstract: This paper summarizes the progress of investigations in the Solomons, with pertinent information from other islands, to the present time. Recently compiled land gravity maps of the islands show remarkable correlation with the major geologic features, although much of the detail is yet to be obtained. Sufficient offshore gravity data will soon be available to make possible a tentative regional model. It is already evident that the Solomon islands constitute one of the most anomalous island structures in the entire world. ISSN: 0068-7650.

Grover, John C. 1960. “The Geology of Rennell and Bellona; the Great Uplifted Atolls on the Edge of the Coral Sea.” Pages 103-119. Descriptors: atolls; expeditions; geology; Melanesia; micropaleontology; Oceania; phosphates; reefs; Rennell Bellona; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; Miscellaneous. Abstract: Formation of coral masses probably began at the end of the Pliocene and continued into post-Pleistocene time, when differential emergence occurred, first as a result of anticlinal folding and later by oscillating vertical uplift of the sea bed on the southern side of the submarine trench which parallels the southwest side of the Solomon islands. Data on the details of the limestone formations, areas of phosphatic enrichment, and fossil assemblages are summarized.

Grover, John C. 1955. Geology, Mineral Deposits and Prospects of Mining Development in the British Solomon Islands Protectorate. Pages: 108. British Solomon Islands, Interim Geol.Surv., Mem. Volume: 1, Descriptors: Cenozoic; igneous rocks; Melanesia; mineral resources; Oceania; seismology; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; volcanism; Seismology. Abstract: Includes chapters on seismic and volcanic activity, structural geology, the geology of the individual islands, mineral resources and prospects, and the possible occurrence of petroleum. The islands consist of a double chain which forms part of an extensive island arc. “The axis of the major geosyncline could be the area in which will be found the most ultramafic rocks (with possible associated useful minerals); the more gently folded areas of Tertiary sediments may provide structural features worthy of examination from the point of view of oil accumulations . . .; major structural features may also give a lead to the controls affecting mineralisation.”


Guadalcanal. 1987. Bulletin - Solomon Islands Geological Survey. Volume 16, Descriptors: areal geology; geologic maps; geomorphology; Guadalcanal Island; Lungga Beds; Lungga Gorge; maps; Mbetikama River; Melanesia; Oceania; Ohe River; power plants; site exploration; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; structural geology; 13 Areal geology. Notes: Map Scale: 1:10,000. ISSN: 0258-4492.

“Guadalcanal Birds.” 1943. The New Yorker. February 27. Volume 19, Pages 11-12. Descriptors: Birds, Solomon Islands; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Guadalcanal; Readers’ Guide Retrospective. ISSN: 0028-792X.


Guide to the Spelling and Pronunciation of Place Names in the British Solomon Islands Protectorate. 1968. Lands and Surveys Department, produced under the auspices of the Geographical Names Committee, Honiara. See especially “A List of Prinicipal Names in the


Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Atmospheric circulation; Entrainment; Equatorial undercurrents; General circulation; Interannual variability; Oceanographic data; Spatial variability; Thermocline; Upwelling; Warm water patches; World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE); Article Geographic Terms: Atlantic, Equatorial Undercurrent; Pacific, New Zealand Island Terr., Cook Is., Southern Cook Is., Rarotonga; Pacific, Solomon Islands, Guadalcanal; Pacific, Nauru.

Abstract: Sub-annual radiocarbon measurements derived from coral skeletal material which accurately records the 14C concentration of water DIC, has added to our knowledge of the general shallow circulation of the Pacific augmenting the results derived from GEOSECS and WOCE. Although the WOCE program continues to produce sea water 14C analysis today, there are notable limitations to shipboard sampling, primarily the inability to monitor ocean conditions continuously. For 14C in the deep ocean, this is not a problem because the transport is relatively slow and the gradients are relatively low. For the surface ocean, where 14C gradients are highest and transport is rapid, we have demonstrated that temporal variability is of the same order as spatial variability, an observation which is lost in discrete analyses like GEOSECS or WOCE whose “snapshots” of bomb-radiocarbon are integrations of 20 and 40 years of ocean dynamics. In general, 14C in corals from the subtropics (Hawai’i, Rarotonga) have higher D14C reflecting the stability of the gyres and high air-sea exchange. D14C in the eastern equatorial Pacific (Galapagos) are lower and reflect the subsurface pathway of the Equatorial Undercurrent and entrainment of deeper thermocline waters which feed the upwelling in this region. Radiocarbon values in the “warm pool” region (Nauru, Guadalcanal) are intermediate between the higher subtropics and those in the east. Superimposed upon the long term trend which reflects the invasion of bomb radiocarbon into the ocean is seasonal to interannual variability. The patterns of the higher-frequency radiocarbon variations can be explained in terms of variability in dynamic processes. OCLC: 7323371.


Gustafson, L. B. 1979. “Porphyry Copper Deposits and Calc-Alkaline Volcanism.” Acad. Press.: London, United Kingdom. Pages 427-464. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; calcalkaline composition; Central America; Chile; copper ores; economic geology; El Salvador; exploration; intrusions; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; models; Oceania; ore deposits; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; processes; review; Solomon Islands; South America; volcanism; volcanology; Economic geology of ore deposits. USGS Library.

Haberle, S. 1996. “Explanations for Palaeoecological Changes on the Northern Plains of Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands: The Last 3200 Years.” Holocene. Volume 6, Issue 3, Pages 333-333-338. Descriptors: The Holocene; Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; vegetation change; anthropogenic effect; natural disaster. Abstract: Suggests human activity may have played a role in changing vegetation patterns on the northern plains of Guadalcanal. Catastrophic events, such as tectonic activity, cyclones and volcanic eruptions, have also contributed to disturbance of the forest communities and to erosion. Both sites show evidence for increases in carbonized particles
coincident with greater presentation of second-growth forest taxa, beginning some time between 3200 and 2100 BP. ISSN: 0959-6836.


Hackman, B. D. 1977. Choiseul Bay. Solomon Islands: Geologic Survey Division, Ministry of Natural Resources, Honiara, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. Sheet CH1, Descriptors: areal geology; Choiseul; Choiseul Bay; geologic maps; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands. Notes: MP: Scale: 1:50,000. Type: colored geologic map; Latitude: S064800, S063400 Longitude: E1563000, E1561500; GeoRef. Accession Number: 1980-031433.

Hackman, B. D. 1977. West Florida Islands. Solomon Islands: Geologic Survey Division, Ministry of Natural Resources, Honiara, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. Sheet FL1, Descriptors: areal geology; Florida Islands; geologic maps; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; West Florida Islands. Notes: MP: Scale: 1:50,000. Type: colored geologic map; Latitude: S090500, S084500 Longitude: E1601100, E1595700; GeoRef. Accession Number: 1980-031439.


Halunen, A. J. 1978. “Mineral Resources in Southwest Pacific.” AAPG Bull. American Association of Petroleum Geologists: Tulsa, OK, United States. Volume 62, Issue 7, Pages 1219. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; Cook Islands; copper; economic geology; Fiji; gold; Melanesia; metals; mineral resources; New Caledonia; nickel; Oceania; offshore; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; petroleum; phosphates; Polynesia; Samoa; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; Tonga; West Pacific; Economic geology, general. Conference: Second Circum-Pacific energy and mineral resources conference. Honolulu, Hawaii, United States. July 30-Aug. 4, 1978. ISSN:0149-1423.

Australasia; Coral Sea; crust; equatorial; geophysical surveys; heat flow; island arcs; Kiribati; Line Islands; Mariana Islands; Marshall Islands; Melanesia; Micronesia; New Britain; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Palau Trench; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; Polynesia; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction; surveys; trenches; Tuvalu; Vanuatu; west; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Notes: Reprint from Journal of Geophysical Research, 1973. ISSN: 0073-1234.

Hamburger, M W and Isacks, B. L. 1985. “Deep Earthquakes in the Southwest Pacific; Morphology and Tectonic History.” Earthquake Notes. Seismological Society of America, Eastern Section: [El Cerrito, CA], United States. Volume 55, Issue 1, Pages 32. Descriptors: Benioff zone; deep focus earthquakes; distribution; earthquakes; East Pacific; Fiji; geomorphology; Indo Australian Plate; Lau Basin; Loyalty Basin; mantle; Melanesia; New Hebrides Arc; New Hebrides Trench; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; seismology; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction; Tonga Slab; Vanuatu Islands; Vitasia Trench; West Pacific; Seismology. Conference: The Seismological Society of America, 1985 annual meeting. Austin, TX, United States. Apr. 14-17, 1985. ISSN: 0012-8287.

Hamburger, Michael Wile. 1986. Seismicity of the Fiji Islands and Tectonics of the Southwest Pacific. Ithaca, NY, United States: Cornell University. page(s): 332. Descriptors: displacements; earthquakes; East Pacific; extension; faults; Fiji; Indian Plate; island arcs; Lau Basin; Melanesia; microearthquakes; New Hebrides Trench; North Fiji Basin; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; Polynesia; seismicity; seismology; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; Southwest Pacific; strike slip faults; subduction; Suva earthquake 1953; Tonga Trench; Vanuatu; velocity structure; Viti Levu; Viti Trench; West Pacific; Seismology.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Hansell, J.R.F. Wall, J.R.D. 1976. Land resources of the Solomon Islands - v. 1: Introduction and recommendations. Surbiton, Surrey (UK): Ministry of Overseas Development, Surbiton, Surrey (United Kingdom). Land Resources Div. Land Resource Study (United Kingdom), no. 18. 148 p. Diagrs., graphs, illus., tables. Bibliography p. 139-148. Summaries (En, Fr). Maps (in pocket): 4 text maps, scale 1:2,500,000; 4 col. separate maps, scale 1:1,000,000. Descriptors: Land Resources; Natural Resources; Surveys; Geology; Vegetation; Soil; Climate; Subsistence Farming; Cash Crops; Petrology; Human Population; Economic Distribution; Evaluation; Farmland; Statistics; Maps. FAO Library.

Harter Robert, D. and Naidu Ravendra. 2001. “An Assessment of Environmental and Solution Parameter Impact on Trace-Metal Sorption by Soils.” Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. Soil Science Society of America: Madison, WI, United States. Volume 65, Issue 3, Pages 597-612. Descriptors: acetates; aqueous solutions; Australasia; Australia; cadmium; chemical analysis; chloride ion; chlorine; chromium; cobalt; copper; dissolved materials; dissolved oxygen; electrochemical properties; electrolytes; esters; Europe; experimental studies; Fiji; geochemistry; halogens; interlaboratory comparison; ionic strength; kinetics; lead; ligands; Melanesia; metals; mineral water interface; minerals; nickel; nitrate ion; Oceania; organic compounds; oxygen; pH; pressure; sodium nitrate; soil solution; soils; Solomon Islands; solution; sorption; standardization; temperature; trace metals; United Kingdom; United States; Vanuatu; water; Western Europe; zinc; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments; Soils. ISSN: 0361-5995.

Hatori, Tokutaro. 1982. “Philippine, Solomon and New Hebrides Islands Tsunamis Observed Along the Coast of Japan, 1971-1980.” Bulletin of the Earthquake Research Institute = Tokyo Daigaku Jishin Kenkyusho Iho. University of Tokyo, Earthquake Research Institute: Tokyo, Japan. Volume 57, Issue 2, Pages 221-237. Descriptors: amplitude; Asia; earthquakes; Far East; geologic hazards; Japan; Melanesia; Oceania; Philippine Islands; provenance; seismology; Solomon Islands; tsunamis; Vanuatu; Seismology. ISSN: 0040-8972.


Hazbun, J. A. 1983. “Use of Alternative Methods and Materials in Ferrocement Rainwater Storage Tanks.” Journal of Ferrocement. Volume 13, Issue 2, Pages 169-176. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: construction; steel; tanks; ferrocement. Abstract: Two sizes of tanks, 500 gal. and 1000 gal, were designed and constructed with bamboo and mild steel wires as reinforcement. These rectangular tanks were formed from pre-cast panels. The moulds for casting the panels are made out of hard wood. The bamboo tanks are cheaper and easier to construct compared to tanks.
constructed in ferrocement, concrete and galvanized sheet. Database: Environmental Sciences and Pollution Mgmt. ISSN: 0125-1759.

Heath, K. C. G. 1975. “Volcanogenic Mineralization in the Islands of the Florida Group, B.S.I.P.” Institution of Mining and Metallurgy, Transactions, Section B: Applied Earth Science. Institution of Mining and Metallurgy: London, United Kingdom. Volume 84, Pages 66-67. Descirptors: economic geology; environment; Florida Group; genesis; Hanesavo Island; island arcs; marine; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; ore deposits; oxides; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; Solomon Islands; structure; sulfides; tectonics; Vatilau Island; volcanism; Economic geology of ore deposits. Notes: Bull. No. 822; Report of discussion; for reference to paper by Taylor, G. R., see Trans./Sect. B. (Appl. earth sci.), Vol. 83, p. 120-130, November 1974. ISSN: 0371-7453.

Hemsley, W. B. 1891. “New Solomon Islands Plants.” Annals of Botany. Oxford: November 1891. Volume 5, Pages 501 - 508. Abstract: ......speaking generally, are of volcanic origin and mountainous in character, the mountains rising to an altitude of 8000 feet in Guadalcanal in the south, and to an altitude of 10,000 feet in Bougainville, in the north. On the other hand many of the small islands... ISSN: 0305-7364.

Hendry D A F, Chivas A R, Reed S J B and Long, J. V. P. 1982. “Geochemical Evidence for Magmaic Fluids in Porphyry Copper Mineralization; Part II, Ion-Probe Analysis of Cu Contents of Mafic Minerals, Koloula Igneous Complex.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 78, Issue 4, Pages 404-412. Descriptors: amphibole group; biotite; chain silicates; copper; copper ores; economic geology; geochemistry; hydrothermal alteration; igneous rocks; ion probe data; Koloula Complex; Melanesia; metal ores; metals; metasomatism; mica group; Oceania; ore forming fluids; porphyry copper; sheet silicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; trace elements; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments. ISSN: 0010-7999.


Hess, Folke I., Iannuzzi, Aniello, Leafasia, Judson, et al. 1996/8. “Risk Factors of Chloroquine Resistance in Plasmodium Falciparum Malaria.” Acta Tropica. Volume 61, Issue 4, Pages 293-306. Abstract: Objective: To identify patient-related risk factors of chloroquine resistance. Design: A case control study. Subjects: Plasmodium falciparum infected school children were followed prospectively for 7 days for the detection of chloroquine resistance. Cases were 38 individuals with chloroquine resistant infections. Controls were 125 individuals with chloroquine sensitive infections. Cases were compared with controls with respect to previous or current study factor levels. Subjects were recruited from randomly selected schools which were stratified for area. Study location was in North Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. Outcome measure: Treatment failure of chloroquine in standard dosage (25 mg/kg). Follow-up period was 7 days. Results: Logistic regression resulted in 5 independent significant predictors of chloroquine resistance, obtained simultaneously with the diagnosis of malarial infection: (i) Young age (odds ratio (OR) for age 1000/gml: 5.0; 95% CI: 2.0–10.6; OR per 500 parasites/l increase: 1.3; 95% CI: 1.1–1.7). (iii) Normal spleen size (OR: 4.0; 95% CI: 1.5–10.8). (iv) Malnutrition (OR: 4.9; 95% CI: 1.8–13.2). (v) Presence of gametocytes in the thick smear (OR: 3.0; 95% CI: 1.1–8.0). Conclusion: The
identified risk factors are easily measurable without special equipment. They may be useful for health workers in the Solomon Islands, even in remote areas, to identify Plasmodium falciparum infected individuals at high risk for chloroquine resistance before a treatment decision is made. ISSN: 0001-706X.

Higgins, Roger J. 1981. “Use and Modification of a Simple Rainfall-Runoff Model for Wet Tropical Catchments.” Water Resour. Res. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 17, Issue 2, Pages 423-427. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; drainage basins; evapotranspiration; humid environment; hydrogeology; hydrology; mathematical models; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; rainfall; runoff; Solomon Islands; surveys; theoretical studies; tropical environment; Hydrogeology. ISSN: 0043-1397.

Hii, J. L. K., Burkot, T. R., Wirtz, R. A., Kanai, L., Foligela, A. and Kan, S. K. P. 1993. “Impact of Permethrin-Impregnated Mosquito Nets Compared with DDT House-Spraying Against Malaria Transmission by Anopheles Farauti and an. Punctulatus in the Solomon Islands.” Medical & Veterinary Entomology. Volume 7, Issue 4, Pages 333-333-338. Descriptors: Solomon Islands-Guadalcanal; water; vector control; mosquito net; malaria transmission. Abstract: In villages of northern Guadalcanal in the Solomon Islands, malaria transmission rates were compared for three zones: 1) non-intervention; 2) residual DDT house-spraying two cycles per year; 3) bednets impregnated with permethrin 0.5 g/m2 twice per year. Regular DDT spraying in zones 1 and 3 had been withdrawn 18 months previously. The results show that permethrin-impregnated mosquito nets exerted significantly more impact on vector infectivity and the inoculation rate than resulted from DDT spraying. Even so, the inoculation rate for people in the bednet zone remained at one infective bite every 4-32 days, an insufficient reduction to control malaria without additional countermeasures. ISSN: 0269-283X.


Hilyard, D. and Rogerson R. 1989. “Revised Stratigraphy of Bougainville and Buka Islands, Papua New Guinea.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 12, Pages 87-92. Descriptors: Aropa Andesite; Atamo Volcanics; Australasia; Bougainville; Buka Formation; Buka Island; Cenozoic; Isinai Monzonite; Keriaka Limestone; Kupei Complex; Melanesia; Miocene; Mono Siltstone; Neogene; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Sohano Limestone; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; Toniva Formation; Stratigraphy.


Hobbs, William Herbert. 1944. “Mountain Growth, a Study of the Southwestern Pacific Region.” *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society*, Vol. 88, No. 4 (Oct. 18, 1944), pp. 221-268. Abstract: In most parts of the world where mountains are to be found, the history of their origin and manner of growth is difficult to decipher, and mainly for the reason that the history, if not already completed, is at least in a very advanced stage. We are in those areas dealing with conditions of erection which no longer obtain, and throughout this history other and destructive rather than constructive agencies have been in operation, and these agencies have largely effaced or else entirely removed the pertinent evidence. These agencies are grouped under the names weathering, erosion, and transportation, and they have left us only disfigured remnants of forms and structures which at one time would have laid bare the essential facts of the history. These destructive agencies are largely within the realm of the atmosphere, and it is within that shell of our planet that most mountains undergo their erection. In one region, that of the southwest Pacific, and in that alone, mountains have in very recent time been rising from the bottom of the deep sea, where they have been immune from the usual destructive agents, and they are there even today in an early stage of their growth. Impressed by the unique opportunity for study which was there presented, the author in 1918 began a preliminary study of the area, and in 1921 and 1923 he undertook for the purpose extensive reconnaissance cruises in the western and southwestern Pacific areas (map 1). The proof that the mountains within this southwestern Pacific region are still in a vigorous growth which is not duplicated elsewhere, is supplied by the authoritative map of earthquake distribution (map 5). Only less important as evidence is the local effusion of now active volcanic vents which reveals general elevation while the presence of coast terraces reveals a local elevation, as barrier reefs do local subsidence. A very important aid has also been recently supplied by the extended use of the echo method for deep sea soundings (map 7). The present study is treated in three parts: I, a general discussion of the nature of mountain growth; II, a special study of the mountain arcs of the southwestern Pacific area; and III, a study of the principal islands in the oceanic area of subsidence where crustal settlement has brought about the wrinkles or arcs. OCLC: 55941028.

Hofstetter, A., Mafi, K., Malitzky, A., et al. 2000. “Frequency-Magnitude Relationships for Seismic Areas Around the Capital Cities of Solomon, Vanuatu, Tonga and Fiji Islands.” *Journal of Seismology*. Volume 4, Issue 3, Pages 285-285-296. Descriptors: Earthquakes; Fiji- Viti Levu-Suva; Pacific Ocean; Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- Honiara; Tonga- Tongatapu Group- Nuku’alofa; Vanuatu- Efate- Port Vila; earthquake recurrence; frequency-magnitude distribution. Abstract: We studied the relationships between the frequency of occurrence and the magnitudes in seismogenic areas that will affect four capital cities in the South Pacific, namely: Honiara in Solomon Islands, Port Vila in Vanuatu, Suva in Fiji and Nuku’alofa in Tonga. We used the NEIS catalogues for the period 1973-1997, for magnitudes greater than about 5, in the proximity to the city under investigation. The definitions of the geographic boundaries of the seismogenic zones are based on the classical concepts of the distribution of the tectonic plates, the overwhelming number of studies that describe the seismo-tectonics in those active regions and on the observed seismicity and studies of the local people. Completeness of the catalogue is assumed because of the high seismicity in these areas, despite the relatively short time span. We have used a hybrid process combining least squares fitting and Newtonian search process to find the best fit of the statistical parameters. The characteristic b value is 1.27, and seems to be irrespective of the depth and/or region. ISSN: 1383-4649.


Hughes, G. W. 1989. “The Micropaleontology of Sedimentary Units from the Solomon Islands.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Volume 12, Pages 227-237. Descriptors: biostratigraphy; Cenozoic; faunal studies; Foraminifera; Guadalcanal Island; Invertebrata; Kohinggo Formation; Koria Sandstone; Kughala Limestone; Kulitana Siltstone; Malaita Island; Mari Limestone; Melanesia; microfossils; Miocene; Mole Formation; Mono Siltstone; Neogene; New Georgia Island; Oceania; Oula Formation; Outer Islands; paleontology; Pleistocene; Pliocene; Protista; Quaternary; Ravo Limestone; San Cristobal Island; Santa Isabel Island; Shortland Islands; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; Tetepara Formation; Vaghena Formation; Stratigraphy. ISSN: 0705-3797.

Hughes, G. W. 1982. “Solomon Islands, Santa Cruz, Rennell, Solomon, Malaita-Uki, East Choiseul and Central Solomons Basins.” Mineral Resources Development Series. UNESCO: New York, NY, International. Volume 48, Pages 115-130. Descriptors: biostratigraphy; Cenozoic; correlation; Cretaceous; lithofacies; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Oceania; paleogeography; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; Stratigraphy. ISSN: 0082-8114.


Hughes, G. W. 1978. “Aspects of the Southwestern Margin of the Pacific Plate in the Solomon Islands.” Sci. Counc. Jpn.: Tokyo, Japan. Pages 58. Descriptors: evolution; faults; Malaita; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; plate tectonics; San Cristobal Trench; Santa Cruz Islands; Solomon Islands; strike slip faults; tectonophysics; Torres Trench; transform
faults; trenches; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: International geodynamics conference

Hughes, G. W. and Turner, C. C. 1976. Geology of Southern Malaita. Honiara, Solomon Islands: Solomon Islands Geological Survey. Bulletin - Solomon Islands Geological Survey. Volume: 2, page(s): 80. Descriptors: areal geology; bauxite; Cenozoic; Cretaceous; gravel deposits; landform description; lava; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Neogene; Oceania; petrology; Pliocene; sediments; Solomon Islands; southern Malaita; stratigraphy; tectonics; Tertiary; water resources; 13 Areal geology. ISSN: 0258-4492.

Hughes, G. Wyn. 1982. “Solomon Islands.” Mineral Resources Development Series. UNESCO: New York, NY, International. Volume 48, Pages 115-130. Descriptors: Anthozoa; basins; benthonic taxa; biogeography; biostratigraphy; Cenozoic; Central Solomons Basin; Coelenterata; correlation; Cretaceous; Deep Sea Drilling Project; East Choiseul Basin; Foraminiferida; geologic maps; Invertebrata; lithostratigraphy; Malaita Uki Basin; maps; Melanesia; Mesozoic; microfossils; Miocene; Oceania; Ongtong Java Plateau; paleogeography; Phanerozoic; planktonic taxa; Pleistocene; Protista; Quaternary; Rennell Basin; Santa Cruz Basin; sedimentary basins; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Basin; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; zoning; Stratigraphy. ISSN: 0082-8114.

Hughes, G. Wyn. 1979. “The Relationship between Volcanic Island Genesis and the Indo-Australian Pacific Plate Margins in the Eastern Outer Islands, Solomon Islands, South-West Pacific.” [Center for Academic Publications Japan]: [Tokyo], Japan. Pages 123-138. Descriptors: Cenozoic; Fiji Plateau; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; heat flow; island arcs; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; Pacific region; plate tectonics; reflection; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; structure; surveys; tectonics; tectonophysics; Torres Trench; trenches; Vanuatu; volcanism; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: Geodynamics of the western Pacific, International conference on geodynamics of the western Pacific-Indonesian region. Tokyo, Japan. March 13-17, 1978.

Hughes, Geraint Wyn; Craig, P. M. and Dennis, R. A. . 1981. “Geology of the Eastern Outer Islands.” Honiara, Solomon Islands: Solomon Islands Geological Survey. Bulletin - Solomon Islands Geological Survey. Volume: 4, page(s): 108. Descriptors: Anuta; areal geology; Duff Islands; Eastern Outer Islands; Fatutaka; geologic maps; maps; Melanesia; Nendo Island; Oceania; Reef Islands; Santa Cruz Islands; Solomon Islands; Tikopia; Tinakula; Utupua; Vanikolo; Areal geology. ISSN: 0258-4492.

Hughes, Geraint Wyn. 2004. “Accretion of the Ontong Java Plateau to the Solomon Arc; a Historical Perspective.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 389, Issue 3-4, Pages 127-136. Descriptors: accreting plate boundary; Australian Plate; basalts; Cretaceous; crust; deformation; folds; igneous rocks; island arcs; Kiu River; lava; Malaita; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; pillow lava; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; subduction; uplifts; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Hughes, Geraint Wyn. 1988. “Modern Bathyal Agglutinating Foraminifera from the Vella Gulf and Blanche Channel, New Georgia, Solomon Islands, Southwest Pacific.” Journal of Foraminiferal Research. Cushman Foundation for Foraminiferal Research: Ithaca, NY, United States. Volume 18, Issue 4, Pages 304-310. Descriptors: assemblages; benthonic taxa; Blanche Channel; Cenozoic; diversity; faunal studies; Foraminifera; Holocene; Invertebrata; Melanesia; New Georgia; Oceania; paleontology; Protista; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; Vella Gulf; Invertebrate paleontology. ISSN: 0096-1191.
Hughes, Geraint Wyn. 1985. “Recent Foraminifera and Selected Biometrics of Heterostegina from Ontong Java Atoll, Solomon Islands, Southwest Pacific.” Journal of Foraminiferal Research. Cushman Foundation for Foraminiferal Research: Ithaca, NY, United States. Volume 15, Issue 1, Pages 13-17. Descriptors: biometry; Cenozoic; faunal studies; Foraminifera; Heterostegina; Heterostegina depressa; Holocene; Invertebrata; Melanesia; Oceania; Ontong Java Atoll; Pacific Ocean; paleontology; Protista; Quaternary; Rotaliacea; Rotaliina; SEM data; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; West Pacific; Invertebrate paleontology. ISSN: 0096-1191.


Ishii, A., Nagai, N., Arai, M., et al. 1999. “Chemotherapeutic Malaria Control as a Selective Primary Health Care Activity in the Solomon Islands.” Parasitologia. 1999 September. Volume 41, Issue 1-3, Pages 383-4. Abstract: Malaria control by chemotherapy has been established in rural villages of Guadalcanal, the Solomon Islands, following field trials. As a selective primary health care activity, mobile unit teams visited villages once or twice a year to detect malaria positives and gave chloroquine and primaquine to treat the infection and interrupt the transmission. On site diagnosis was by the use of acridine orange fluorescent staining or the ICTPf commercial diagnostic kit. To avoid possible haemolytic crises, a new single step screening method of G6PD deficiency was introduced. This approach has been accepted well by villagers and proved to be an efficient and feasible control method even in remote rural villages with endemic malaria transmission. Epidemiological modelling of the situation predicts reduction of prevalence in five years. Database: PubMed. Availability: NLM. ISSN: 0048-2951.


Ishikawa, Hirofumi, Ishii, Akira, Nagai, Nobuhiko, et al. 2003/3. “A Mathematical Model for the Transmission of Plasmodium Vivax Malaria.” Parasitology International. Volume 52, Issue 1, Pages 81-93. Descriptors: Malaria; Mathematical model; Plasmodium vivax; Relapse; Simulation; The Solomon Islands. Abstract: We have proposed a mathematical model for the transmission of Plasmodium vivax malaria quantitatively, which is adjusted to the infected region, Guadalcanal, in the Solomon Islands. The simulation of a transmission model will be instrumental in planning the malaria control strategy. A characteristic of the life cycle of P. vivax is that a sporozoite injected into the blood stream by a mosquito bite may sometimes stay in a hepatocyte as a hypnozoite. Therefore, we have incorporated a phenomenon of renewed infections caused by a relapse into the transmission model. Also through the simulations we have attempted to evaluate the decline in prevalence caused by the programs of selective mass drug administration (MDA) and vector control such as the distribution of permethrin-treated bednets. The simulations have indicated that the concentrated repetition of MDA at 1-week intervals would reduce the prevalence of vivax malaria swiftly in the beginning and would keep the parasite rate below 1% for a few years but the prevalence would increase thereafter. In contrast, the parasite rate would remain below 1% for a long time if a trial of 1 or 2 times MDA is accompanied with some reduction of the vectorial capacity by the enforcement of vector control. In any case, it is important to beware of relapse cases because even after the execution of MDA it takes a long time to decrease the proportion of hypnozoite carriers. ISSN: 1383-5769.

Natural History of Guadalcanal


Jackson, G. V. H. and Zettler, F. W. 1983. “Sweet Potato Witches’ Broom and Legume Little-Leaf Diseases in the Solomon Islands.” Plant Diseases. Volume 67, Issue 10, Pages 1141-1144. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: mycoplasma-like organisms; witches’ broom; disease transmission; Article Taxonomic Terms: Ipomoea batatas; Desmodium; Ipomoea triloba; Crotalaria; Polygala paniculata; Solomon I. Merremia pacifica; Orosius lotophagorum ryukyuensis; Vernonia cineria; Vigna sesquipedalis. Abstract: Sweet potato witches’ broom disease occurred in Ipomoea batatas, I. indica, I. triloba , and Merremia pacifica in the Solomon Islands. The disease agent, a mycoplasmalike organism (MLO) found in phloem cells of infected I. batatas plants, was transmitted by the sweet potato leafhopper, Orosius lotophagorum ryukyuensis. Disease incidence was much higher on the Guadalcanal Plains than elsewhere in the Solomon Islands. The high incidence there was correlated with high populations of C. lotophagorum ryukyuensis. All 192 accessions of I. batatas from the Solomon Islands were susceptible to this MLO when grafted-inoculated with infected scions or when infected naturally. Legume little-leaf, another MLO, was manifested as a witches’ broom symptom on Emilia sonchifolia and Vernonia cineria. On Guadalcanal, the legume little-leaf disease was also found in plants of Crotalaria sp., Desmodium heterophyllum, D. triflorum. Polygala paniculata , and Vigna sesquipedalis. Database: Bacteriology Abstracts (Microbiology B). ISSN: 0191-2917.


Jakes, P. and White, A. J. R. 1969/9. “Structure of the Melanesian Arcs and Correlation with Distribution of Magma Types.” Tectonophysics. Volume 8, Issue 3, Pages 223-236. Abstract: Chemical data on Cenozoic lavas (29 new analyses) from Melanesia indicate a zonal arrangement of lava types in the New Guinea-New Britain arc. Tholeiitic rocks occur on the oceanic side of New Guinea (Manam, Karkar), and north of New Britain. Calc-alkaline rocks occur on the East Papuan coast (Mt. Lamington, Mt. Victory). The shoshonitic rock association of the New Guinea highlands (Mt. Hagen, Mt. Giluwe) and East Papua probably represents the equivalent of the alkali-basalt association, or a further zone of magma variation across island arcs. Zonation is not distinct within the Solomon Island Arc. Lavas of the New Georgia Group show tholeiitic as well as calc-alkaline affinities, and rocks from Bougainville and Guadalcanal are calc-alkaline. The equivalent of the alkali-basalt association has not been found in the Solomons. Seismic data are reviewed. The position of the seismic zone may be correlated with the chemistry of the rocks and in the New Guinea Arc the plane dips towards the continent. In the Solomon Arc (Bougainville section) the seismic zone dips steeply towards the continent: in the southern section (New Georgia-Guadalcanal) it is almost vertical. ISSN: 0040-1951.

James R D; Johnston, L and Ruxton, Peter A. 1996. “Geology of the Gold Ridge Epithermal Gold Deposit, Guadalcanal Island, Solomon Islands.” Abstracts - Geological Society of Australia. Volume 43, Pages 267-271. Descriptors: areal geology; Cenozoic; clay minerals; diapirs; epithermal processes; faults; gold ores; Gold Ridge Deposit; Gold Ridge Volcanics; ground water; Guadalcanal; hot springs; hydrothermal alteration; island arcs; lithostratigraphy; lower Pliocene;
Malango Mountains; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; mineral resources; Neogene; Oceania; ore grade; ore forming fluids; plate collision; plate tectonics; Pliocene; reserves; sheet silicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; springs; structural controls; subduction; sulfides; Tertiary; thermal waters; volcanoclastics; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Notes: Mesozoic geology of the eastern Australian Plate conference. Brisbane, Queeensl., Australia. Sept. 23-26, 1996. ISSN: 0729-011X.

Johnson, Howard and Pflueger, John. 1991/6. “Potential Mio-Pliocene Reef Traps in the Iron Bottom Basin, Solomon Islands.” Marine Geology. Volume 98, Issue 2-4, Pages 177-186. Abstract: The Iron Bottom Basin is situated in Iron Bottom Sound, north of Honiara, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands and is the most southerly sub-basin of the Central Solomons Trough. The basin contains a maximum sedimentary thickness of about 4.5 km of late Oligocene to Quaternary strata that may have the potential for the generation and entrapment of hydrocarbons. We have interpreted commercial multi-channel seismic-reflection profiles from the southern, nearshore part of Iron Bottom Basin and have found mound-like anomalies at least two stratigraphic levels, and we believe these anomalies to be Mio-Pliocene and Pliocene shelf-edge reefs. They cover areas of greater than 6 km by 2.5 km and are up to about 200 m thick. A smaller patch reef is also described. These reef features are overlain by about 1 km of stratified sediments and lie under about 550–650 m of water. They form potential traps for hydrocarbons that may have been generated in Iron Bottom Basin.Descriptors: Cenozoic; economic geology; geophysical methods; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; Guadalcanal; Iron Bottom Basin; island arcs; Melanesia; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; petroleum; Pliocene; reefs; reflection methods; reservoir rocks; seismic methods; seismic profiles; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; Tertiary; traps; West Pacific. ISSN: 0025-3227.


Descriptors: Australasia; Bismarck Archipelago; calderas; composition; damage; eruptions; geologic hazards; Indo Australian Plate; magmas; Melanesia; New Britain; Oceania; Pacific Plate; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; Rabaul Caldera; Solomon Islands; South Bismarck Plate; subduction; Tavui; Tavurvur; volcanic features; volcanoes; Engineering geology. ISSN/ISBN: 1035-9338.

Jones, D. G. 1989. “Gold Ridge, Guadalcanal.” Publication - Geology Department and Extension Service, University of Western Australia. Volume 17, Pages 14-20. Descriptors: economic geology; gold ores; Gold Ridge Deposit; Guadalcanal; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Solomon Islands; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0156-9287; ISBN: 0-909704-64-3.

Jones, D. G., Thomas, G. (compiler) and Jones, D. G. (compiler). 1989. “Gold Ridge, Guadalcanal; Bicentennial Gold 88; Excursion Guidebook; South Pacific Gold Deposits.” Publication - Geology Department and Extension Service, University of Western Australia. Volume 17, Pages 14-20. Descriptors: economic geology; gold ores; Gold Ridge Deposit; Guadalcanal; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Solomon Islands. Notes: illus. incl. 2 tables, sketch maps. ISBN: 0909704643.


Jordan, J.K. and Capul, R. R. 1986. “Rural Water Supply and Sanitation Program in the Solomon Islands.” Descriptors: Developing countries; Rural areas; Water supply development; Sanitation; Solomon Islands; Management planning; Finances; Economic aspects; Public participation; Public health; Training; Maintenance; Water treatment; Wastewater treatment. Notes: SO: Water and Sanitation for Health Project, Washington DC. WASH Field Report No. 179, May 1986. 89p, 3 fig, 9 append. AID Contract 5942-C-00-4085-00, Project 936-5942. Water-treatment-and-distribution; Wastewater-treatment-processes. Abstract: At the request of the US Agency for International Development/Suva (USAID/Suva) the Water and Sanitation for Health (WASH) Project sent a two-person team to Solomon Islands (SI) in January and February 1986 to assist USAID/Suva by recommending methods whereby USAID could best implement the Rural Water and Sanitation Project for Child Survival in the Solomon Islands. In addition, the Solomon Islands Government requested that the WASH team assess the effectiveness of the Rural Water and Sanitation (RWSS) Project which was started by the Solomon Islands Government in 1979. Conclusions included: (1) The Solomon Islands Government must decide if it wants to place greater emphasis on sanitation. If so it must recognize that fewer water systems can be constructed; (2) The Environmental Health Division should continue to administer the RWSS Program, but must implement a satisfactory management information system; (3) Implementing a program to maintain rural water systems is essential; and (4) The development and implementation of a research protocol to measure the health benefits of improved water systems in the Solomon Islands is not practical. Recommendations include: (1) The Ministry of Health and Medical Services should form a committee to make decisions on the direction of the RWSS Program with respect to
sanitation; (2) Some of the funds currently allocated for materials should be used to provide more reliable transport for Environmental Health Division personnel; (3) The Solomon Islands Government should seek donor assistance to begin a program of developing community participation workshops for villages with water systems and for those that will receive new ones; (4) USAID should provide financial support and management for the training associated with the development of community participation workshops; and (5) USAID should not provide major support for materials to construct new water systems. Current donor aid is adequate to support this part of the program. Until simplified and practical methodologies are developed, USAID should not fund attempts to undertake research programs to assess the health benefits of improved water supplies to the rural people in the Solomon Islands.

Jordan, J. K. and Capul, R. R. 1986. “Rural Water Supply and Sanitation Program in the Solomon Islands. Field Rept.” Water and Sanitation for Health Project, Arlington, VA. May. Volume: WASHFIELD179, WASHACTIVITY213, AIDPNAAV251, page(s): 86. Descriptors: Project management; Community relations; Maintenance; Children; Developing country application; Solomon Islands; Developing countries; Water supply; Sanitation; Rural areas; Health effects; Water and Sanitation for Health project; Behavior and society International relations; Medicine and biology Public health and industrial medicine; Urban and regional technology and development Environmental management and planning. Abstract: At the request of the United States Agency for International Development/Suva (USAID/Suva) the Water and Sanitation for Health (WASH) Project sent a two-person team to Solomon Islands in January and February 1986 to assist USAID/Suva by recommending methods whereby USAID could best implement the Rural Water and Sanitation Project for Child Survival in the Solomon Islands. In addition, the Solomon Islands Government requested that the WASH team assess the effectiveness of the Rural Water and Sanitation (RWSS) Project which was started by the Solomon Islands Government in 1979. The report describes the consultants’ findings, conclusions, and recommendations. Funder: Agency for International Development, Washington, DC.; Sponsored by Agency for International Development, Washington, DC. NTIS: PB87156329XSP.

Jun, Takeda, Masato, Kawabata and Toshiaki, Matsuo. 2000. “The Traditional Utilization of Useful Plants and Animals at Talaura Village, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands.” Bulletin of the Faculty of Agriculture, Saga University. Japan. Issue 85, Pages 19-43. Abstract: The Mongoloid group who spoke Austronesian words left the small islands near Indonesia and the Phillipines for Micronesia and Polynesia around 7,000 to 5,000 years ago carrying with them root crops, some arboricultural plants and pottery. These neolithic people were very good at canoeing, so they are called sea Mongoloids. They spread and made a territorial expansion to Oceania, escaping from the Australo-Melanesian people who had settled in advance Australia, Papua New Guinea and other Melanesian islands. They migrated, settled and interbred on the way. One of these groups is the Lapita people whose potteries remained in Musau in the Bismark Islands, Melanesia 3200 to 3300 years ago. Arboricultural plants such as coconut palms and breadfruit trees were very important in the process of migration and settlement in the expansion, and adaptation in the islands. Especially, breadfruits have been utilized as fermented storage foods in Oceania. Coconut palms have a characteristic to flow adrift on the sea and grow naturally on the beach, and have lots of useful parts as food or other uses according to each stage of the growth. Moreover, it is very essential that both plants are even now available inexhaustibly almost throughout the year. We made a field study on the traditional procurement techniques and food processing methods of various kinds of local food resources of the Solomon Islanders, which will give us a clue to elucidate the process of the territorial expansion and adaptation in the islands. Guadalcanal Island belongs to the Solomon
Islands with Honiara as the capital. It has a tropical climate and is blessed with species-diverse resources. Their traditional food system was strongly based on root crops such as taros and yams as main dishes, and local ferns and so on as side dishes all of which grow in Guadalcan Island. ISSN: 0581-2801.

K

Kale, Brian. 2006. “Seismic Observation in Solomon Islands.” Bulletin of the International Institute of Seismology and Earthquake Engineering. International Institute of Seismology and Earthquake Engineering: Tokyo, Japan. Volume 40, Pages 103-126. Descriptors: depth; earthquakes; epicenters; geologic hazards; history; instruments; Kavachi; Melanesia; observations; Oceania; risk assessment; Savo; seismic networks; seismic risk; seismicity; Simbo; Solomon Islands; technology; volcanic earthquakes; volcanoes; Seismology; Environmental geology. Abstract: Each year, someone, somewhere within these scattered islands of Solomon should experience considerably strong earthquake, if not a tremor or perhaps a moderate earthquake. It is quiet true to say Solomon Islands is a region of high seismicity. To be frank, each year, a total number of local earthquake shocks of estimated 780 to 1200 are often detected, recorded, analyzed and distributed at Honiara (HNR) seismological station. For the half part of this year 2005, a total of 640 earthquakes of local and distance (as far as Sumatra) origins were recorded. Most of these local shocks range from magnitude of 2.1 to 7.0 on the richter scale. The most felt shock for 2005, as determine by the United State Geological Survey (USGS) has having magnitude 6.4 on the richter scale occurred on the NE of Dadali on Santa Isabel island on 22nd January at 7.7 degrees S and 159.5 degrees E with Shallow depth. Moderate to considerably strong earthquakes epicenters are plotted along the San Cristobal trench and occasionally along the Vitiaz trench system. ISSN: 0074-655X.

Kalugin, A. S. 1973. “New Data on the Origin of Bauxite of the Karst Geosynclinal Type.” Transactions (Doklady) of the U.S.S.R.Academy of Sciences: Earth Science Sections. Scripta Publishing: Silver Spring, MD, United States. Volume 211, Issue 1-6, Pages 205-208. Descriptors: 197407; ash falls; atolls; bauxite; carbonate rocks; chemical composition; economic geology; environment; genesis; geosynclines; gibbsite; karst; limestone; Melanesia; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; ore deposits; oxides; reefs; Rennell Island; reserves; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0012-494X.

Kalugin, A. S. 1973. “Novyye Dannyye o Proiskhozhdenii Boksitov Karstovogo Geosinklinal'Nogo Tipa” Translated Title: “New Data on Origin of Karst Geosynclinal-Type Bauxites.” Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR. Akademiya Nauk SSSR: Moscow, USSR. Volume 211, Issue 6, Pages 1440-1443. Descriptors: bauxite; carbonate sediments; Cenozoic; clastic sediments; clay; diagenesis; distribution; economic geology; genesis; glasses; igneous rocks; karst; Melanesia; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; processes; pyroclastics; Quaternary; reefs; Rennell Island; sediments; Solomon Islands; southwest; volcanic rocks; volcanism; Economic geology of nonmetal deposits. Abstract: Genesis of bauxites in the southwest Pacific (Solomon Islands), from pyroclastics in bottom sediments. ISSN: 0002-3264.

Kannan, K., Tanabe, S., Tatsukawa, R. and Williams, R. J. 1995. “Butyltin Residues in Fish from Australia, Papua New Guinea and the Solomon Islands.” Internationa journal of Environmental Chemistry. Descriptors: Australia; Solomon Islands; Papua New Guinea; fish; water pollution effects; bioaccumulation; antifoulants; tissue analysis; toxicity; butyltin; Pisces; food contamination; metals; antifouling substances; tributyltin. Notes: CL: Effects-of-pollution (3030). Abstract: Concentrations of mono- (MBT), di- (DBT) and tributyltin (TBT) were determined in the
muscle and liver of fish collected from Australia, Papua New Guinea and the Solomon Islands. Butyltin concentrations ranged from below the limit of detection to 47 ng g\(^{-1}\) in muscle and 6.5 to 570 ng g\(^{-1}\) wet wt in liver. Liver was found to accumulate higher concentrations of butyltins than muscle. Butyltin residues in tissues were not positively correlated with lipid content. Monobutyltin was the predominant species in all samples. The daily dietary intake of butyltins by Australians via fish was estimated to be 377-416 ng person\(^{-1}\)day\(^{-1}\), lower than is believed to cause health problems. ISSN: 0306-7319.

Karnik, V., Schenkova, Z. and Schenk, V. 1981. “A Note on Foreshocks and Aftershocks.” Czech. Acad. Sci., Geophys. Inst.: Prague, Czechoslovakia. Pages 78-108. Descriptors: aftershocks; Asia; Commonwealth of Independent States; earthquakes; Kermadec Islands; Kuril Islands; Melanesia; Oceania; precursors; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; seismology; Solomon Islands; spatial distribution; USSR; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Seismology. Conference: Second international symposium on the analysis of seismicity and on seismic hazard. Liblice Castle, Czechoslovakia. May 18-23, 1981.

Kastner, Nadine; Multi Mapping Ltd; International Travel Maps and ITMB Publishing Ltd. 2006. “International Travel Maps, Solomon Islands, Scale 1:900,000.” Vancouver, B.C: ITMB Publishing, International Travel Maps. Descriptors: Solomon Islands- Maps, Tourist; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- Maps, Tourist; Santa Cruz Islands (Solomon Islands)- Maps, Tourist; Honiara (Solomon Islands)- Maps, Tourist; Rennell Island (Solomon Islands)- Maps, Tourist. Notes: Description: 1 map; col. 68 x 99 cm., folded to 25 x 10 cm. Map Scale 1:900,000; (E 1550–E 1630/S 70–S 110); Category of scale: a Constant ratio linear horizontal scale: 900000 Coordinates--westernmost longitude: E1550000 Coordinates--easternmost longitude: E1630000; Notes: Relief shown by gradient tints. Shows boundaries, roads, trails, cave/shipwreck locations, airports, general public amenities, multiple smaller islands, and portion of Bougainville, Papua New Guinea. Panel title. Includes index, insets of Honiara, Santa Cruz Islands, Rennell/Bellona islands, indexed inset of Guadalcanal, and texts. Col. ill., location map, and publishers list on title panels. “Indexed.” Other Titles: Solomon Islands, scale 1:900,000; Responsibility: design and cartography by Multi Mapping Ltd. edited by Nadine Kastner. ISBN: 1553414039; 9781553414032.

Katz, H. R. 1980. “Basin Development in the Solomon Islands and their Petroleum Potential; Symposium on Petroleum Potential in Island Arcs, Small Ocean Basins, Submerged Margins and Related Areas.” Technical Bulletin - United Nations, Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP), Committee for Co-Ordination of Joint Prospecting for Mineral Resources in South Pacific Offshore Areas. Issue 3, Pages 59-75. Descriptors: basalt; basins; Cenozoic; Cretaceous; economic geology; energy sources; folds; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; lower Tertiary; Malaita; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Oceania; petroleum; petrology; possibilities; Santa Isabel; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; tholeiitic basalt; Upper Cretaceous; volcanic rocks; volcanism. Notes: References: 25; sketch maps. ISBN: 0477066674.

Kay, R. L. 1980. “Copper Ore Mining at Bougainville Copper Ltd., Panguna, Papua New Guinea.” Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: Melbourne, Victoria, Australia. Pages 296-299. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; chalcopyrite; copper ores; data processing; economic geology; exploration; explosions; Melanesia; metal ores; mineralization; mining; mining geology; Oceania; open pit mining; ore bodies; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; practice; production control; Solomon Islands; sulfides; surface mining; Economic geology, economics of ore deposits. ISSN: 0155-3399.

Kelley, S P and Wartho, J. A. 2000. “Rapid Kimberlite Ascent and the Significance of Ar-Ar Ages in Xenolith Phlogopites.” Science. American Association for the Advancement of Science: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 289, Issue 5479, Pages 609-611. Descriptors: absolute age; Ar Ar; Commonwealth of Independent States; Cretaceous; dates; eruptions; Europe; high temperature; igneous rocks; inclusions; kimberlite; Kola Peninsula; Lower Cretaceous; magmas; magmatism; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; Mesozoic; mica group; Oceania; phlogopite; plutonic rocks; pressure; Russian Federation; sheet silicates; silicates; simulation; Solomon Islands; temperature; ultramafics; upper mantle; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Geochronology. ISSN: 0036-8075.

Kennett, J. P. 1973. “Preliminary Biostratigraphic and Paleo-Oceanographic Results of Cruise XXI D/ V Glomar Challenger in the South-West Pacific.” N.Z. Comm: Unesco, Wellington. Pages 341. Descriptors: biostratigraphy; Cenozoic; circulation; Coral Sea; Deep Sea Drilling Project; East Pacific; Fiji Basin; Lau Basin; Leg 21; Lord Howe Rise; New Caledonia Basin; New Hebrides Trench; oceans; Pacific Ocean; Solomon Islands Trench; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; southwest; Southwest Pacific; stratigraphy; Tasman Basin; Tonga Trench; West Pacific; Stratigraphy.


Kere, N. K., Parkinson, A. D. and Samrawickerema, W. A. 1993. “The Effect of Permethrin Impregnated Bednets on the Incidence of Plasmodium Falciparum, in Children of North Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands.” Southeast Asian Journal of Tropical Medicine and Public Health. 1993 March. Volume 24, Issue 1, Pages 130-7. Abstract: The effect of permethrin impregnated bednets was studied for the first time amongst a large community in North Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. The community was divided into two; one covered 23 villages with 860 people who were given bednets impregnated at 0.5 g/m2, and the other 20 villages with 520 people was used as control. Parasitological data were collected by regular prevalence surveys and examination of records of malaria patients who have sought treatment in clinics. Entomological data by landing catches using human bait. The entomological results showed a 71% reduction of Anopheles farauti. Even though there was no significant reduction observed with An.punctulatus, as the density was already very low, the number biting indoor was much lower than those outdoor of houses with treated bednets. Parasitologically there was a steady decline in the incidence between surveys with Plasmodium falciparum in the under 10 years old. Even though there was no significant reduction in the other variables measured, there was a steady increase in the clearance rate between surveys which might also be due to easy accessibility to chemotherapy. The study showed the significant beneficial effect of permethrin impregnated bednets, which was found to be still effective up to twelve months, against stable P. falciparum malaria in children. Availability: NLM.


King, Haddon F, McMahon, Denis W, Bujtor, George J and Scott, Anthony K. 1992. “Geology in the Understanding of Ore Reserve Estimation; an Australian Viewpoint.” Society of Mining Engineers: leton, CO, United States. Pages 55-68. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; Bougainville; copper ores; geological methods; gold ores; lead zinc deposits; Mary Kathleen Mine; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral exploration; northwestern Queensland; Oceania; ore grade; Panguna Mine; Papua New Guinea; Queensland Australia; reserves; Solomon Islands; uranium ores; Woodlawn Mine; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Conference: Society of Mining Engineers, 1985 fall meeting on Ore reserve estimation. Albuquerque, NM, United States. 1985. ISBN: 0-87335-109-6.

King, Haddon F, McMahon Denis W, Bujtor George J and Scott, Anthony K. 1986. “Geology in the Understanding of Ore Reserve Estimation; an Australian Viewpoint.” Soc. Min. Eng.: Littleton, CO, United States. Pages 53-68. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; Bougainville; case studies; copper ores; economic geology; economics; evaluation; gold ores; in situ; lead zinc deposits; Melanesia; metal ores; mining geology; New South Wales Australia; Oceania; ore grade; Papua New Guinea; Queensland Australia; reserves; Solomon Islands; uranium ores; Economic geology, economics of ore deposits. Conference: 1985 fall meeting of the Society of Mining Engineers of AIME. Albuquerque, NM, United States. 1985.; ISBN: 0-87335-060-X.

Kinman, William S and Neal, Clive R. 2006. “Magma Evolution Revealed by Anorthite-Rich Plagioclase Cumulate Xenoliths from the Ontong Java Plateau; Insights into LIP Magma Dynamics and Melt Evolution.” J. Volcanol. Geotherm. Res. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 154, Issue 1-2, Pages 131-157. Descriptors: anorthite; basalts; cumulates; electron probe data; feldspar group; framework silicates; igneous rocks; inclusions; Kwaimbaita Basalt; large igneous provinces; laser ablation; laser methods; lava; Leg 192; magmas; Melanesia; melts; Ocean Drilling Program; Oceania; ODP Site 1183; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; pillow lava; plagioclase; silicate melts; silicates; Solomon Islands; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Based on Publisher-supplied data. Abstract: Petrologic studies of igneous rocks often rely on whole-rock analyses alone to deduce source and melting histories. Whole-rock compositions represent a mixture of the processes responsible for the final texture and composition of the rock, but do not emphasize the evolutionary processes that the rock may have experienced. We examine the major, minor, and trace element compositions of plagioclase phenocrysts and plagioclase-rich cumulate xenoliths from a sequence of Kwaimbaita pillow basalt and massive flows recovered from Ocean Drilling Program (ODP) Site 1183 on the expansive approximately 122 Ma Ontong Java Plateau (OJP) and from subaerial outcrops on the island of Malaita, Solomon Islands. These data are used to reconstruct equilibrium liquid compositions to understand magma dynamics, magma evolution, and the distribution basalt types across the OJP. Results reveal that crystals frequently are out of equilibrium with their host basalt. Two distinct compositional zones are present in plagioclase phenocrysts and xenolith crystals - An (sub 80-86) and An (sub 65-79) . Equilibrium magma compositions derived from each of these zones are distinct. In relative terms, the following distinctions are made: An (sub 80-86) : Sr, Y, and Eu richer, Ba and LREE depleted, higher Sr/Ti, lower Ba/Sr and La/Y; An (sub 65-79) : Sr, Y, and Eu
poorer, Ba and LREE enriched, lower Sr/Ti, higher Ba/Sr and La/Y. We observed several An (sub 65-79) parent magmas with higher La/Y, lower Sr, and higher LREE than the majority of An (sub 65-79) zones, which suggests that they grew from highly fractionated magmas. The An (sub 80-86) zones of both xenolith crystals and phenocrysts appear to have crystallized relatively early and are attributed to growth in magmas more primitive than parent magmas of An (sub 65-79) zones or the host magma. Using MELTS modeling we demonstrate a significant role for H (sub 2) O is not necessary to form An-rich crystals from known OJP magma types. These types of zones can instead form when relatively primitive OJP magmas ascend and partially crystallize at low pressures. Crystal mush layers are rheological elements of multiply saturated solidification fronts, and conditions for extreme fractionation are met deep with thermally and mechanically insulated mush-solidification fronts. Conditions in a homogenous magma body alone cannot generate the range of magma compositions and textures recorded in OJP plagioclase crystals. We suggest that the OJP magma chamber system consisted of crystal mush dominated regions and liquid dominated regions in a laterally and vertically extensive system of interconnected dikes and sills.

Solidification front disruption was common during magma recharge and transport, which freed debris to mix with OJP magmas. The volume of crystalline debris from disrupted solidification fronts was small relative to the overall magma volume, which leads to little change of bulk magma chemistry. This can explain the dominance of the Kwaimbaite basalt type across the OJP. Evidence of solidification front disruption is best preserved as allochthonous crystals both more and less primitive than bulk magma chemistry, both of which were observed in OJP basalts. Coincident with a zone of neutral buoyancy, the shallow OJP magma chamber system existed at a depth of 0-7 km. The OJP magma chamber system was thinner near the plateau margins, which provided less density filtration of magmas. This allowed more diverse magma types to reach the surface along the margins. It is envisaged that as the OJP formed, the zone of neutral buoyancy slowly migrated upward leading to slow yet pervasive assimilation of overlying seawater-altered basalt at the base of the lava pile. ISSN: 0377-0273.


Knight, C L, Fraser, R. B. and Baumer A. 1973. “Geology of the Bougainville Copper Orebody, New Guinea.” Bulletin - Australia, Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Australian Geological Survey Organization: Canberra, A.C.T., Australia. Volume 141, Pages 123-133. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; evaluation; Melanesia; metal ores; mining geology; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; production; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0084-7089.

Knight, C L, Fraser, R. B. and Baumer A. 1971. “Geology of the Bougainville Copper Orebody, New Guinea.” Proceedings of the Pacific Science Congress. [Pacific Science Congress]: [location varies], United States. Volume 12, Issue 1, Pages 416-417. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; genesis; igneous processes; intrusions; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; New Guinea; Oceania; ore deposits;
Papua New Guinea; petrology; processes; production; reserves; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits.

Krishna, V G and Kaila, K. L. 1984. “Upper Mantle Velocity Structure in the New Guinea and Solomon Islands Regions.” Journal of Physics of the Earth. Center for Academic Publications Japan: Tokyo, Japan. Volume 32, Issue 4, Pages 339-371. Descriptors: Australasia; body waves; discontinuities; earthquakes; elastic waves; focus; island arcs; mantle; Melanesia; Oceania; P waves; Papua New Guinea; S waves; seismic waves; seismic zoning; seismology; Solomon Islands; traveltime; upper mantle; velocity; velocity structure; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0022-3743.


Kroenke, L. W. 1989. “Interpretation of a Multichannel Seismic-Reflection Profile Northeast of the Solomon Islands from the Southern Flank of the Ontong Java Plateau Across the Malaita Anticlinorium to the Solomon Islands Arc.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 12, Pages 145-148. Descriptors: anticlinoria; faults; folds; geophysical methods; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; interpretation; Malaita Anticlinorium; Melanesia; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; reflection methods; seismic methods; seismic profiles; Solomon Islands; surveys; systems; West Pacific; Applied geophysics.

Kroenke, L. W. and Bardsley, E. 1975. Bibliography of Geology and Geophysics of the South Pacific. Suva, International: UNDP/CCOP, Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP). page(s): 91. Descriptors: areal geology; bibliography; Fiji; Melanesia; New Caledonia; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Polynesia; Samoa; Solomon Islands; south; Tonga; Vanuatu; 13 Areal geology. Notes: SO: Technical Bulletin - United Nations, Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP), Committee for Co-ordination of Joint Prospecting for Mineral Resources in South Pacific Offshore Areas. 1, 1975.; Individual papers are cited in this Bibliography under the separate authors. ISSN: 0378-6447.


of vegetable production and marketing; Responsibility: by Almut-Christiane Kunert. ISBN: 0858346737.


Kyne, R. F. 1974. “Bougainville Copper: Development of a Major Open Pit Complex.” Journal of Mines, Metals and Fuels. Books and Journals Private: Calcutta, India. Volume 22, Issue 10, Pages 285-297. Descriptors: areal geology; Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; Melanesia; metal ores; methods; mining; Oceania; open pit; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; production; resources; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0022-2755.


Islands; Applied geophysics. Abstract: Approximate boundaries between main rock types, structural trends, and other geologic features can be diagnosed and plotted from aerial photographs. In densely covered and inaccessible terrain, photogeologic methods can therefore be an important tool in geologic reconnaissance. Four examples are cited from the Solomon islands. ISSN: 0031-868X.

Lay, Thorne, Astiz, Luciana, Kanamori, Hiroo and Christensen, Douglas H. 1989. “Temporal Variation of Large Intraplate Earthquakes in Coupled Subduction Zones.” Phys. Earth Planet. Inter. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 54, Issue 3-4, Pages 258-312. Descriptors: Alaska; Aleutian Islands; Asia; catalogs; Cenozoic; Central America; Chile; Circum Pacific region; Commonwealth of Independent States; compression tectonics; continental rise; depth; earthquakes; focal mechanism; Holocene; intraplate tectonics; Kamchatka Peninsula; Kermadec Islands; Kuril Islands; Melanesia; Mexico; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Peru; plate tectonics; Polynesia; Quaternary; rupture; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; seismic gaps; seismology; Solomon Islands; South America; Southwestern Alaska; stress; subduction; tectonics; tectonophysics; Tonga; United States; USSR; Vanuatu; viscoelasticity; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Solid earth geophysics; Seismology. ISSN: 0031-9201.

Lay, T. and Kanamori H. 1981. “An Asperity Model of Great Earthquake Sequences.” American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Pages 579-592. Descriptors: Alaska; Aleutian Islands; Asia; Chile; Circum Pacific region; Colombia; Commonwealth of Independent States; earthquakes; Far East; faults; Japan; Kuril Islands; Melanesia; models; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Peru; prediction; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; seismology; Solomon Islands; South America; Southwestern Alaska; stress; subduction; tectonics; tectonophysics; Tonga; United States; USSR; Seismology. Conference: Symposium on earthquake prediction. Mohonk, NY, United States. May 12-16, 1980. ISSN/ISBN: 0197-6346; 0-87590-403-3.

Lay, T. and Kanamori H. 1980. “Earthquake Doublets in the Solomon Islands.” Phys. Earth Planet. Inter. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 21, Issue 4, Pages 283-304. Descriptors: body waves; doublets; earthquakes; elastic waves; faults; Indian Plate; mechanism; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; paired earthquakes; plate convergence; plate tectonics; seismic waves; seismograms; seismology; seismotectonics; shallow focus earthquakes; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; spectral analysis; stress; subduction; subduction zones; tectonics; tectonophysics; trenches; triggering; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Calif. Inst. Technol., Div. Geol. and Planet. Sci.; Contrib. No. 3163.; ISSN: 0031-9201.


League of Nations. 1937. “Intergovernmental Conference of Far-Eastern countries on rural hygiene: Preparatory papers: National reports. ... Colony of Hong-Kong...North Borneo... Sarawak... Colony of Fiji... Gilbert and Ellice Islands Colony... British Solomon Islands Protectorate... New Hebrides Condominium... Tonga.” Geneva, Switzerland: League of Nations.
Lee, K. E. 1969. “Some Soils of the British Solomon Islands Protectorate.” Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, Series B: Biological Sciences. Volume 255, Issue 800, Pages 211-239. Descriptors: Guadalcanal; Kolombangara; Melanesia; Oceania; San Cristobal; San Jorge; Santa Isabel; soils; Solomon Islands; Soils. Abstract: Oligocene-Quaternary series, lavas, limestones, and sandstone, weathering and leaching processes, includes appendixes on soil profile descriptions and site data and chemical analyses of soil samples. ISSN: 0080-4622.

Leehman, E. G. 1976. “(Giant Cowry found in Guadalcanal).” Hawaii. Shell News. Volume 24, Issue 1, Pages 4. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Organism morphology; Article Taxonomic Terms: Cypraea vitellus; Article Geographic Terms: Solomon Islands., Guadalcanal, Marau Sound; Marine. Abstract: a giant specimen of Cypraea vitellus collected alive in 10 ft of water in Marau Sound, Guadalcanal and having dimensions of 84 x 53 x 45 mm may prove to be a world record, it is suggested here. Database: ASFA 1: Biological Sciences and Living Resources. ISSN: 0017-8624.

Lekelalu, I. and South Pacific Applied Geoscience Comm., Suva (Fiji). 1998. “Guadalcanal Plains, Solomon Islands Groundwater Availability Guide.” SOPAC, Suva, Fiji. SOPAC Training Rep. Jul. Volume: 77, Pages: 16. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Geophysical surveys; Drilling; Ground water; Water quality; Water pollution; Article Geographic Terms: Solomon I., Guadalcanal Plains; Freshwater. Abstract: Aquifers on the Guadalcanal Plains (Solomon Islands) consist of poorly graded gravel, sand and clay layers and permeability is very irregular from one well to another. Ground water quality is generally good from chemical point of view but some areas are contaminated with seawater. This report outlines the information about the availability of ground water. The information was gathered by geophysical surveys, drilling, well monitoring and water quality analysis. Being the primary source of ground water, the Plains must be kept free from dumping waste matter. It is suggested that ground water may be the only source free of contamination. ASFA Accession Number: 5989715.


Liversidge, A. 1890. “Chalk and Flints from the Solomon Islands.” Report - Australasian Association for the Advancement of Science. Australasian Association for the Advancement of Science: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 2, Pages 417-420. Descriptors: carbonate rocks; chalk; chemically precipitated rocks; chert; flint; Melanesia; Oceania; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; Sedimentary petrology.

Louat, R. 1977. “Relative Seismic Energy Released in South Pacific Area.” Ed. Technip: Paris, France. Pages 29-36. Descriptors: earthquakes; energy; Fiji; Malay Archipelago; maps; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; plates; Polynesia; release; seismic energy; seismicity; seismology; shallow focus earthquakes; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; stratigraphic boundary; tectonophysics; Tonga; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Seismology. Conference: International symposium on the geodynamics of the South-WestPacific. Noumea, New Caledonia. Aug. 27-Sept. 2, 1976.
Lum, J. A.; Clark, A. L. and Coleman, P. J. 1991. Gold Potential of the Southwest Pacific; Papua New Guinea, Solomon Islands, Vanuatu, Fiji. Honolulu, HI, United States: East-West Center. page(s): 40. Descriptors: alluvium; Australasia; basalts; Cenozoic; clastic sediments; crust; dacites; faults; Fiji; gold ores; igneous rocks; island arcs; Melanesia; Mesozoic; metal ores; mineral exploration; mining; Oceania; oceanic crust; open pit mining; ophiolite; Papua New Guinea; placers; plate tectonics; sediments; slabs; Solomon Islands; subduction; surface mining; Tertiary; underground mining; Vanuatu; volcanic rocks; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits, ISBN: 0-86638-146-5.

Lundgren, Paul R. 1988. “Deformation in Subducting Slabs at Intermediate Depths.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 69, Issue 44, Pages 1316. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; body waves; Commonwealth of Independent States; deformation; depth; earthquakes; elastic waves; Far East; focal mechanism; Hokkaido; Honshu; Indonesia; Japan; Java; Kermadec Islands; Kuril Islands; Melanesia; New Britain; Oceania; P waves; Papua New Guinea; Polynesia; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands; subduction zones; Sumatra; Tonga; USSR; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Seismology. Conference: American Geophysical Union 1988 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 6-11, 1988. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Lundgren, Paul Randall. 1988. Rupture Characteristics of Complex Earthquakes. Evanston, IL, United States: Northwestern University. page(s): 172. Descriptors: amplitude; body waves; earthquakes; elastic waves; errors; focal mechanism; Green function; inverse problem; kermadec Islands earthquake 1986; Kuril Islands earthquake 1978; least squares analysis; New Hebrides Islands earthquake 1981; P waves; Pacific Plate; rupture; Samoa earthquake 1981; seismic moment; seismic sources; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands earthquake 1984; spectral analysis; statistical analysis; subduction; Tonga Islands earthquake 1977; Tonga Islands earthquake 1982; tsunamis; Seismology. GeoRef: 1989-060180.

Mackey Denis, O Sullivan, Jeanette and Watson Ros. 2001. “Iron in the Western Pacific; a Riverine Or Hydrothermal Source for Iron in the Equatorial Undercurrent?” Australian Marine Science Association (North Queensland): Townsville, Queensl., Australia | New Zealand Marine Sciences Society. Pages 145-146. Descriptors: Australasia; Bismarck Sea; currents; dissolved materials; equatorial region; Equatorial Undercurrent; fluvial sedimentation; genesis; hydrothermal vents; iron; iron rich composition; marine environment; Melanesia; metals; ocean currents; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; particulate materials; research; rivers and streams; sedimentation; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; suspended materials; terrigenous materials; upwelling; West Pacific; Oceanography. Conference: Changes in the marine environment. Townsville, Queensl., Australia. July 3-6, 2001. ISBN: 0-864-43683-1.

MacQuillan, M. J. 1974. “Influence of Crop Husbandry on Rice Planthoppers (Hemiptera; Delphacidae) in the Solomon Islands.” Agro-Ecosystems. Volume 1, Pages 339-358. Abstract: Husbandry practices which led to the rice plantthoppers Nilaparvata lugens Stål and Sogatella furcifera Horv. (Hemiptera; Delphacidae) becoming severe pests at Ilu on Guadalcanal are identified. In the system of two irrigated rice crops a year at Ilu, rice was grown in every month of each year from 1960 to 1966. Overlapping of an extended period of harvesting of one rice crop with an extended period of planting of the next, resulted in high densities of rice plantthoppers appearing on young rice crops. Insecticides applied to control rice plantthoppers on young crops and
close cutting of paddy bunds severely reduced mirid and spider predators of rice planthoppers. Rice planthoppers surviving insecticidal applications and macropterous adults, arriving from rice not sprayed with insecticides and from crop residues, were able to reproduce unchecked resulting in severe damage to more susceptible sowings of 90 kg seed/ha in rows 18 cm apart if further insecticidal applications were not regularly made. The absence of a severe rice planthopper problem in the system of one unirrigated crop a year at Tetere is explained in the light of the results at Ilu. Attention is drawn to methods that can be used to control rice planthoppers attacking irrigated rice on Guadalcanal.


Mann, Paul and Taira, Asahiko. 2004. “Global Tectonic Significance of the Solomon Islands and Ontong Java Plateau Convergent Zone.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 389, Issue 3-4, Pages 137-190 ; 3 sheets. Descriptors: acoustical methods; basins; Cenozoic; crust; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; gravity methods; imagery; island arcs; lineaments; mafic composition; magnetic methods; mantle; mantle plumes; ocean floors; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate convergence; plate tectonics; Quaternary; reflection methods; refraction methods; seismic methods; side scanning methods; Solomon Islands; sonar methods; subduction zones; surveys; tectonics; trenches; uplifts; volcanism; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics. Abstract: Oceanic plateaus, areas of anomalously thick oceanic crust, cover about 3% of the Earth’s seafloor and are thought to mark the surface location of mantle plume “heads”. Hotspot tracks represent continuing magmatism associated with the remaining plume conduit or “tail”. It is presently controversial whether voluminous and mafic oceanic plateau lithosphere is eventually accreted at subduction zones, and, therefore: (1) influences the eventual composition of continental crust and; (2) is responsible for significantly higher rates of continental growth than growth only by accretion of island arcs. The Ontong Java Plateau (OJP) of the southwestern Pacific Ocean is the largest and thickest oceanic plateau on Earth and the largest plateau currently converging on an island arc (Solomon Islands). For this reason, this convergent zone is a key area for understanding the fate of large and thick plateaus on reaching subduction zones. This volume consists of a series of four papers that summarize the results of joint US-Japan marine geophysical studies in 1995 and 1998 of the Solomon Islands-Ontong Java Plateau convergent zone. Marine geophysical data include single and multi-channel seismic reflection, ocean-bottom seismometer (OBS) refraction, gravity, magnetic, sidescan sonar, and earthquake studies. Objectives of this introductory paper include: (1) review of the significance of oceanic plateaus as potential contributors to continental crust; (2) review of the current theories on the fate of oceanic plateaus at subduction zones; (3) establish the present-day and Neogene tectonic setting of the Solomon Islands-Ontong Java Plateau convergent zone; (4) discuss the controversial sequence and timing of tectonic events surrounding Ontong Java Plateau-Solomon arc convergence; (5) present a series of tectonic reconstructions for the period 20 Ma (early Miocene) to the present-day in support of our proposed timing of major tectonic events affecting the Ontong Java Plateau-Solomon Islands convergent zone; and (6) compare the structural and deformational pattern observed in the Solomon Islands to ancient oceanic plateaus preserved in Precambrian and Phanerozoic orogenic belts. Our main conclusion of this study is that 80% of the crustal thickness of the Ontong Java Plateau is subducted beneath the Solomon island arc; only the uppermost basaltic and sedimentary part of the crust (approximately 7 km) is preserved on the
Natural History of Guadalcanal

overriding plate by subduction-accretion processes. This observation is consistent with the observed imbricate structural style of plateaus and seamount chains preserved in both Precambrian and Phanerozoic orogenic belts. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Mann, Paul and Taira, Asahiko. 2004. Tectonics, Seismicity and Crustal Structure of the Ontong Java Plateau; Solomon Island Arc Convergent Zone, Southwest Pacific Ocean. Amsterdam, Netherlands: Elsevier. Tectonophysics. Volume: 389, 3-4, page(s): 125-307. Descriptors: crust; island arcs; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate convergence; plate tectonics; seismicity; Solomon Islands; tectonics; volcanism; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics; Structural geology. Notes: Individual papers are cited separately. ISSN: 0040-1951.


Mason, D R and McDonald, J. A. 1978. “Intrusive Rocks and Porphyry Copper Mineralization.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 73, Issue 5, Pages 857-877. Descriptors: Australasia; copper ores; data; differentiation; economic geology; genesis; geochemistry; granitic composition; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous rocks; intrusions; Melanesia; metals; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; partitioning; plutonic rocks; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; stocks; West Pacific; whole rock; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Mason, D R and McDonald, J. A. 1977. “On the Relationship between Whole Rock Chemistry and Porphyry Copper Mineralization.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 72, Issue 6, Pages 1506-1510. Descriptors: alkaline composition; alumina; Australasia; calc alkaline composition; controls; copper; economic geology; geochemical controls; geochemistry; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous rocks; intrusions; Melanesia; metals; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; partitioning; plutonic rocks; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; stocks; West Pacific; whole rock; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Mason, D R. 1975. Geochemistry of Intrusive Rock Suites and Related Porphyry Copper Mineralization in the Papua New Guinea-Solomon Islands Region. Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Australian National University. page(s): 284. Descriptors: Australasia; geochemistry; igneous rocks; intrusions; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralogy; Papua New Guinea; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments. Notes: Includes appendices; Access according to University regulations. GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-066198.


McKee, C O, Johnson, R. W. and Rogerson, R. 1990. “Explosive Volcanism on Bougainville Island; Ignimbrites, Calderas, and Volcanic Hazards.” Pacific Rim Congress.1990, Vol. Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: Parkville, Victoria, Australia. Volume 2, Pages 237-245. Descriptors: Australasia; Bagana Volcano; Balbi; Billy Mitchell; Bougainville; Bougainville Island; calderas; igneous rocks; ignimbrite; Kunua; Loloru; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; pyroclastics; Solomon Islands; Tore; volcanic features; volcanic rocks; volcanoes; volcanology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: Pacific Rim congress 90. Gold Coast, Queensl., Australia. May 6-12, 1990.

McKee, C, Johnson, R. W. and Patia H. 1989. “Assessment of Volcanic Hazards on Bougainville Island, Papua New Guinea.” Bulletin - New Mexico Bureau of Mines and Mineral Resources. New Mexico Bureau of Mines and Mineral Resources: Socorro, NM, United States. Volume 131, Pages 182. Descriptors: ash flows; Australasia; Bagana; Balbi; Billy Mitchell; Bougainville Island; Cenozoic; debris flows; engineering geology; geologic hazards; igneous rocks; ignimbrite; lahars; lava flows; Loloru; mass movements; Melanesia; Neogene; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; petrology; phreatomagmatism; Pliocene; pyroclastics; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; stratovolcanoes; Tertiary; upper Pliocene; volcanic rocks; volcanoes; volcanology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Engineering geology. Conference: General assembly of the International Association of Volcanology and Chemistry of the Earth's Interior. Santa Fe, NM, United States. June 25-July 1, 1989. ISSN: 0096-4581.

McKenzie, E. Jackson, G.V.H. 1986. The fungi, bacteria and pathogenic algae of Solomon Islands. Suva (Fiji): AGP; AGO. 288 pages. Descriptors: Plant diseases; Pathogens; Fungi; Bacteria; Algae; Hosts; Documentation; Plant Diseases; Plant Pathology; Solomon Islands. FAO Library.

McLeod, Helena. 1999. “Pacific Island Update.” Mining Environmental Management. Mining Journal: London, United Kingdom. Volume 7, Issue 6, Pages 11-12. Descriptors: Australasia; environmental analysis; Melanesia; metal ores; mines; mining; nonmetal deposits; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; programs; Solomon Islands; SOPAC Program; South Pacific Applied Geoscience Commission; waste management; Economic geology, general, deposits; Environmental geology. ISSN: 0969-4218.

McTavish, R. A. 1966. “Planktonic Foraminifera from the Malaita Group, British Solomon Islands.” Micropaleontology. American Museum of Natural History: New York, NY, United States. Volume 12, Issue 1, Pages 1-36. Descriptors: Cenozoic; Foraminifera; Invertebrata; Malaita group; Melanesia; microfossils; Oceania; paleontology; Protista; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; Stratigraphy. Abstract: A succession based principally on planktonic foraminifera has been established for the Solomon islands. It contains ten units ranging in age from upper Eocene to upper Miocene-Pliocene. The Malaita group, exposed on Malaita, Maramasike and Ulawa, contains the entire succession. Correlation of its faunas with others from the Indo-Pacific region has confirmed the time-stratigraphic succession of the Solomons. ISSN: 0026-2803.
McTavish, R. A. 1963. Smaller Foraminifera from the British Solomon Islands. Aust., Australia: University of Western Australia. Nedlands, West. page(s): 401. Descriptors: Foraminifera; Invertebrata; Melanesia; Oceania; Protista; Solomon Islands; Invertebrate paleontology. Notes: Includes appendices; Access according to University regulations. GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-067068.


Mereu, R. F. 1975. “A Study of the Effect of Q on the Observation of Upper Mantle Travel-Time Branches using Adaptive Processing Techniques.” Noordhoff International Publishing: Leiden, International. Pages 471-488. Descriptors: arrays; Australasia; body waves; earthquakes; effects; elastic waves; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; interpretation; layers; Malay Archipelago; mantle; Melanesia; models; New Britain; Oceania; P waves; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Q; seismic methods; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands; structure; surveys; traveltime; upper mantle; velocity; Warramunga Array; Seismology.

Meric, E. 1979. “A Different View on the Origin of some Conical Forms of Miogypsinoides Dehaarti (Van Der Vlerk).” Revista Espanola De Micropaleontologia. Empresa Nacional: Madrid, Spain. Volume 11, Issue 3, Pages 505-508. Descriptors: Foraminifera; Invertebrata; Melanesia; microfossils; Miogypsinoides dehaarti; Oceania; paleontology; Protista; Rotaliacea; Rotaliina; Solomon Islands; Tanimbar Islands; Invertebrate paleontology. ISSN: 0556-655X.

Meyer, W T, Theobald, P. K. Jr and Bloom H. 1979. “Stream Sediment Geochemistry.” Geological Survey of Canada: Ottawa, ON, Canada. Pages 411-434. Descriptors: Amazon River; analysis; applications; Australasia; Bougainville; Canada; Central America; copper; data handling; data processing; England; Europe; exploration; geochemical methods; geochemistry; Great Britain; heavy minerals; iron; lead; manganese; maps; Melanesia; metal ores; metals; Mexico; mineral exploration; molybdenum; North America; Oceania; organic compounds; organic materials; Papua New Guinea; sampling; Scandinavia; sediments; Solomon Islands; South America; statistical analysis; stream sediments; surveys; techniques; tin; United Kingdom; United States; Western Europe; Yukon River; zinc; Economic geology of ore deposits. Conference: Exploration 77; an international symposium. Ottawa, Ont., Canada. Oct. 1977. ISSN: 0317-445X.

Michael, M. 1976. “Fluctuations in Circum-Pacific Volcanic Activity.” Journal of the Geological Society of Australia. Geological Society of Australia: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 23, Part 3, Pages 211-222. Descriptors: 1900 1968; Asia; Caribbean region; causes; Circum Pacific; eruptions; Far East; Indonesia; Malay Archipelago; Mathew Island; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; Pacific region; periodicity; Santa Cruz; sea floor spreading; Solomon Islands; Vanuatu; volcanoes; volcanology; West Indies; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0016-7614.

Miller, D R and Enever, J. R. 1987. “In-Situ Measurements of Near Surface Stress Fields Adjacent to Consuming Plate Boundaries.” Australas. Inst. Min. and Metall.: Parkville, Victoria, Australia. Pages 343-348. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; Bougainville; Circum Pacific region; effects; Far East; field studies; in situ; intraplate tectonics; Melanesia; Mindanao; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Philippine Islands; plate boundaries; plate convergence; plate tectonics; Solomon Islands; stress; stress fields; tectonophysics; Solid earth geophysics.

Milne, F. J. 1974. “Hydrological Problems Associated with the Bougainville Copper Project.” Institution of Mining and Metallurgy, Transactions, Section A: Mining Industry. Institution of Mining and Metallurgy: London, United Kingdom. Volume 83, Pages A34-A36. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; discharge; duration; engineering geology; floods; fluvial features; ground water; hydrogeological; intensity; Melanesia; mining; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; prevention; rainfall; rivers; site exploration; Solomon Islands; surface water; surveys; tailings; transport; waste disposal; water resources; Engineering geology. ISSN: 0371-7844.


Ministry of Forest, Environment and Conservation, Honiara (Solomon Islands); Australian International Development Assistance Bureau, Canberra. 1995. Solomon Islands national forest resources inventory: the forests of the Solomon Islands. v. 1: National overview and methods. Honiara (Solomon Islands): Ministry of Forest, Environment and Conservation. 63 p., maps. Descriptors: Forest Resources; Forest Inventories; Forest Management; Social Forestry; Timber Trees; Volume Tables; Methods. FAO Library.

Miura, S, Araki E, Shinohara M, et al. 1997. “P-Wave Seismic Velocity Structure of the Solomon Double Trench Arc System by Ocean Bottom Seismographic Observation.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 78, Issue 46, Suppl., Pages 469. Descriptors: body waves; crust; deep seismic sounding; earthquakes; elastic waves; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; high velocity zones; Indo Australian Plate; island arcs; Melanesia; ocean bottom seismographs; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanic crust; P waves; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; plate convergence; plate tectonics; seismic methods; seismic waves; seismographs; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction; surveys; teleseismic signals; traveltime residuals; trenches; velocity structure; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics. Conference: American Geophysical Union, 1997 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 8-12, 1997. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Miura, Seiichi, Suyehiro, Kiyoshi, Shinohara, Masanao, Takahashi, Narumi, Araki, Eiichiro and Taira, Asahiko. 2004. “Seismological Structure and Implications of Collision between the Ontong Java Plateau and Solomon Island Arc from Ocean Bottom Seismometer-Airgun Data.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 389, Issue 3-4, Pages 191-220. Descriptors: accreting plate boundary; air guns; Australian Plate; body waves; crust; data acquisition; data processing; elastic waves; geochemistry; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; igneous rocks; Indian Plate; island arcs; Izu Bonin Arc; major elements; Malaita; Melanesia; models; North Pacific; Northwest Pacific; ocean bottom seismographs; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; P waves; Pacific Ocean; plate collision; plate tectonics; reflection methods; refraction methods; San Cristobal Trench; seismic methods; seismic waves; seismicity; seismographs; Solomon Islands; subduction zones; surveys; trenches; velocity; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics. Abstract: A seismic refraction-reflection experiment using ocean bottom seismometers and a tuned airgun array was conducted around the Solomon Island Arc to investigate the fate of an oceanic plateau adjacent to a subduction zone. Here, the Ontong Java Plateau is converging from north with the Solomon Island Arc as part of the Pacific Plate. According to our two-dimensional P-wave velocity structure modeling, the thickness of the Ontong Java Plateau is about 33 km including a thick (15 km) high-velocity layer (7.2 km/s). The thick crust of the Ontong Java Plateau still persists below the Malaita Accreted Province. We interpreted that the shallow part of the Ontong Java Plateau is accreted in front of the Solomon Island Arc as the Malaita Accreted Province and the North Solomon Trench are not a subduction zone but a deformation front of accreted materials. The subduction of the India-Australia Plate from the south at the San Cristobal Trench is confirmed to a depth of about 20 km below sea level. Seismicity around our survey area shows shallow (about 50 km) hypocenters from the San Cristobal Trench and deep (about 200 km) hypocenters from the other side of the Solomon Island Arc. No earthquakes occurred around the North Solomon Trench. The deep seismicity and our velocity model suggest that the lower part of the Ontong Java Plateau is subducting. After the oceanic plateau closes in on the arc, the upper part of the oceanic plateau is accreted with the arc and the lower part is subducted below the arc. The estimation of crustal bulk composition from the velocity model indicates that the upper portion and the total of the Solomon Island Arc are SiO (sub 2) 58% and 53%, respectively, which is almost same as that of the Izu-Bonin Arc. This means that the Solomon Island Arc can be a contributor to growing continental crust. The bulk composition of the Ontong Java Plateau is SiO (sub 2) 49-50%, which is meaningfully lower than those of continents. The accreted province in front of the arc is growing with the convergence of the two plates, and this accretion of the upper part of the oceanic plateau may be another process of crustal growth, although the proportion of such contribution is not clear. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Mizushima, Yutaka, Kato, Hiromi, Ohmae, Hiroshi, Tanaka, Toshiaki, Bobogare, Albino and Ishii, Akira. 1994/12. “Prevalence of Malaria and its Relationship to Anemia, Blood Glucose Levels, and Serum Somatomedin c (IGF-1) Levels in the Solomon Islands.” Acta Tropica. Volume 58, Issue 3-4, Pages 207-220. Descriptors: Malaria; Malnutrition; IGF-1. Abstract: As part of establishing effective methods for malaria control, the malaria-associated nutritional status was surveyed on Guadalcanal Island in the Solomon Islands in 1993. A total of 506 residents participated in this study. The slide positive rate for malaria was 54% (275/506) in all ages, with a high of 79% for children aged 4–6 years. Plasmodium falciparum was the most common species (52%), followed by P. vivax (29%). Splenomegaly in children from infants to age 15 was detected at the rate of 30% (104/343) by the palpation method. Body mass index was lower in Solomon
Islanders than for the Japanese population up to 15 years old in both genders. Mean values for serum insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) were also lower in Solomon Islanders in children under 18 years old. The hemoglobin distribution curves were almost identical in the malaria-positive (P(+) group) and -negative (P) groups. The percentage of cases with less than 80 mg/dl of blood glucose and those with less than 50 ng/ml of IGF-1 were higher in the P(+) group than for the anti-malaria drug-untreated malaria-negative (P(?D(?)) group. It is suggested that low blood glucose and low IGF-1 levels may have some relationship with the malaria infection. ISSN: 0001-706X.


Morton, J. E. 1973. “The Inner-Tidal Ecology of the British Solomon Islands. 1. the Zonation Patterns of the Weather Coast.” Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London (B). Volume 265, Issue 873, Pages 491-542. Descriptors: Marine. Notes: records keyed from 1974 ASFA printed journals; TR: 1974. Abstract: The structure and composition of the intertidal zonation pattern on Solomon Islands exposed shores has been studied with reference to a series of transects on the south and east coasts of Banika Island, Russell Group. The generalized zonation pattern is given. Detailed comparative studies were made at Titiana Point, Gizo Island; at the Spit Reef, Wickham Anchorage; Wickham Island; and at Kopiu and Walmai, South Guadalcanal. The distribution of the Mollusca, especially the Gastropoda forms a clear-cut pattern, widely applicable in the Solomons Islands. Where moats or shallow pools provide continuously Immersed stretches between tides, a different, and much enriched, zoning pattern is evident. With the transition from maximal wave exposure towards increased shelter, the intertidal zonation is altered by (1) vertical and (2) horizontal effects. For vertical effects, less marked than on corresponding temperate shores, there is still a marked elevation of the successive zones, to occupy areas well above the nominal tide limits. With decrease of wave exposure, 5 distinctive types of intertidal pattern have been recognized. ISSN: 0962-8436.


Murav’yev, V. I. 1974. “O Glinoobrazovanii v Okeanicheskikh Osadkakh Yugo-Zapadnoy Chasti Tikhogo Okeana.” Translated Title: “Formation of Clays in Oceanic Sediments of the Southwestern Part of the Pacific Ocean." Akademiya Nauk SSSR: Moscow, USSR. Pages 24-38. Descriptors: alteration; areal studies; Australasia; bottom sediments; chemical composition; clastic rocks; clastic sediments; clay mineralogy; clay minerals; composition; East Pacific; Fiji; genesis; glasses; glauconite; grains; igneous rocks; Lord Howe Rise; Malay Archipelago; Manus Island; marginal seas; Melanesia; mica group; mineral composition; montmorillonite; New Britain; New Caledonia; New Guinea; New Hebrides Trench; ocean floors; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; palagonite; Papua New Guinea; Polynesia; Samoa; sedimentary petrology; sedimentary rocks; sediments; shale; sheet silicates; silicates; silt; size; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; southwest; Southwest Pacific; Tonga Trench; Tongatapu Group; trenches; Vityaz Trench; volcanic glass; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Oceanography. ISSN: 0024-497X.

Musgrave, R. J. 1988. “Paleomagnetism and Tectonic History of the Solomon Islands Arc.” Abstracts - Geological Society of Australia. Volume 21, Pages 294. Descriptors: Asia; basins; Cenozoic; Far East; Florida Group; fore arc basins; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; Indian Plate; Indonesia; magnetostratigraphy; Malaita; Melanesia; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; paleolatitude; paleomagnetism; plate boundaries; plate convergence; plate tectonics; plutonic rocks; reversals; rotation; San Cristobal; Solomon Islands; subduction; Sumatra; tectonics; tectonophysics; Tertiary; ultramafics; upper Miocene; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Notes: Ninth Australian geological convention; Achievements in Australian Geoscience. Brisbane, Queensl., Australia. Feb. 1-5, 1988. ISSN: 0729-011X.

Miocene; Nendo; Neogene; New Hebrides Arc; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; paleomagnetism; plate tectonics; polar wandering; rotation; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction; tectonics; Tertiary; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0885-3401.

Musgrave, R. J. 1986. Palaeomagnetism and Tectonics of the Eastern Solomon Islands. Sydney, N.S.W., Australia: University of Sydney. page(s): variously paginated. Descriptors: island arcs; Melanesia; Oceania; paleomagnetism; plate tectonics; polar wandering; Solomon Islands; Vanuatu; Vitiaz; Solid earth geophysics. Notes: Access according to University regulations. GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-071474.


Musgrave, Robert J. 1990. “Paleomagnetism and Tectonics of Malaita, Solomon Islands.” Tectonics. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 9, Issue 4, Pages 735-759. Descriptors: alternating field demagnetization; Australian Plate; carbonate rocks; Cenozoic; Central Pacific; Deep Sea Drilling Project; demagnetization; DSDP Site 289; Hada Calcsiltite; Haruta Calcsiltite; island arcs; Leg 30; limestone; magnetization; magnetostratigraphy; Malaita; Melanesia; middle Miocene; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; paleomagnetism; plate convergence; plate tectonics; Pliocene; pole positions; relative age; remanent magnetization; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; Solomon Sea Plate; subduction; tectonics; terranes; Tertiary; thermal demagnetization; upper Miocene; viscous remanent magnetization; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0278-7407.


Natural History of Guadalcanal

and Mineral Resources (MEWMR). A copy of his letter is attached to this report as an Appendix. The Solomon’s capital - Honiara (on Guadalcanal) was visited on the way to Rabaul, PNG. A two hour meeting was held at the Ministry office on 10 May 1995, with Patrick Nanau, Cromwell Oopoto, Alison K. Papabatu and Boby Kelly of the Seismological Section. Institute of Geological & Nuclear Sciences, Lower Hutt, New Zealand. ISBN: 1171-9184; 0-478-08869-8.


Natland, James H. 1985. “The Samoa-Malaita Connection.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 66, Issue 46, Pages 1080. Descriptors: alkalic composition; alkaline earth metals; alnoite; basalts; East Pacific; garnet group; hot spots; igneous rocks; ilmenite; inclusions; isotopes; lamprophyres; lava; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; metals; mica group; mineral composition; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; nesosilicates; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; orthosilicates; oxides; Pacific Ocean; petrology; plagiogranite; plutonic rocks; Polynesia; rare earths; rutile; Samoa; sheet silicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; Tonga Trench; trace elements; upper mantle; volcanic rocks; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Notes: American Geophysical Union, 1985 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 9-12, 1985. GeoRef.

Neal, Clive R and Nixon, P. H. 1985. “Spinell-Garnet Relationships in Mantle Xenoliths from the Malaita Alnoite, Solomon Islands, South-Western Pacific.” Verhandelinge Van Die Geologiese Vereniging Van Suid Afrika = Transactions of the Geological Society of South Africa. Geological Society of South Africa: Marshalltown, South Africa. Volume 88, Issue 2, Pages 347-354. Descriptors: alnoite; garnet group; igneous rocks; inclusions; intrusions; Kwaikwai; lamprophyres; lherzolite; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; mineral composition; nesosilicates; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; orthosilicates; oxides; Pacific Ocean; peridotites; petrology; plutonic rocks; silicates; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; spinel; ultramafics; West Pacific; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Oceanography. ISSN: 0371-7208.

Neal, Clive R and Davidson, Jon P. 1989. “An Unmetasomatized Source for the Malaitan Alnoite (Solomon Islands); Petrogenesis Involving Zone Refining, Megacryst Fractionation, and Assimilation of Oceanic Lithosphere.” Geochem. Cosmochim. Acta. Pergamon: Oxford, International. Volume 53, Issue 8, Pages 1975-1990. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; alnoite; diapirs; differentiation; fractional crystallization; geochemistry; igneous rocks; isotopes; lamprophyres; lithosphere; magmas; Malaita; megacrysts; Melanesia; metals; mineral composition; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plutonic rocks; rare earths; ratios; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; trace elements; West Pacific; zoning; Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0016-7037.

Neal, Clive R, Mahoney, John J, Kroenke, Loren W, Duncan, Robert A and Petterson, Michael G. 1997. “The Ontong Java Plateau.” Geophysical Monograph. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 100, Pages 183-216. Descriptors: chemical composition; igneous rocks; Leg 130; magnetic anomalies; major element analyses; Malaita; mantle; mantle plumes; Melanesia; Nauru Basin; Ocean Drilling Program; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; peridotites; plutonic rocks; Santa Isabel; Solomon Islands; ultramafics;
Neal, Clive R, Shafer, John T and Castillo, Paterno R. 2002. “Compositional Variability in Lavas from the Ontong Java Plateau; Results from the Volcaniclastic Sequence of Ocean Drilling Program (ODP) Leg 192 Site 1184.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 83, Issue 47, Suppl., Pages 1444. Descriptors: basalts; clasts; composition; fractional crystallization; geochemical anomalies; geochemistry; igneous rocks; Kwaimbaita Formation; large igneous provinces; lava; Leg 130; Leg 192; magmas; marine sediments; Melanesia; metals; Ocean Drilling Program; Oceania; ODP Site 1184; ODP Site 807; Ontong Java Plateau; outcrops; Pacific Ocean; rare earths; sediments; Solomon Islands; volcanic rocks; volcaniclastics; West Pacific; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: American Geophysical Union 2002 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 6-10, 2002. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Neal, Clive R and Taylor, Lawrence A. 1989. “A Negative Ce Anomaly in a Peridotite Xenolith; Evidence for Crustal Recycling into the Mantle or Mantle Metasomatism?” Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta. Pergamon: Oxford, International. Volume 53, Issue 5, Pages 1035-1040. Descriptors: Babaru' u; basalts; cerium; crustal recycling; fugacity; geochemistry; hydrothermal alteration; igneous rocks; inclusions; Kwaikwai; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; metals; metasomatism; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; peridotites; petrology; plutonic rocks; rare earths; Solomon Islands; subduction zones; ultramafics; upper mantle; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; xenoliths; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0016-7037.


Neal, Clive R. 1988. “The Origin and Composition of Metasomatic Fluids and Amphiboles Beneath Malaita, Solomon Islands.” J. Petrol. Clarendon Press: Oxford, United Kingdom. Volume 29, Issue 1, Pages 149-179. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; alnoite; amphibole group; chain silicates; crystallization; differentiation; geochemistry; hydrothermal alteration; igneous rocks; inclusions; isotopes; lamprophyres; magmas; Malaita; Melanesia; metals; metasomatism; mid ocean ridge basalt; mineral composition; mixing; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; peridotites; plutonic rocks; processes; rare earths; ratios; silicates; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; trace elements; ultramafics; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Isotope geochemistry. ISSN: 0022-3530.

Natural History of Guadalcanal

Neal, Clive R. 1986. “Multiple Mantle Metasomatism; Alnoite Generation Beneath Malaita in the Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 67, Issue 44, Pages 1253. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; alnoite; carbon dioxide; crystallization; igneous rocks; inclusions; isotopes; lamprophyres; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; metals; metasomatism; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; petrology; plutonic rocks; rare earths; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Isotope geochemistry. Conference: AGU 1986 fall meeting and ASLO winter meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 8-12, 1986. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Neal, Clive R. 1985. “Spinel-Garnet Relationships as Deduced from Ultrabasic Mantle Xenoliths from Malaita, Solomon Islands.” Journal of the Geological Society of London. Geological Society of London: London, United Kingdom. Volume 142, Part 6, Pages 1242. Descriptors: garnet group; igneous rocks; inclusions; Kwaikwai; lherzolite; Malaita; Melanesia; mineral assemblages; nesosilicates; Oceania; orthosilicates; oxides; P T conditions; peridotites; petrology; phase equilibria; plutonic rocks; silicates; Solomon Islands; spinel; ultramafics; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: Metamorphic Studies Group meeting; Metamorphic studies; research in progress. London, United Kingdom. March 6, 1985. ISSN: 0016-7649.

Neef, G and Plimer, I. R. 1979. “Ophiolite Complexes on Small Nggela Island, Solomon Islands.” Geological Society of America Bulletin. Geological Society of America (GSA): Boulder, CO, United States. Volume 90, Issue 2, Pages I 136-I 138, II 313-II 348. Descriptors: Cenozoic; composition; Florida Islands; geochemistry; harzburgite; igneous rocks; lava; Melanesia; metasomatism; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; Oligocene; ophiolite; Paleogene; peridotites; petrology; plate tectonics; plutonic rocks; processes; serpentinization; Small Nggela Island; Solomon Islands; subduction zones; Tertiary; ultramafics; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Notes: print, microfiche. ISSN: 0016-7606.

Neef, G. 1979. “Cenozoic Stratigraphy of Small Nggela Island, Solomon Islands; Early Miocene Deposition in a Forearc Basin Followed by Pliocene Patch Reef Deposition.” N. Z. J. Geol. Geophys. Department of Scientific and Industrial Research (DSIR): Wellington, New Zealand. Volume 22, Issue 1, Pages 53-70. Descriptors: age; algae; arenite; basalts; Benioff zone; biostratigraphy; Cenozoic; clastic rocks; deposition; Florida Group; Florida Limestone; Foraminifera; fore arc basin; Ghumba Beds; igneous rocks; Invertebrata; island arcs; lava; Melanesia; microfossils; Miocene; nannofossils; Ndandala Sandstone; Neogene; Oceania; ophiolite; patch reefs; pillow lava; Plantae; plate tectonics; Protista; reefs; rudite; sedimentary rocks; sedimentation; Siota Beds; Small Nggela Island; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; ectonophysics; Tertiary; thallophytes; trenches; volcanic rocks; Stratigraphy; geologic maps. ISSN: 0028-8306.

Neef, G. 1978. “A Convergent Subduction Model for the Solomon Islands.” Bulletin - Australian Society of Exploration Geophysicists. [Blackwell Scientific Publications on behalf of the Australian Society of Exploration Geophysicists.]: [Victoria], Australia. Volume 9, Issue 3, Pages 99-103. Descriptors: Benioff zone; Bouguer anomalies; Cenozoic; convergent plate boundary; evolution; genesis; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; gravity anomalies; gravity methods; Indian Plate; island arcs; Melanesia; models; North Bismarck Plate; Oceania; ophiolite; Pacific Plate; paleogeography; plate tectonics; Solomon Islands; Solomon Islands Plate; Solomon Sea Plate; South Bismarck Plate; subduction; surveys; tectonophysics; volcanoes; Solid
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Neef, G. and McDougall I. 1976. “Potassium-Argon Ages on Rocks from Small Nggela Island, British Solomon Island, S.W. Pacific.” Tsukiji Shokan Publishing Co.: Tokyo, Japan. Pages 81-85. Descriptors: absolute age; amphibole group; amphibolites; Cenozoic; chain silicates; clinoamphibole; dates; diorites; feldspar group; framework silicates; gabbros; geochronology; hornblende; hornfels; igneous rocks; K Ar; Melanesia; metamorphic rocks; minerals; Oceania; Paleogene; plagioclase; plutonic rocks; silicates; Small Nggela Island; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; Geochronology. ISSN: 0552-7333.


Nichols, P. Rawlinson, N. J. F. Batty, M. Jackson, G. Halevelaka, B. and Fisheries Division, Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands). 1986. “Report on a Survey to Catch Eels using Fyke Nets.” Pages: 2. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Fishing gear; Catching methods; Specifications; Nets; Trap nets; Article Geographic Terms: Solomon I., Guadancanal; Fyke nets; Marine. Abstract: An experimental study was done in Komuniboli village, Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands) in May 1986 to catch eels using Fyke nets. This report presents the method used and results of the trials. It was concluded that static gear such as Fyke nets are relatively easy to handle and fish with. The results were very successful. ASFA Accession Number: 6056498.

Niem, A. R. 1989. “Coral and Limestone, Carbonate Cements in Siliciclastic Rocks, and Chalk from Dredge Samples, Solomon Islands and Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 12, Pages 175-202. Descriptors: Anthozoa; aragonite; Australasia; Bougainville; carbonate rocks; carbonates; cementation; Cenozoic; Coelenterata; deposition; diagenesis; geochemistry; Invertebrata; limestone; lithofacies; Melanesia; Oceania; paleoecology; Papua New Guinea; permeability; porosity; Quaternary; sedimentary petrology; sedimentary rocks; siliciclastics; Solomon Islands; textures; Sedimentary petrology.

Nishiwaki, C. and Uyeda S. 1980. “Tectonic Control of Porphyry Copper Genesis; Stress Regime at the Time of Ore Emplacement.” [publisher varies]; [location varies], International. Pages 17-25. Descriptors: Asia; Australsia; collision; controls; copper ores; economic geology; Far East; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Philippine Islands; plate tectonics; porphyry
copper; Solomon Islands; stress; structural controls; tensile strength; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Conference: Fourth joint meeting, MMJJ-AIME. Tokyo, Japan. Nov. 4-8, 1980.

Nixon, P H and Boyd, F. R. 1979. “Garnet Bearing Lherzolites and Discrete Nodule Suites from the Malaita Alnoite, Solomon Islands, S.W. Pacific, and their Bearing on Oceanic Mantle Composition and Geotherm.” Am. Geophys. Union: Washington, D.C., United States. Pages 400-423. Descriptors: alnoite; Cenozoic; chemical composition; composition; garnet group; igneous rocks; inclusions; lamprophyres; lherzolite; Malaita; Melanesia; minerals; nesosilicates; Oceania; orthosilicates; peridotites; petrology; plutonic rocks; silicates; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; ultramafics; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: Second International Kimberlite Conference. Santa Fe, NM, United States. Oct. 3-7, 1977. USGS Library.


Nixon, P H, Mitchell, R H and Rogers, N. W. 1980. “Petrogenesis of Alnoitic Rocks from Malaita, Solomon Islands, Melanesia.” Mineralogical Magazine. Mineralogical Society: London, United Kingdom. Volume 43, Issue 329, Pages 587-596. Descriptors: alnoite; chemical composition; genesis; geothermal gradient; igneous rocks; intrusions; lamprophyres; Malaita; mantle; megacrysts; Melanesia; mineral composition; Oceania; petrology; plutonic rocks; pyroclastics; Solomon Islands; tuff; ultramafics; volcanic rocks; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0026-461X.

Nixon, Peter H and Neal, C. R. 1987. “Ontong Java Plateau; Deep-Seated Xenoliths from Thick Oceanic Lithosphere.” John Wiley & Sons: Chichester, United Kingdom. Pages 335-345. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; alnoite; chemical composition; crust; geochemistry; igneous rocks; inclusions; isotopes; lamprophyres; Malaita; megacrysts; Melanesia; metals; mineral composition; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; peridotites; petrology; plutonic rocks; rare earths; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; spinel lherzolite; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; textures; ultramafics; West Pacific; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Isotope geochemistry. ISBN: 0-471-91209-3.

Nixon, P. H. 1980. “Kimberlites in the South-West Pacific.” Nature (London). Macmillan Journals: London, United Kingdom. Volume 287, Issue 5784, Pages 718-720. Descriptors: alnoite; crust; detection; diamonds; economic geology; exploration; garnet lherzolite; geologic thermometry; geological methods; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; geothermal gradient; heat flow; igneous rocks; inclusions; intrusions; kimberlite; lamprophyres; Malaita; Malay Archipelago; mantle; Melanesia; mineral exploration; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; peridotites; petrology; pipes; plutonic rocks; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; tectonophysics; ultramafics; West Pacific; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0028-0836.

Nomanbhoy, Nazli and Ruff, Larry J. 1996. “A Simple Discrete Element Model for Large Multiplet Earthquakes.” Journal of Geophysical Research, B, Solid Earth and Planets. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 101, Issue 3, Pages 5707-5723. Descriptors: catalogs; discrete element models; discrete filters; earthquakes; epicenters; frequency; global; magnitude; Melanesia; multiples; Nankai Trough; North Pacific; Northwest Pacific; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; recurrence interval; seismology; Solomon Islands; spatial distribution; West Pacific; Seismology. ISSN: 0885-3401.


Novikova, N N and Sidorenko, T. V. 1984. “The Long-Range BG Precursor for Seven Regions of the World.” Computational Seismology: Earthquake Prediction and the Structure of the Earth. Allerton Press: New York, NY, United States. Volume 17, Pages 6-12. Descriptors: 1985; aftershocks; Asia; BG precursor; Chile; China; Circum Pacific region; Colombia; earthquakes; Far East; global; magnitude; main shocks; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Peru; precursors; prediction; Santa Cruz Island; seismology; Solomon Islands; South America; swarms; Vanuatu; Seismology. ISSN: 0733-5792.

Nowak, Rachel and Reuters. 2007. “Ten-metre-high tsunami strikes Solomon Islands.” NewScientist.com news service. 12:09 02 April 2007. Abstract: At least 12 people died and many more are missing after a tsunami struck the tiny Solomon Islands following a powerful undersea earthquake in the South Pacific on Monday morning. The quake measured 8.1 on the Richter scale.
and occurred in shallow waters 350 kilometres (220 miles) north-west of the Solomons' capital, Honiara. It struck at 0740 local time on Monday 2 April (2040 GMT on Sunday), levelling buildings in the south-western islands. The initial tremor was followed about 7 minutes later by a second one, centred further west, of magnitude 6.7. The quakes created a tsunami several metres high that swamped buildings, swept away entire villages and dragged people out to sea. There are fears that the numbers of dead could rise with emerging news of more villages being destroyed. At least seven people died in Gizo, a small fishing village on Ghizo Island just 45 kilometres (25 miles) from the first quake's epicentre. "The wave was up to 10 metres high in some villages," says Alfred Maesulia, the Solomon Islands' chief government spokesman. Many residents were trapped in their homes when waves swept through their towns. Other bodies could be seen but not reached because of the big waves, said government officials. The Solomons' prime minister, Manasseh Sogavare, said the disaster could have been worse if it had happened only a few hours earlier, in darkness, when more people would have been asleep. "We are lucky that it happened during the daytime, that the people observed the sea receding as a sign that something was not right," he said. A tsunami warning for the Pacific from Australia to Alaska was issued within 15 minutes of the quake, creating panic along the east coast of Australia, 2100 kilometres away. Beaches were closed, some schools and daycare centres evacuated, and ferry services halted in Sydney Harbour amid fears of a repeat of the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami disaster. Geoscience Australia alerted the Australian Bureau of Meteorology and Emergency Management Australia of the earthquake’s “potential to generate a destructive tsunami”. The alert was lifted about 9 hours later, with damage confined to the immediate area around the quake. Witnesses on Australia's east coast described the arriving wave as an "extreme tide". The quake was the biggest to hit the Solomon Islands since 1900, says Gary Gibson, chair of the International Seismological Centre executive committee. "An earthquake of this size would involve a rupture of more than 10,000 square kilometres of fault area – about 100 kilometres by 100 kilometres." But he adds that the quake was much smaller than the 1300-km-long rupture in December 2004 off Indonesia's island of Sumatra. The Solomon Islands lie on the so-called Pacific "Ring of Fire", which is geologically extremely active: volcanic eruptions and large submarine earthquakes are fairly common. "The proximity of the quake to the Solomon Islands meant that there was no time to warn of the tsunami, which struck nearby coastlines within a few minutes," said Bill McGuire, director Benfield Hazard Research Centre in the UK. "This sort of thing will continue to happen until populations living close to major earthquake faults are educated to self-evacuate inland or uphill immediately following strong ground shaking," McGuire warned. ISSN: 0262-4079.
O


Ockenhouse, Christian, F., Magill, Alan, Smith Dale and Milhous, Wil. 2005. “History of U.S. Military Contributions to the Study of Malaria.” Military Medicine. 2005 April. Association of Military Surgeons of the U.S. Volume 170 (4 Suppl), Issue 12-6, Abstract: More so than any other infectious disease, malaria has all too often affected the conduct of military operations in war and in some cases has disproportionately influenced the outcome. From Napoleon’s defensive action at Walcheren, to the Union Army’s attempts to take control of the Mississippi River at Corinth and Vicksburg, to the dreadful numbers of malaria casualties suffered by U.S. Marines on the islands of Efate and Guadalcanal during World War II and more recently in Liberia in 2003, malaria has extracted a heavy toll. In this article, we summarize a few of the significant contributions to malaria control by U.S. military personnel throughout its history. We review examples of scientific achievements, medical breakthroughs, and lessons learned from preceding wars that continue to drive the quest for effective antimalarial therapies and preventive vaccines. This review is by no means comprehensive or complete but serves as a testament to the skill, courage, self-sacrifice, and devotion to duty of the many who have faithfully served their country in the past and to those today who continue the struggle against this disease. Database: PubMed. ISSN: 0026-4075.

O’Connor, B. A. 1950. “Premature Nutfall of Coconuts in the British Solomon Islands Protectorate.” Agriculture Journal, Vol. 21, Nos. 1-2, March-June 1950, p. 21-42. Department of Agriculture, Fiji (Suva). From the introduction on p. 21: “...it is now proposed to present a full account of the investigation carried out in the British Solomon Islands Protectorate during the period July-September, 1948. This survey which was undertaken by Mr. R. Leach, a mycologist, of the Cambridge School of Agriculture, and the author, was initiated by. Messrs. Lever Bros., who retained the services of Mr. Leach. At their request, the Government of Fiji instructed the author to accompany Mr. Leach. The following account owes much to the work of Leach, ... Free use has been made of his unpublished report...” From page 27: “During his survey of Lunga, Kukum and Tenaru plantations, Leach found Iridomyrmex in only one area at Tenaru. A possible explanation of its disappearance from Kukum is that large areas of this plantation were eliminated by bulldozing during the war.” From page 29: “During our stay in the B.S.I.P., our headquarters were at Honiara, from which base we worked on Messrs. Lever Bros.’ plantations of Kukum, Lunga and Tenaru.” From page 37: “Leach has mapped out the distribution of these two species and of the Iridomyrmex on Kukum, Lunga and Tenaru, on Guadalcanal...” NAL.

O’Connor, Gulbun Coker. 1979. The Moro Movement of Guadalcanal. Descriptors: 578 leaves; Ethnology- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Nativistic movements-

Ogura, Yoshio. 1977. “Mineralogical Studies on the Occurrence of Nickeliferous Laterite Deposits in the Southwestern Pacific Area.” Kozan Chishitsu = Mining Geology. Nihon Shigen Chishitsu Gakkai - Society of Resource Geologists of Japan: Tokyo, Japan. Volume 27(6), Issue 146, Pages 379-399. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; Asia; economic geology; electron probe data; Far East; garnierite; geochemistry; goethite; Indonesia; iron; laterites; magnesium; Melanesia; metal ores; metals; mineral deposits, genesis; New Caledonia; nickel; nickel ores; Oceania; ore minerals; oxides; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; paragenesis; Philippine Islands; serpentine; serpentine group; sheet silicates; silicates; soils; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; tropical environment; ultramafic composition; West Pacific; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0026-4079.

O’Hanlon, Larry. 2002. “Glittering Globe.” New Scientist (1971). Reed Business Information: London, United Kingdom. Volume 175, Issue 2356, Pages 48-50. Descriptors: Africa; carbon; continental crust; core; core mantle boundary; crust; diamonds; garnet group; genesis; geochemistry; high pressure; igneous rocks; intrusions; kimberlite; lower mantle; magmas; majorite; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; mineral composition; mineral exploration; nesosilicates; Oceania; orthosilicates; outer core; Pacific Ocean; petrography; pipes; plumes; plutonic rocks; pressure; silicates; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southern Africa; streams; ultramafics; West Pacific; zircon; Economic geology, geology of nonmetal deposits. ISSN: 0026-4079.

Okazawa, T., Bakote’e, B., Suzuki, H., Kawada, H. and Kere, N. 1991. “Field Evaluation of an Insect Growth Regulator, Pyriproxyfen, Against Anopheles Punctulatus on North Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands.” J. Am. Mosq. Control Assoc. Volume 7, Issue 4, Pages 604-607. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: chemical control; mortality; aquatic insects; Article Taxonomic Terms: Culicidae; Diptera; Anopheles punctulatus; growth regulators; pyriproxyfen; Solomon I., Guadalcanal I. Freshwater. Abstract: Five pools containing immature stages of Anopheles punctulatus were treated with pyriproxyfen at 4 different dosages. Inhibition of adult emergence was observed in pupae collected from the test pools and/or those obtained by rearing of the 4th instar larvae. Adult emergence was inhibited completely for 2 months at a dosage of 0.1 ppm, for one month at 0.05 ppm and 0.01 ppm, and for 20 days at 0.02 ppm. Death of test insects were observed at the pupal stage and at adult emergence. The mortality rate at adult emergence increased with the duration of larval rearing and with the elapse of time after application. ISSN: 8756-971X.


Oliver, W.W. 1992. Plantation forestry in the South Pacific: a compilation and assessment of practices. FAO, Rome (Italy). Forestry Dept. South Pacific Forestry Development Programme, Port Vila (Vanuatu). June 1992. 127 p. Descriptors: Forestry production; Forest Plantations; Forestry Operations; Forest Management; Forest Trees; Planting; Planting Stock; Cook Islands; Micronesia Fs; Fiji; Guam; New Caledonia; Niue; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; Tonga; Vanuatu; Samoa. FAO Library.

Orr, M. 1999. “The Approval of a Gold Mine in the Solomon Islands; Environmental Planning Issues.” Publication Series - Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy. Volume 4-99, Pages 571-577. Descriptors: dams; design; environmental analysis; gold ores; Gold Ridge Mine; Guadalcanal; land use; Melanesia; metal ores; mining; mining geology; Oceania; open pit mining; Solomon Islands; surface mining; tailings; tailings dams; waste disposal sites; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits; Environmental geology. Notes: International Congress on Earth Science, Exploration and Mining around the Pacific Rim. Bali, Indonesia. Oct. 10-13, 1999. ISSN: 1324-6240.

Orris, G. J. and Bliss, J. D. 1985. “Geologic and Grade-Volume Data on 330 Gold Placer Deposits.” Reston, VA, United States: U. S. Geological Survey. Open-File Report - U.S.Geological Survey. Volume: OF 85-0213, page(s): 173. Descriptors: USGS (Publications of the U. S. Geological Survey); Africa; Asia; Australasia; Australia; bibliography; Bolivia; Brazil; Canada; Central Africa; Central America; Congo Democratic Republic; Far East; global; gold ores; grade; Indonesia; Ivory Coast; Korea; Melanesia; metal ores; Oceania; Panama; Papua New Guinea; Peru; placers; production; review; Solomon Islands; South America; South Korea; statistical analysis; United States; USGS; volume; West Africa; Zaire; Economic geology, economics of ore deposits. GeoRef Accession Number: 1985-057023. ISSN: 0196-1497.


Page, R W and Johnson, R. W. 1974. “Strontium Isotope Ratios of Quaternary Volcanic Rocks from Papua New Guinea.” Lithos. Elsevier: Amsterdam, International. Volume 7, Issue 2, Pages 91-100. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; Australasia; Bismarck Archipelago; Bougainville; Cenozoic; classification; crust; data; genesis; geochemistry; igneous rocks; island arcs; isotopes; magma contamination; magmas; Malay Archipelago; mantle; Manus; Melanesia; metals; New Britain; New Guinea; Oceania; Papua; Papua New Guinea; Quaternary; ratios; sialic; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; types; upper mantle; volcanic; volcanoes; Geochemistry. Abstract: Volcanics subdivided into two groups: (1) homogeneous upper mantle sources, and (2) heterogeneous upper mantle sources or sialic crustal contamination. ISSN: 0024-4937.

Page, R. W. 1971. “Ages of Emplacement and Mineralisation of Economic Mineral Deposits in the New Guinea-Solomons Islands Region.” Proceedings of the Pacific Science Congress. [Pacific Science Congress]: [location varies], United States. Volume 12, Issue 1, Pages 418. Descriptors: absolute age; age; Cenozoic; copper ores; dates; economic geology; genesis; igneous processes; intrusions; K Ar; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; Miocene; Neogene; New Guinea; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; processes; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; Economic geology of ore deposits.

Page, R. W. and McDougall Ian. 1972. “Geochronology of the Panguna Porphyry Copper Deposit, Bougainville Island, New Guinea.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 67, Issue 8, Pages 1065-1074. Descriptors: absolute age; age; andesites; Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; copper ores; dates; diorites; geochronology; granites; granodiorites; igneous rocks; intrusions; K Ar; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; metal ores; mineralization; New Guinea; Oceania; ore deposits; Panguna; Papua; Papua New Guinea; plutonic rocks; porphyry; quartz diorites; Solomon Islands; subvolcanics; Tertiary; upper Tertiary; volcanic rocks; Geochronology. Abstract: K/Ar, intrusives, subvolcanics, mineralization is 3.4 m.y., earliest intrusion four to five m.y. old, some intrusions are 3.5 and 1.6 m.y. old. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Paik, Y.H. 1987. “Influence of Stagnation of Water Pathways on Mosquito Population Density in Connection with Malaria Transmission in the Solomon Islands.” Descriptors: Water management effects; Stagnant water; Public health; Mosquitoes; Malaria; Human diseases; Aquatic insects; Water management; Solomon Islands; DDT; Guadalcanal; Flow discharge; River mouth; Ecological effects; Insecticides. Notes: The Japanese Journal of Experimental Medicine JJEMAG Vol. 57, No. 1, p 47-52, February 1987. 4 fig, 1 tab, 4 ref. Ecological-impact-of-water-development. Abstract: Malaria is the major health problem in the Solomon Islands. The area of Guadalcanal plains is known as the most malarious area of the Solomons. In spite of well executed DDT indoor spraying, malaria transmission was not interrupted. The causative factors responsible for the persisting transmission appeared to be: (1) refractoriness of Anopheles farauti to DDT spraying; (2) the habit of people to stay outside late in the evening; and (3) a marked outdoor biting tendency of A. farauti. It was found that DDT indoor spraying alone had little impact on the interruption of malarial transmission. The study was conducted in 1974 to observe the change of mosquito population density in relation to the constriction of the river mouth in north Guadalcanal in order to consider alternative means for malaria control. The results indicate that the improvement of the malaria situation in north Guadalcanal could be associated with the steady flow of the river water obtained by maintaining the river mouth in the open condition. ISSN: 0021-5031.

Pain, Stephanie. 2006. “Histories: Carteret's South Sea trouble.” Issue #2538 of New Scientist magazine, 11 February 2006, page 52. Abstract: Philip Carteret was astonished. The young British officer couldn't believe he was being asked to sail a “miserable tool” like HMS Swallow around the world. The ship was slow and hard to handle. It was badly equipped. It leaked. He was short of officers, short of crew and didn't have enough space to stow the supplies needed
for a long voyage. But Carteret was an ambitious man and he had his orders. And if the Swallow
didn't sink and they didn't all starve or die from scurvy, the voyage would make his name - or so he
thought. So for three years he nursed his ship through wild weather and treacherous waters in
search of new lands in the South Seas. Carteret failed to find a new continent - the hoped-for place
of consequence - but he pulled off an extraordinary feat of seamanship. Despite great hardships and
constant danger of shipwreck he did discover new places, rediscovered the legendary Solomon
Islands, and much to everyone's surprise sailed the Swallow safely home. The Swallow's
adventures - or misadventures - began in the summer of 1766. In May, Carteret had returned from a
two-year round-the-world voyage as lieutenant aboard HMS Dolphin. Within weeks, he was given
command of the Swallow and told to get it ready to sail as consort to the Dolphin on a new and
urgent mission under the command of Captain Samuel Wallis… As the more experienced man,
Carteret was to pilot the ships through the treacherous Strait of Magellan into the Pacific. Swallow
was so slow it took four months, and when the ships finally reached the ocean, Wallis sped off and
disappeared over the horizon. He left no word of his intended route. Convinced the Swallow had
been abandoned, Carteret decided to go on alone. First he headed north to find food and water in
the Juan Fernandez islands off Chile - only to discover the Spanish installed there. With orders to
explore the southern parts of the Pacific, he turned west across the ocean, tracking farther south
than any before him. Wallis, sailing well to the north of him, discovered Tahiti. The Dolphin's crew
thought they had found paradise and Wallis thought he had done his duty. He stayed six weeks and
then headed for England. While Wallis was enjoying the delights of Tahiti, Carteret made his first
discovery. On 2 July, Midshipman Pitcairn spotted a massive volcanic island rising out of the
ocean. Unlike lush, welcoming Tahiti, Pitcairn Island was "scarce better than a large rock". It was
remote, uninventing and uninhabited, and it was impossible to land because the surf "broke upon it
with great violence". Pitcairn was then of little consequence. But 30 years later, Fletcher Christian
and his band of mutineers from HMS Bounty needed a hiding place. In the Bounty's library,
Christian read an account of Carteret's discovery and reckoned Pitcairn would suit. It turned out to
be better even than he imagined, for without a chronometer to calculate longitude, Carteret had
marked the island wrongly on the map. The mutineers escaped notice for 19 years. On 11 July,
Carteret discovered three unknown atolls in the Tuamoto archipelago. He was now hoping to find
the Solomon Islands, discovered by Spanish navigator Alvaro Mendaña in 1568 but which no other
European had seen since. Mendaña claimed the islands were the source of King Solomon's
legendary gold - which made all Europe keen to find them. By now, though, conditions aboard the
Swallow were grim: most of the crew had scurvy and provisions were running out. Carteret's
priority was to find fresh food and water, and so instead of pressing on southward he continued
west. On 12 August, with his men sick and his ship leaking, Carteret finally found a group of
islands he named Queen Charlotte Islands. He made for the largest, which he called Egmont
Island… On 20 August he found three new islands. He named them, marked them on his map and
charged on, his explorer's curiosity all but extinguished by worry. Four days later, he spotted a ring
of small coral islands. Carteret reckoned there were nine (there were six) and called them the
Carteret Islands. What he failed to recognise was that all the islands he had seen that week were
northern outliers of Mendaña's fabled archipelago. He had made a great discovery - but didn't know
it. The journey home was as difficult as the outward voyage. Carteret eventually found enough
food and water to last until the Swallow reached the nearest friendly port - the Dutch settlement at
Macassar in what is now Sulawesi. The Dutch, who were bound by a treaty of friendship to aid
stricken British ships, initially refused to help him, an act that soured relations between the two
countries for years. Eventually, and grudgingly, the Dutch capitulated and the Swallow went home,
arriving in March 1769. So why does no one remember Carteret? His discoveries were significant, and he charted routes that were later followed by British ships making the voyage to China and Australia. Misfortune had dogged him all the way, yet he had triumphed. But there was one misfortune he couldn't overcome. While he was still in the South Seas, a new expedition set out led by Captain James Cook. Cook's achievements so eclipsed those of his predecessors, he became the nation's hero. Carteret was laid off on half pay. Two centuries on, Carteret's name is in the news, not in belated recognition of his heroism but because the six low-lying islands that bear his name are about to disappear, victims of rising sea levels. One island has already been cut in half and seawater floods have made the soils useless for growing crops. Over the next two years, the 1500 islanders will all pack up and leave. Within a decade the islands will be under water and Carteret's name will be forgotten again.

Panagiotopoulos, D. G. 1995. “Long-Term Earthquake Prediction Along the Seismic Zone of the Solomon Islands and New Hebrides Based on the Time- and Magnitude-Predictable Model.” Nat. Hazards. Kluwer Academic Publishers: Dordrecht, Netherlands. Volume 11, Issue 1, Pages 17-43. Descriptors: earthquake prediction; earthquakes; geologic hazards; magnitude; main shocks; Melanesia; models; Oceania; probability; recurrence interval; seismicity; Solomon Islands; statistical analysis; Vanuatu; Seismology. ISSN: 0921-030X.

Parker, F. 1970. “Notes on a Large Cave in the Keriaka Limestone, Bougainville Island, Solomon Islands.” Helictite. Speleological Research Council Limited: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 8, Issue 3, Pages 63-67. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; caves; description; geomorphology; Keriaka Limestone; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; solution features; Geomorphology. ISSN: 0017-9973.

Parkinson, Ian J, Arculus, R J and Duncan, R. A. 1996. “Geochemistry of Ontong Java Plateau Basalt and Gabbro Sequences, Santa Isabel, Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 77, Issue 46, Suppl., Pages 715. Descriptors: absolute age; alkaline earth metals; basalts; chemostratigraphy; Cretaceous; crust; data processing; dates; gabbros; geochemistry; igneous rocks; intrusions; isotope ratios; isotopes; lava; Melanesia; MELTS; Mesozoic; metals; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; pillow lava; plateaus; plutonic rocks; rare earths; Santa Isabel; sills; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; thermodynamic properties; troctolite; Upper Cretaceous; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; 02D Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: American Geophysical Union 1996 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 15-19, 1996. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Parkinson, Ian J, Arculus, Richard J, McPherson, E and Duncan, R. A. 1995. “Geochemistry, Tectonics and the Peridotites of the Northeastern Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 76, Issue 46, Suppl., Pages 642. Descriptors: absolute age; Ar Ar; basalts; Cenozoic; Cretaceous; dates; faults; geochemistry; igneous rocks; lava; mantle; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Oceania; Oligocene; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; pillow lava; plate tectonics; plutonic rocks; Santa Isabel; Solomon Islands; subduction; Tertiary; ultramafics; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments; Geochronology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: American Geophysical Union, 1995 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 11-15, 1995. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Spinel peridotites from a variety of island arcs have been utilised to calculate the redox state of the mantle wedge above subduction zones. Oxygen fugacities ($f(O_2)$) values calculated from the ferric iron content of spinels, measured by Electron Microprobe (EMP) using secondary standards [Wood, B. J., Virgo, D., 1989. Upper mantle oxidation state: ferric iron contents of lherzolite spinels by ($^{57}$Fe Mossbauer spectroscopy and resultant oxygen fugacities. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta, 53, 1277-1291.], yield values which range from 0.3 to 2.0 above the fayalite-magnetite-quartz (FMQ) buffer. These data provide further evidence that the mantle wedge is ubiquitously oxidised relative to oceanic and ancient cratonic mantle. There is no correlation between $f(O_2)$ values and the presence of hydrous phases and, in fact, the most oxidised samples contain no hydrous phases. Within individual suites there is no correlation between $f(O_2)$ and degree of depletion as indicated by spinel Cr except for a suite of reacted forearc-peridotites. However, when the data is viewed as a whole there is broad a positive correlation between $f(O_2)$ and spinel Cr suggesting that partial melting processes may influence the redox state of the mantle wedge. We suggest that the ultimate source of the oxygen which oxidises the mantle wedge is from the subducted slab. It is not clear whether this oxidising agent is a solute-rich hydrous fluid or a water-bearing silicate melt. However, our data does indicate that silicate melts are effective oxidisers of the depleted shallow upper mantle. Simple mass balance calculations based on the ferric iron content of primitive subduction zone magsm indicates that the source region must contain 0.6-1.0 wt.% Fe$_2$O$_3$. This amount of Fe$_2$O$_3$ in a fertile spinel peridotite yields an oxygen fugacity of 0.5-1.7 log units above FMQ in the IAB source. If water is the sole oxidising agent in the mantle wedge then 0.030-0.075 wt.% H$_2$O is required which is considerably less than the 0.25% H$_2$O envisaged by Stolper and Newman [Stolper, E. M., Newman, S., 1994. The role of water in the petrogenesis of Mariana trough magmas. Earth Planet. Sci. Lett., 121, 293-325.], suggesting water is not necessarily an efficient oxidising agent. Alternatively, ferric iron may be added to the mantle wedge by addition of a ferric iron-rich sediment melt or more likely as a solute-rich hydrous fluid. This model would produce spinel, orthopyroxene or amphibole in the wedge with only a slight increase in $f(O_2)$ of the source region. Although it is unclear which model is correct the maximum $f(O_2)$ of the fertile mantle wedge is unlikely to be above FMQ+2 and therefore some decompression melting in the mantle wedge is required to explain the higher $f(O_2)$ values of primitive arc lavas than arc-peridotites. ISSN: 0009-2541.

Parkinson, L J, Arculus, R. J. and McPherson, E. 1993. “Geochemistry of Ultramafic and Mafic Rocks, Santa Isabel, Eastern Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 74, Issue 43, Suppl., Pages 633. Descriptors: accretion; basalts; basins; fore arc basins; genesis; geochemistry; igneous rocks; Kolomola Ultramafics; Koloso' era Gabbrro; lava; Melanesia; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; pillow lava; plate tectonics; plutonic rocks; Santa Isabel; Sigana Volcanics; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; ultramafics; volcanic rocks; West

Parrot, J. F. and Dugas F. 1980. “The Disrupted Ophiolitic Belt of the Southwest Pacific; Evidence of an Eocene Subduction Zone.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 66, Issue 4, Pages 349-372. Descriptors: amphibolites; Australasia; bibliography; blueschist; Cenozoic; crust; environment; Eocene; genesis; greenschist; igneous rocks; Melanesia; metamorphic rocks; metamorphism; New Caledonia; Oceania; ophiolite; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; plutonic rocks; protoliths; schists; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction zones; tectonophysics; Tertiary; ultramafics; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Parunin, O B, Timashkova, T A, Khait, V Z and Shlyukov, A. I. 1980. “Spisok Radiouglerodnykh Datirovok Laboratorii Noveyshikh Otlozheniy Geograficheskogo Fakul’Teta MGU (Indeks MGU); Soobshcheniya IX Translated Title: A List of Radiocarbon Datings from the Laboratory of Recent Sediments, Geography Department, Moscow State Univ., (Tag MGU); Communication IX.” Byulleten’ Komissiy Po Izucheniyu Chetvertichnogo Perioda. Nauka: Moscow, USSR. Volume 50, Pages 196-202. Descriptors: absolute age; Anthozoa; Asia; Australasia; Bryansk Russian Federation; Bryansk Russian Republic; C 14; calcarenite; carbon; carbonate concretions; carbonate rocks; Cenozoic; Central Asia; charcoal; clastic sediments; Coelenterata; Commonwealth of Independent States; dates; Europe; geochronology; Holocene; Invertebrata; isotopes; Kaluga; Kazakhstan; limestone; Louisiade Archipelago; Melanesia; Nive Island; Norfolk Island; Oceania; ooze; organic compounds; organic materials; organic residues; Pacific Ocean; Paleosols; Papua New Guinea; peat; Pleistocene; Primorye Russian Federation; Primorye Russian Republic; Quaternary; radioactive isotopes; reefs; Russian Federation; Russian Republic; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; sedimentary rocks; sediments; shells; Siberia; Solomon Islands; travertine; USSR; Voronezh Russian Federation; Voronezh Russian Republic; West Pacific Ocean Islands; wood; Quaternary geology; Geochronology. ISSN: 0366-0907.

Pascal, G. 1979. “Seismotectonics of the Papua New Guinea-Solomon Islands Region.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 57, Issue 1, Pages 7-34. Descriptors: 1964 1973; Australasia; collision; earthquakes; focus; Indian Plate; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Plate; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; seismicity; seismology; seismotectonics; Solomon Islands; subduction; tectonics; tectonophysics; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: Processes at subduction zones; Symposium J2, IASPEI/IAVCEI joint general assembly. Durham, United Kingdom. Aug. 10, 1977. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Pascal, G. 1976. “Sismicite Et Tectonique De La Region Nouvelle-Guinee, Papouasie Et Iles Salomon Translated Title: Seismicity and Tectonics in the New Guinea, Papuasia and Solomon Islands Region.” Societe Geologique de France: Paris, France. Pages 321. Descriptors: Australasia; distribution; earthquakes; interpretation; Melanesia; models; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; plate convergence; plate tectonics; plates; seismicity; seismology; Solomon Islands; stratigraphic boundary; structure; subduction zones; Seismology. ISSN: 0249-7557.

Plant diseases; Colocasia Esculenta; Plant Breeding; Disease Resistance; Phytophthora; Trial Methods; Yields; Solomon Islands. FAO Library.

Patel, M.Z. Saelea, J. Jackson, G.V.H. 1981. Breeding strategies for controlling diseases of taro in Solomon Islands. (Honiara) (Solomon Islands): AGO;AGP. 11 p. Descriptors: Taro; Plant Diseases; Phytophthora; Nematoda; Viroses; Disease Control; Plant Breeding; Parasitoses; Colocasia; Solomon Islands. FAO Library.


Perfit, M. R. 1986. “Alkalic Volcanism in Island Arcs in the Southwest Pacific.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 67, Issue 44, Pages 1277. Descriptors: alkali basalts; alkaline earth metals; Australasia; basalts; Bougainville Island; chemical composition; Fiji; igneous rocks; island arcs; isotopes; lead; Melanesia; metals; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; New Georgia Basin; New Iceland Basin; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Pb 206 Pb 204; Pb 207 Pb 204; petrology; radioactive isotopes; rare earths; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; Vanuatu; volcanic rocks; volcanism; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Isotope geochemistry. Conference: AGU 1986 fall meeting and ASLO winter meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 8-12, 1986. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Perrier, Guy. 197?. “Zones De Convergence Et Lithosphere Continentale. Translated Title: Zones of Convergence and Continental Lithosphere.” France: Comm. Natl. Fr. Geod. et Geophys.. Paris, France. 197?. Descriptors: Afghanistan; African Plate; Alboran Sea; Alps; Asia; Australasia; Banda Sea; Central Asia; continental crust; crust; elastic waves; Eurasian Plate; Europe; faults; Fiji; France; geophysical surveys; heat flow; Himalayas; Hindu Kush; Indian Peninsula; Indian Plate; indicators; Indonesian Seas; interpretation; Malay Archipelago; mantle; Mediterranean Sea; Melanesia; New Britain; New Guinea; observations; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pamirs; Papua New Guinea; plate convergence; plate tectonics; Polynesia; properties; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction zones; surveys; tectonophysics; Tonga; upper mantle; Vanuatu; West Mediterranean; West Pacific; Western Europe; Solid earth geophysics. Pages 94-96. 197?.

Person, W. J. 1978. “Earthquakes; July-August 1977.” Earthquake Information Bulletin. U. S. Geological Survey: Reston, VA, United States. Volume 10, Issue 1, Pages 26-27. Descriptors: 1977; Asia; Australasia; Australia; catalogs; Colombia; earthquakes; Far East; Indonesia; magnitude; Melanesia; Oceania; Philippine Islands; seismicity; seismology; Solomon Islands; South America; United States; USGS; Victoria Australia; Seismology. ISSN: 0046-0931.

Person, W. J. 1977. “Earthquakes, October-November 1976.” Earthquake Information Bulletin. U. S. Geological Survey: Reston, VA, United States. Volume 9, Issue 2, Pages 34-36. Descriptors: 1976; Asia; Atlantic Ocean; Atlantic Ocean Islands; Bermuda; California; Chile; China; earthquakes; East Pacific Ocean Islands; Ecuador; effects; Far East; global; Hawaii; Iran; Maine; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; Middle East; Nevada; New Guinea; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Philippine Islands; Polynesia; report; seismology; Solomon Islands; South America; Turkey; United States; USGS; Utah; Washington; Seismology. ISSN: 0046-0931.
Natural History of Guadalcanal

Person, Waverly J. 2000. “Seismological Notes; September-December 1998.” Seismol. Res. Lett. Seismological Society of America: El Cerrito, CA, United States. Volume 71, Issue 1, Pages 132-139. Descriptors: Afghanistan; Alaska; Albania; Aleutian Islands; Argentina; Asia; Atlantic Ocean; Australasia; Balkan region; Banda Sea; body waves; Celebes; Central America; Ceram Sea; Chile; China; distribution; earthquakes; East Pacific; East Pacific Rise; elastic waves; epicenters; Europe; Far East; Fiji; focus; Honshu; Indian Peninsula; Indonesia; Indonesian Seas; Iran; Italy; Japan; Kyushu; Mariana Islands; Melanesia; Micronesia; Mid Atlantic Ridge; Middle East; Molucca Sea; Nicaragua; Oceania; P waves; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Peru; Philippine Islands; Polynesia; Ryukyu Islands; Savu Sea; seismic waves; seismicity; Sichuan China; Solomon Islands; South America; South Pacific; Southern Europe; Southwest Pacific; Southwestern Alaska; Taiwan; Tonga; Turkey; United States; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Seismology. ISSN: 0895-0695.

Person, Waverly J. 2000. “Seismological Notes; November-December 1999.” Seismol. Res. Lett. Seismological Society of America: El Cerrito, CA, United States. Volume 71, Issue 6, Pages 753-760. Descriptors: Africa; Alaska; Algeria; Asia; Atlantic Ocean; Bolivia; Caribbean Sea; catalogs; Central America; Chile; Commonwealth of Independent States; distribution; earthquakes; epicenters; Far East; global; Iran; Kodiak Island; Luzon; Macquarie Island; Mariana Islands; Melanesia; Mexico; Micronesia; Middle East; Molucca Sea; North Africa; North Atlantic; Oceania; Panama; Philippine Islands; Polynesia; Santa Cruz Island; seismicity; Solomon Islands; South America; Southwestern Alaska; Tajikistan; Tonga; United States; Vanuatu; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Seismology. ISSN: 0895-0695.


Petterson, M G, Babbs, T, Neal, C R, et al. 1999. “Geological-Tectonic Framework of Solomon Islands, SW Pacific; Crustal Accretion and Growth within an Intra-Oceanic Setting.” Tectonophysics. Volume 301, Issue 1-2, Pages 35-60. Descriptors: accretion; basalts; basement; block structures; Cenozoic; classification; Cretaceous; crust; definition; faults; geochemistry; Guadalcanal; igneous rocks; island arcs; Malaita; mantle; mantle plumes; Melanesia; Mesozoic; mid ocean ridge basalts; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; plateaus; Solomon Islands; systems; tectonic elements; terrains; terranes; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Abstract: The Solomon Islands are a complex collage of crustal units or terrains (herein termed the “Solomon block”) which have formed and accreted within an intra-oceanic environment since Cretaceous times. Predominantly Cretaceous basaltic basement sequences are divided into: (1) a plume-related Ontong Java Plateau terrain (OJPT) which includes Malaita, Ulawa, and northern Santa Isabel; (2) a “normal” ocean ridge related South Solomon MORB terrain (SSMT) which includes Choiseul and Guadalcanal; and (3) a hybrid
“Makira terrain” which has both MORB and plume/plateau affinities. The OJPT formed as an integral part of the massive Ontong Java Plateau (OJP), at c. 122 Ma and 90 Ma, respectively, was subsequently affected by Eocene-Oligocene alkaline and alnoitic magmatism, and was unaffected by subsequent arc development. The SSMT initially formed within a “normal” ocean ridge environment which produced a MORB-like basaltic basement through which two stages of arc crustal growth subsequently developed from the Eocene onwards. The Makira terrain records the intermingling of basalts with plume/plateau and MORB affinities from c. 90 Ma to c. 30 Ma, and a contribution from Late Miocene-present-day arc growth. Two distinct stages of arc growth occurred within the Solomon block from the Eocene to the Early Miocene (stage 1) and from the Late Miocene to the present day (stage 2). Stage 1 arc growth created the basement of the central part of the Solomon block (the Central Solomon terrain, CST), which includes the Shortland, Florida and south Isabel islands. Stage 2 arc growth led to crustal growth in the west and south (the New Georgia terrain or NGT) which includes Savo, and the New Georgia and Russell islands. Both stages of arc growth also added new material to pre-existing crustal units within other terrains. The Solomon block terrane collage records the collision between the Alaska sized OJP and the Solomon arc. Initial contact possibly first occurred some 25-20 Ma but it is only since around 4 Ma that the OJP has more forcefully collided with the Solomon arc, and has been actively accreting since that time, continuing to the present day. We present a number of tectonic models in an attempt to understand the mechanism of plateau accretion. One model depicts the OJP as splitting in two with the upper 4-10 km forming an imbricate stack verging to the northeast, over which the Solomon arc is overthrust, whilst deeper portions of the OJP (beneath a critical detachment surface) are subducted. The subduction of young (<5 Ma), hot, oceanic lithosphere belonging to the Woodlark basin at the SSTS has resulted in a sequence of tectonic phenomena including: the production of unusual magma compositions (e.g. Na-Ti-rich basalts, and an abundance of picrites); an anomalously small arc-trench gap between the SSTS and the Quaternary-Recent arc front; calc-alkaline arc growth within the down going Woodlark basin as a consequence of calc-alkaline magma transfer along leaky NE-SW-trending faults; rapid fore-arc uplift; and rapid infilling of intra-arc basins. The present-day highly oblique collision between the Pacific and Australian plates has resulted in the formation of rhombohedral intra- and back-arc basins. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Petterson, MG, Cronin, SJ, Taylor, PW, et al. 2003. “The Eruptive History and Volcanic Hazards of Savo, Solomon Islands.” Bulletin of Volcanology. Springer International [for the] International Association of Volcanology and Chemistry of the Earth's Interior (IAVCEI): Heidelberg, International. Volume 65, Issue 2-3, Pages 165-181. Descriptors: andesites; boulders; clastic sediments; dacites; domes; eruptions; geologic hazards; igneous rocks; lahars; lava; mass movements; Melanesia; Oceania; Savo; sediments; Solomon Islands; stratovolcanoes; volcanic ash; volcanic risk; volcanic rocks; volcanoes; Quaternary geology. ISSN: 0258-8900.

Petterson, M G, Neal, C R, Mahoney, J J, et al. 1997. “Structure and Deformation of North and Central Malaita, Solomon Islands; Tectonic Implications for the Ontong Java Plateau-Solomon Arc Collision, and for the Fate of Oceanic Plateaus.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amersdam, Netherlands. Volume 283, Issue 1-4, Pages 1-33. Descriptors: anticlinoria; Cenozoic; crust; deformation; folds; island arcs; lithostratigraphy; Malaita; Melanesia; obduction; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate collision; plate tectonics; plateaus; sedimentation; Solomon Islands; structural analysis; subduction; tectonics; volcanism; West Pacific; Structural geology. Abstract: The island of Malaita, Solomon Islands, represents the obducted southern
margin of the Ontong Java Plateau (OJP). The basement of Malaita formed during the first and possibly largest plateau-building magmatic event at approximately 122+ or -3 Ma. It subsequently drifted passively northwards amassing a 1-2 km thickness of pelagic sediment overburden. A major change in OJP tectonics occurred during the Eocene, possibly initiated by the OJP passing over the Samoan or Raratongan hotspot. Extension facilitated increased sedimentation and basin formation (e.g., the Faufaumela basin) and provided readily available deep-crustal pathways for alkali basalt and subsequent Oligocene alnoite magmas, with related hydrothermal activity producing limited Ag+Pb mineralisation. Eocene to Mid-Miocene sediments record the input of arc-derived turbiditic volcaniclastic sediment indicating the relative closeness of the OJP to the Solomon arc. The initial collision of the OJP and Solomon arc at 25-20 Ma was of a “soft docking” variety and did not result in major compressive deformation on Malaita. South-directed subduction of the Pacific Plate briefly ceased at this time but resumed intermittently on a local scale from approximately 15 Ma. Subduction of the Australian Plate beneath the Solomon arc commenced at approximately 8-7 Ma. Increased coupling between the Solomon arc and the OJP led to the gradual emergence of the OJP at 6-5 through to 4 Ma. The most intense period of compressive to transpressive deformation recorded on Malaita is stratigraphically bracketed at between 4 and 2 Ma, resulting in estimated crustal shortening of between 24 and 46%, and the inclusion of between 1 and 4 km of basement OJP basalts within the larger anticlines. Basement and cover sequences are deformed together in a coherent geometry and there are no major decollement surfaces; the large asymmetrical fold structures of Malaita are likely to be the tip regions of blind thrusts with detachment surfaces between 1 and 4 km beneath the cover sequence. Mid-Pliocene deformation records the detachment of the upper parts of the OJP, with initial material movement direction towards the northeast and later obduction of an upper allochthonous block of the OJP southwestwards over the Solomon arc. A model is presented whereby an upper 5-10-km-thick flake of the OJP is obducted over the Solomon arc to form the Malaita anticlinorium, whilst deeper levels are presently being subducted. The important implication is that even very large and thick oceanic plateaus may not survive subduction completely intact. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Petterson, M G, Neal, C R, Saunders, A D, Babbs, T L, Mahoney, J J and Duncan, R. A. 1995. “Speculations regarding the Evolution of the Ontong Java Plateau.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 76, Issue 46, Suppl., Pages 693. Descriptors: absolute age; Ar Ar; basalts; Cenozoic; crust; dates; geochemistry; igneous rocks; lithogeochemistry; mantle plumes; Melanesia; mid ocean ridge basalts; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plateaus; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; Tertiary; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Geochronology. Conference: American Geophysical Union, 1995 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 11-15, 1995. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Petterson, Michael G. 2004. “The Geology of North and Central Malaita, Solomon Islands; the Thickest and most Accessible Part of the World’s Largest (Ontong Java) Ocean Plateau.” Geological Society Special Publications. Geological Society of London: London, United Kingdom. Volume 229, Pages 63-81. Descriptors: Alite Limestone Formation; Cenozoic; Eocene; Foraminifera; gabbros; Haruta Limestone Formation; igneous rocks; intrusions; Invertebrata; Kwaraae Mudstone Formation; lithofacies; Malaita; Malaita Volcanic Group; Maramasike Volcanic Formation; Melanesia; microfossils; Neogene; Oceania; Oligocene; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; Pliocene; plutonic rocks; Protista; sequence stratigraphy; Solomon Islands; Suafa Limestone Formation; Tertiary; unconformities; West Pacific; Stratigraphy.
Natural History of Guadalcanal

Abstract: This paper presents the most complete results yet published of geological surveys in Malaita, north of latitude 9 degrees 05'S between 1990 and 1995. The geology of Malaita reflects its position as an obducted part of the Alaska-size Ontong Java Plateau (OJP). The geology comprises a monolithological Cretaceous basalt basement sequence up to 3-4 km thick, termed the Malaita Volcanic Group (MVG), conformably overlain by a 1-2 km-thick Cretaceous-Pliocene pelagic sedimentary cover sequence. Cretaceous-Pliocene pelagic sedimentation was punctuated by alkaline basalt volcanism during the Eocene and by intrusion of alnoites during the Oligocene. Basement and cover sequences were both deformed by an intense, but short, middle Pliocene event. A number of localized, Upper Pliocene-Pleistocene, shallow-marine-subaerial, predominantly clastic formations overlie the middle Pliocene unconformity surface. The MVG comprises a monotonous sequence of pillowed and non-pillowed tholeiitic basalt lavas and sills with a predominant clinopyroxene-plagioclase-glass-opaques+ or -olivine mineralogy. The basaltic plateau morphology of the MVG is reflected in the presence of trap-like topographic features exposed in numerous river sections. Remarkably little sediment is present between basalt flows (most inter-lava contacts are basalt-basalt), indicating high to very high effusion rates. When present, inter-lava sediment is laminated pelagic chert or limestone, millimetres to centimetres thick, reflecting emplacement of the basalt in deep water (near or below the calcite compensation depth). Gabbro intrusions, dolerite dykes and an unusual spherulitic dolerite facies are locally present. The deep-water eruptive environment of the MVG probably was defined by the accumulation of voluminous eruptions from a multi-centred, submarine, possibly fissure-fed, volcanic source. The Malaitan cover sequence largely comprises a series of foraminifera-rich, pelagic calcilutites and calcisiltites with chert and, in the younger formations, arc-derived mudstone interbeds at various stratigraphic levels.

Peyve A V, Knipper A L, Markov M S and Bogdanov, N. A. 1971. “The Basalt Crustal Layer in the Western Pacific.” Transactions (Doklady) of the U.S.S.R. Academy of Sciences: Earth Science Sections. Scripta Publishing: Silver Spring, MD, United States. Volume 201, Issue 1-6, Pages 144-146. Descriptors: 1972; Asia; basalts; Commonwealth of Independent States; crust; igneous rocks; island arcs; Kamchatka Peninsula; Malay Archipelago; Mariana; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; petrology; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Solomon Islands; USSR; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0305-8719.

Phillips, David A. 2003. Crustal Motion Studies in the Southwest Pacific; Geodetic Measurements of Plate Convergence in Tonga, Vanuatu and the Solomon Islands. Honolulu, HI, United States: University of Hawaii. page(s): 135. Descriptors: Australian Plate; East Pacific; Fiji Plateau; geodesy; Global Positioning System; Melanesia; movement; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; plate convergence; plate tectonics; Polynesia; San Cristobal Trench; Simbo Island; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; Southwest Pacific; strain; Tonga; Tonga Trench; Vanuatu; velocity; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. GeoRef Accession Number: 2005-002859.

detected. In 1997, we established a continuous GPS (CGPS) site on Guadalcanal and five rover GPS sites in the New Georgia Group. The Guadalcanal site was short-lived due to vandalism so we established a new CGPS site in the New Georgia Group in 1999. The original rover sites were re-occupied in 1999 and 2001. We have analyzed this four-year time series using GAMIT/GLOBK software. Our measurements show convergence with the Australian Plate as well as motion between the Solomon Arc and the Pacific Plate. Possible intra-arc deformation is also observed. Regional tectonic interpretations based upon our GPS measurements and other data will be discussed.


Phinney, Eric J, Mann, Paul, Coffin, Millard F and Shipley, Thomas H. 2004. “Sequence Stratigraphy, Structural Style, and Age of Deformation of the Malaita Accretionary Prism; Solomon Arc-Ontong Java Plateau Convergent Zone.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 389, Issue 3-4, Pages 221-246. Descriptors: accretionary wedges; Alite Formation; Barremian; Cenozoic; Cretaceous; crust; data acquisition; data processing; deformation; Devonian; fault zones; faults; free air anomalies; geophysical methods; gravity field; gravity methods; Haruta Formation; igneous rocks; island arcs; Kia Kaipito Korigole fault zone; Kwaraae Formation; Lewis thrust fault; lithostratigraphy; Lower Cretaceous; Malaita; Malaita Group; Marmasike Formation; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Middle Devonian; Neogene; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Paleozoic; plate collision; plate convergence; plate tectonics; Pleistocene; Quaternary; remote sensing; Saint Laurent Limestone; satellite methods; sedimentary rocks; sediments; seismic stratigraphy; sequence stratigraphy; Solomon Islands; Suafa Formation; subduction zones; tectonics; Tertiary; trenches; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Structural geology; Stratigraphy. Abstract: Possibilities for the fate of oceanic plateaus at subduction zones range from complete subduction of the plateau beneath the arc to complete plateau-arc accretion and resulting collisional orogenesis. Deep penetration, multi-channel seismic reflection (MCS) data from the northern flank of the Solomon Islands reveal the sequence stratigraphy, structural style, and age of deformation of an accretionary prism formed during late Neogene (5-0 Ma) convergence between the approximately 33-km-thick crust of the Ontong Java oceanic plateau and the approximately 15-km-thick Solomon island arc. Correlation of MCS data with the satellite-derived, free-air gravity field defines the tectonic boundaries and internal structure of the 800-km-long, 140-km-wide accretionary prism. We name this prism the “Malaita accretionary prism” or “MAP” after Malaita, the largest and best-studied island exposure of the accretionary prism in the Solomon Islands. MCS data, gravity data, and stratigraphic correlations to islands and ODP sites on the Ontong Java Plateau (OJP) reveal that the offshore MAP is composed of folded and thrust faulted sedimentary rocks and upper crystalline crust offscraped from the Solomon the subducting Ontong Java Plateau (Pacific plate) and transferred to the Solomon arc. With the exception of an upper, sequence of Quaternary island-derived terrigenous sediments, the deformed stratigraphy of the MAP is identical to that of the incoming Ontong Java Plateau in the North
Solomon trench. We divide the MAP into four distinct, folded and thrust fault-bounded structural domains interpreted to have formed by diachronous, southeast-to-northwest, and highly oblique entry of the Ontong Java Plateau into a former trench now marked by the Kia-Kaipito-Korigole (KKK) left-lateral strike-slip fault zone along the suture between the Solomon arc and the MAP. The structural style within each of the four structural domains consists of a parallel series of three to four fault propagation folds formed by the seaward propagation of thrust faults roughly parallel to sub-horizontal layering in the upper crystalline part of the OJP. Thrust fault offsets, spacing between thrusts, and the amplitude of related fault propagation folds progressively decrease to the west in the youngest zone of active MAP accretion (Choiseul structural domain). Surficial faulting and folding in the most recently deformed, northwestern domain show active accretion of greater than 1 km of sedimentary rock and 6 km, or about 20%, of the upper crystalline part of the OJP. The eastern MAP (Malaita and Ulawa domains) underwent an earlier, similar style of partial plateau accretion. A pre-late Pliocene age of accretion (approximately 3.4 Ma) is constrained by an onshore and offshore major angular unconformity separating Pliocene reefal limestone and conglomerate from folded and faulted pelagic limestone of Cretaceous to Miocene age. The lower 80% of the Ontong Java Plateau crust beneath the MAP thrust decollement appears unfaulted and unfolded and is continuous with a southward-dipping subducted slab of presumably denser plateau material beneath most of the MAP, and is traceable to depths >200 km in the mantle beneath the Solomon Islands. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Phinney, Eric J, Mann, Paul, Coffin, Millard F and Shipley, Thomas H. 1999. “Sequence Stratigraphy, Structure, and Tectonic History of the Southwestern Ontong Java Plateau Adjacent to the North Solomon Trench and Solomon Islands Arc.” Journal of Geophysical Research, B, Solid Earth and Planets. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 104, Issue 9, Pages 20,449-20,466. Descriptors: faults; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; island arcs; Melanesia; ocean floors; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; reconstruction; seismic profiles; sequence stratigraphy; Solomon Islands; subduction; surveys; tectonics; trenches; velocity structure; West Pacific; Stratigraphy; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0885-3401.

Phinney, Eric James. 1997. Sequence Stratigraphy, Structure, and Tectonics of the Southern Ontong Java Plateau and Malaita Accretionary Prism, Solomon Islands. Austin, TX, United States: University of Texas, Austin. page(s): 128. Descriptors: accretionary wedges; Cenozoic; Cretaceous; crust; deformation; faults; geophysical methods; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; gravity methods; lithostratigraphy; Malaita; Melanesia; Mesozoic; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; seismic methods; seismic profiles; seismic stratigraphy; Solomon Islands; subduction; surveys; tectonics; thrust faults; trenches; West Pacific; Stratigraphy; Structural geology; Applied geophysics. Abstract: The Ontong Java Plateau is the largest and thickest oceanic plateau on Earth and one of the few oceanic plateaus actively converging on an island arc. Previous tectonic and geochemical models for the formation of the Ontong Java Plateau and its overlying sedimentary cover are handicapped by a lack of high quality geophysical observations of the structure and stratigraphy of the plateau and a paucity of well information. In this thesis, I present new seismic velocity determinations and geologic interpretation of 2000 km of 2-D multichannel seismic data collected across the southwestern Ontong Java Plateau, North Solomon Trench, and northern Solomon Islands. Three seismic megasequences inferred to range in age from early Cretaceous to Quaternary are recognized on the basis of distinct interval velocities and seismic stratigraphic facies. I show that a
high-amplitude reflector, previously identified as the top of igneous basement, is related to a late Cretaceous unconformity between two sedimentary megasequences which together define a much thicker sedimentary section on the plateau than previously recognized. I integrate seismic facies analysis, sediment thickness, and structural relationships to interpret the three megasequences into a dynamic plate tectonic framework which includes two periods of mantle plume activity at 122 Ma and 92 Ma, a period of gentle folding and uplift associated with the 92 Ma mantle plume event, middle to late Miocene faulting possibly related to arrival of the plateau at the North Solomon Trench, and recent normal faulting related to flexure and southwest-directed subduction of the plateau at the North Solomon Trench. Previous workers have proposed several possibilities for the fate of oceanic plateaus at subduction zones ranging from complete subduction to complete accretion. I present multichannel seismic data from the Ontong Java Plateau/Solomon Islands convergent zone showing active accretion of a 7 km section of the sedimentary cover and igneous crust of the oceanic plateau. Correlation of the seismic data with satellite-derived free-air gravity data confirms the presence of a 900-km-long, 140-km-wide fold-thrust belt, named here the Malaita Accretionary Prism, composed of accreted sediments and upper crust from the plateau. I divide the Malaita Accretionary Prism into four structural domains interpreted to have formed by diachronous, southeast-to-northwest progression of the active deformation front along the North Solomon Trench. Uplift and deformation of ponded sediment across the prism and in the North Solomon Trench confirm that plateau accretion is active. Thrust faults dipping southwest from the North Solomon Trench at 10-17 degrees and surficial convergent deformation imaged in the most recent, northwestern domain show that greater than 1 km of sediments and 6 km of upper crust are being actively transferred from the plateau to the Solomon Islands arc. Linear gravity trends and structural patterns indicate that plateau accretion is not simply the result of failed plateau subduction at the North Solomon Trench during the late Miocene as proposed by previous workers. Instead, gravity and seismic data suggest that the middle Pliocene through present accretion of the Malaita Accretionary Prism was activated by shallow subduction of 4-0 m.y. old crust of the Woodlark Basin and bounding bathymetric highs along the southwestern edge of the Solomon arc.

GeoRef Accession Number: 2003-064397.

Pickup, G and Higgins, R. J. 1979. “Estimating Sediment Transport in a Braided Gravel Channel; the Kawerong River, Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” Journal of Hydrology. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 40, Issue 3-4, Pages 283-297. Descriptors: algorithms; Australasia; bedload; Bougainville; braided streams; channel geometry; discharge; geomorphology; hydraulic geometry; hydraulics; hydrogeology; hydrology; Kawerong River; mathematical models; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; processes; rivers and streams; sedimentation; Solomon Islands; stream transport; streams; surveys; theoretical studies; transport; Hydrogeology. ISSN: 0022-1694.

Pickup, G, Higgins, R. J. and Grant I. 1983. “Modelling Sediment Transport as a Moving Wave; the Transfer and Deposition of Mining Waste.” Journal of Hydrology. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 60, Issue 1-4, Pages 281-301. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; hydrology; Kawerong River; mathematical models; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; pollution; rivers and streams; sedimentation; solid waste; Solomon Islands; stream transport; theoretical studies; transport; waste disposal; waterways; Environmental geology. ISSN: 0022-1694.

Pitanoe, Mackay; United Nations; Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific; Honiara ( Solomon Islands) and Census Office. 1987. Country Statement: Solomon Islands. Honiara, Solomon Islands: Census Office. Descriptors: 9, 3; Housing- Guadalcanal Island
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Plimer, I. R. and Neef G. 1980. “Early Miocene Extrusives and Shallow Intrusives from Small Nggela, Solomon Islands.” Geol. Mag. Cambridge University Press: London, United Kingdom. Volume 117, Issue 6, Pages 565-578. Descriptors: absolute age; basalts; Cenozoic; dates; igneous rocks; intrusions; K Ar; lower Miocene; Melanesia; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; petrology; Small Nggela; Solomon Islands; tectonics; Tertiary; tholeiite; volcanic rocks; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0016-7568.


Poreda, R. J. and Craig H. 1986. “PAPATUA Expedition II; (Super 3úHe in Oceanic Basalts and Volcanic Gases.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 67, Issue 44, Pages 1273. Descriptors: Australasia; basalts; East Pacific; geochemistry; glasses; Havre Trough; He 3; helium; igneous rocks; island arcs; isotopes; Kermadec Islands; Lau Basin; Manus Basin; Melanesia; mid ocean ridge basalts; New Britain; noble gases; North Fiji Basin; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Polynesia; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; Southwest Pacific; stable isotopes; Tonga; Vanuatu; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Woodlark Basin; 02D Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: AGU 1986 fall meeting and ASLO winter meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 8-12, 1986. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Pound, K. S. 1986. “Correlation of Rock Units in the Central and Western Solomon Islands.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 4, Pages 89-97. Descriptors: biostratigraphy; Cenozoic; central Solomon Islands; correlation; Foraminifera; Invertebrata; Melanesia; microfossils; Oceania; Protista; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; western Solomon Islands; Stratigraphy.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Quinterno, Paula J. 1989. “Tertiary-Quaternary Microfossils from the Russell Islands.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 12, Pages 275-278. Descriptors: biostratigraphy; Cenozoic; Foraminifera; Invertebrata; Melanesia; microfossils; Oceania; Protista; Quaternary; Russell Islands; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; Stratigraphy; Quaternary geology. USGS Library.

Qureshy, M N, Krishna Brahmam N, Garde S C and Mathur, B. K. 1968. “Gravity Anomalies and the Godavari Rift, India.” Geological Society of America Bulletin. Geological Society of America (GSA): Boulder, CO, United States. Volume 79, Issue 9, Pages 1221-1229. Descriptors: Asia; faults; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Godavari Valley; gravity methods; India; Indian Peninsula; magnetic methods; Melanesia; Oceania; recent upwarping; rift zones; Solomon Islands; surveys; Applied geophysics. Abstract: A Bouguer anomaly map of the Godavari valley region has been prepared by using data of the Survey of India and National Geophysical Research Institute. A gravity 'low' of the order of 50 milligals is associated with the Godavari valley. Its average width is 50 km and its lateral extent, as indicated by gravity and paleogeographic data, may be of the order of 800 km. The valley floor may lie at depths ranging from 3 to 4 km. The gravimetric and geologic data do not indicate extension of the Godavari valley structure into the sea. It is suggested that the Godavari rift developed along a zone of weakness inherited from the Archean orogenies. It appears that after the Eparchean interval, but prior to the deposition of the Cuddapahs, tensional forces must have developed that caused formation of the graben. ISSN: 0016-7606.

Ramsay, W R H, Crawford, A J and Foden, J. D. 1984. “Field Setting, Mineralogy, Chemistry and Genesis of Arc Picrites, New Georgia, Solomon Islands.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 88, Issue 4, Pages 386-402. Descriptors: basalts; genesis; igneous activity; igneous rocks; island arcs; Kolo Caldera; lava; Melanesia; New Georgia; New Georgia Volcanics; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; petrology; picrite; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Seismology. ISSN: 0010-7999.
Hebdomadaires Des Seances De l'Academie Des Sciences, Serie D: Sciences Naturelles. Gauthier-Villars: Paris, France. Volume 281, Issue 9, Pages 489-492. Descriptors: age; ancient; applications; bathymetry; Cenozoic; Eocene genesis; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; island arcs; magnetic methods; maps; marine; Melanesia; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; plate tectonics; reflection; Rennell Island; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; structure; subduction; subduction zones; surveys; tectonophysics; Tertiary; theoretical studies; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0567-655X.

Redvers, Newton N. 1995. “Radiocarbon Dating Human Bone from Numu, Taumako, Solomon Islands; a Comparison of Two Methods of Bone Pretreatment.” Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences Contribution. Institute of Geological & Nuclear Sciences: Lower Hutt, New Zealand. Volume 509, Pages 106-118. Descriptors: absolute age; amino acids; bones; C 14; carbon; fossil man; isotopes; Melanesia; methods; Numu Solomon Islands; Oceania; organic acids; organic compounds; proteins; radioactive isotopes; sample preparation; Solomon Islands; Taumako Island; Geochronology; Vertebrate paleontology. Notes: Reprinted from Archaeology in New Zealand, Vol. 38, No. 2. Abstract: The results of this study indicate that moderately well preserved bone with high levels of contamination require more sophisticated methods of pretreatment than collagen extraction and gelatinisation. Either protein and amino acid purification using the Biorad ion exchange resins, or the simpler amino acid purification method using XAD-2 resin can be used.


Descriptive: absolute age; amphibolites; British; Cenozoic; dates; Eocene; K Ar; Melanesia; metamorphic rocks; Oceania; Paleogene; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; Geochronology. Abstract: In the central province of the Solomons, fossiliferous Miocene sediments overlie a pile of andesitic lavas and older metamorphosed volcanics of the basal complex. The time of this metamorphism was established by K/Ar dating of amphibolites as 44. ISSN: 0028-0836.

Richmond, R. N. 1985. “South Pacific Mineral Potential, Government Policies and Misplaced Advice.” Geosciences in International Development Report. Association of Geoscientists for International Development, c/o Asian Institute of Technology: [location varies], International. Volume 11, Pages 19-20. Descriptors: Australasia; bauxite; copper ores; development; economic geology; Fiji; gold ores; manganese ores; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral resources; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Vanuatu; Economic geology, general, economics. Conference: Geosciences for development; the Australian role. Sydney, Australia. 1985. ISSN: 0825-0979.


Ridgway, J. 1987/2/1. “Neogene Displacements in the Solomon Islands Arc.” Tectonophysics. Volume 133, Issue 1-2, Pages 81-93. Abstract: The geology and present configuration of the Solomon Island arc can be explained in terms of the Neogene displacement of a single linear chain of islands. The central part of an original arc consisting of Bougainville, Choiseul, Santa Ysabel, Guadalcanal and San Cristobal was displaced to the northeast as a consequence of the attempted subduction of the Woodlark spreading system. Malaita arose on the northeastern side of the arc as a result of interaction between the arc and the Pacific Ocean floor and the volcanic islands of the New Georgia group formed to the southwest in response to the subduction of a spreading ridge, thus giving rise to the present double chain structure of the arc. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Ridgway, J. and Midobatu, C. 1991. “Temporal Variations in the Trace Element Content of Stream Sediments: An Example from a Tropical Rain Forest Regime, Solomon Islands.” Applied Geochemistry APPGEY. Volume p 185-193, Pages 9 ref. Descriptors: Alluvial sediments; Environmental chemistry; Geochemistry; Rain forests; Sediment chemistry; Solomon Islands; Trace elements; Chemical analysis; Heavy metals; Iron; Sediment analysis; Temporal variation; Tropical regions. Abstract: A stream sediment geochemical anomaly in a tropical rain forest environment on Guadalcanal Island, Solomon Islands, was monitored at monthly intervals over a period of 15 months. Major changes in stream sediment chemistry took place after heavy rainfall associated with the passage of the tail of a cyclone through the region. These changes were directly linked to changes in the mineralogical composition of the sediments. Significant chemical variations also occurred in the period before the cyclone but these appear to have been related to variations in hydromorphic dispersion processes. Results show that statistically significant temporal variations in the trace element content of the stream sediments occurred at every sample site monitored. These variations were generally strongest at the three most upstream sites, which were the ones closest to mineralization. The data suggest that common exploration practices, such as the use of ‘threshold values’, should be applied with caution in tropical rain forest terrain. The use of element/iron ratios in exploration work and smoothing techniques in regional geochemical
mapping may help eliminate some of the more pronounced effects of temporal variations in the trace element contents of stream sediments. ISSN: 0883-2927.

Ridgway J, Appleton J D and Greally, K. B. 1991. “Variations in Regional Geochemical Patterns; Effects of Site-Selection and Data-Processing Algorithms.” Institution of Mining and Metallurgy, Transactions, Section B: Applied Earth Science. Institution of Mining and Metallurgy: London, United Kingdom. Volume 100, Pages B112-B129. Descriptors: Africa; algorithms; Asia; Bolivia; cartography; data processing; digital cartography; East Africa; Far East; geochemistry; IGCP; Indonesia; Kenya; Melanesia; Oceania; Samburu Marsabit Region; Solomon Islands; South America; Southern Africa; Sumatra; surveys; Zimbabwe; General geochemistry. ISSN: 0371-7453.

Ridgway, J.; Coulson, F. I. E.; Arthurs, J. W., et al. . 1987. “The Geology of Choiseul and the Shortland Islands, Solomon Islands.” London, United Kingdom: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, (HMSO). Overseas Memoir - British Geological Survey. Volume: 8, page(s): 134. Descriptors: Alu Island; anomalies; areal geology; bauxite; Choiseul; clays; evolution; Fauro Island; geochemical maps; geochemical methods; geochemistry; geologic maps; geothermal energy; limestone deposits; maps; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral exploration; Oceania; regional; sampling; sands; Shortland Islands; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; stream sediments; structural geology; surveys; tectonics; Treasury Islands; water supply; 13 Areal geology; color geologic maps. ISBN: 0951-6646; 0-11-884416-4.

Ripper, I D and McCue, K. F. 1983. “The Seismic Zone of the Papuan Fold Belt.” BMR Journal of Australian Geology and Geophysics. Australian Geological Survey Organization: Canberra, A.C.T., Australia. Volume 8, Issue 2, Pages 142-156. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; displacements; earthquakes; epicenters; faults; focal mechanism; Indo Australian Plate; Kikori; Melanesia; Mount Hagen seismic zone; Neogene; New Britain; New Ireland; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Papuan fold belt; plate collision; plate tectonics; Pliocene; Quaternary; seismic risk; seismicity; seismology; Solomon Islands; Solomon Sea Plate; South Bismarck Plate; Southern Highlands seismic zone; subduction; tectonophysics; Tertiary; thrust faults; Seismology. ISSN: 0312-9608.


Ripper, I. D. 1977. Some Earthquake Focal Mechanisms in the New Guinea/ Solomon Islands Region, 1969-1971. Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Australian Geological Survey Organisation. Report - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 192, BMR Microform MF11, page(s): 93. Descriptors: D' Entrecasteaux Islands; earthquakes; focal mechanism; Indian Plate; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; New Britain Trench; New Guinea; Oceania; Pacific Plate; plate tectonics; Ramu Markham Valley; Santa Ysabel Island; seismology; Solomon Islands; South Bismarck volcanic arc; tectonophysics; Seismology; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0084-7100.

[Victoria], Australia. Volume 6, Issue 2-3, First Southwest Pacific workshop-symposium, Pages 80-81. Descriptors: Australasia; earthquakes; effects; mechanism; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New
Guinea; plate tectonics; seismicity; seismology; Solomon Islands; subduction; Seismology. ISSN: 0314-2876.

Descriptors: Australasia; earthquakes; faults; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; Seismology. Notes: Includes appendix; Access according to University regulations.
GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-068303.


Ripper, I. D. 1970. “Global Tectonics and the New Guinea, Solomon Islands Region.” Search (Sydney). Australian and New Zealand Association for the Advancement of Science (ANZAAS): Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 1, Issue 5, Pages 226-232. Descriptors: earthquakes; evolution; global; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; regional; seismicity; Solomon Islands; structural geology; tectonics; Structural geology. ISSN: 0004-9549.

Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; earthquakes; Far East; Indonesia; Irian Jaya Indonesia; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; seismicity; Solomon Islands; Seismology. ISSN: 0378-973X.


Roe, David. 2000. “Maritime, Coastal and Inland Societies in Island Melanesia; the Bush-Saltwater Divide in Solomon Islands and Vanuatu.” Modern Quaternary Research in Southeast
Natural History of Guadalcanal

Asia. A.A. Balkema: Rotterdam, Netherlands. Volume 16, Pages 197-222. Descriptors: anthropology; archaeological sites; archaeology; coastal environment; economics; expeditions; human activity; marine environment; maritime societies; Melanesia; navigation; Oceania; Solomon Islands; Vanuatu; Quaternary geology. ISSN: 0168-6151.

Rogerson, R, Hilyard, David and Finlayson E. 1990. “Stratigraphic Relationships of the Panguna Mine Sequence, Bougainville Island, Papua New Guinea.” Pacific Rim Congress.1990, Vol. Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: Parkville, Victoria, Australia. Volume 2, Pages 499-505. Descriptors: absolute age; andesites; Arawa Conglomerate; Australasia; Bougainville; Buka Island; copper ores; crystalline rocks; dates; economic geology; gold ores; igneous rocks; K Ar; Kupei Complex; lithostratigraphy; Melanesia; metal ores; nomenclature; Oceania; Panguna Mine; Papua New Guinea; Solomon Islands; Toniva Formation; volcanic rocks; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Notes: CN: Pacific Rim congress 90. Gold Coast, Queensl., Australia. May 6-12, 1990.;

Rohrbach A, Schuth S, Ballhaus C, Muenker C, Matveev, S. and Qopoto C. 2005. “Petrological Constraints on the Origin of Arc Picrites, New Georgia Group, Solomon Islands.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 149, Issue 6, Pages 685-698. Descriptors: chemical composition; chemical reactions; crust; crystal chemistry; geochemistry; igneous rocks; island arcs; lithosphere; magmas; magmatism; major elements; Melanesia; melts; metals; nesosilicates; New Georgia; Oceania; oceanic crust; olivine; olivine group; orthosilicates; Pacific Plate; petrography; picrite; plate tectonics; rare earths; silicate melts; silicates; Solomon Islands; subduction; textures; ultramafic composition; volcanic rocks; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments. ISSN: 0010-7999.

Rombach, M. C. and Roberts, D. W. 1987. “Calcarisporium Ovalisporum Symbiotic with the Insect Pathogen Hirsutella Citriformis.” Mycologia. Volume 79, Issue 1, Pages 153-155. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: symbiosis; Calcarisporium ovalisporum; Hirsutella citriformis; Solomon I. Abstract: Cladobotryum ovalisporum Petch was described by Petch from a frog hopper (Homoptera; Cercopidae) from Sri Lanka. Because C. ovalisporum occurred together with other, unidentifiable hyphomycetes, its entomopathogenic nature is questionable. Cladobotryum ovalisporum was transferred by de Hoog to Calcarisporium Preuss; this genus was erected to accommodate C. arbuscula Preuss, a symbiote of higher Basidiomycetes and Ascomycetes which occasionally also occurs on wood. The authors collected C. ovalisporum growing on Hirsutella citriformis Speare on Guadalcanal, Republic of the Solomon Island. ISSN: 0027-5514.

Rose, J C and Tracy, R.W. 1971. “Gravity Results in the Solomon Islands Region, Aboard H. M. S. Dampier in 1965.” HIG. Hawaii Institute of Geophysics, University of Hawaii: Honolulu, HI, United States. Pages 1-2. Descriptors: 1965; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; gravity methods; marine; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Solomon Islands; surveys; Applied geophysics. Abstract: Two appendixes; data and computer profiles of the data. ISSN: 0440-4866.

Volume 64, Issue 45, Pages 903. Descriptors: Africa; Colorado Plateau; composition; fugacity; garnet group; Garnet Ridge; geochemistry; Green Knobs; mantle; megacrysts; Melanesia; mineral composition; nesosilicates; Oceania; orthosilicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; South Africa; Southern Africa; United States; water; Wesselton Kimberlite; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments. Conference: AGU 1983 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 5-9, 1983. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Rost, S. and Weber M. 2001. “A Reflector at 200 km Depth Beneath the Northwest Pacific.” Geophysical Journal International. Blackwell Science for the Royal Astronomical Society, the Deutsche Geophysikalische Gesellschaft and the European Geophysical Society, International: International. Volume 147, Issue 1, Pages 12-28. Descriptors: amplitude; Asia; Australasia; body waves; discontinuities; elastic waves; Far East; Fiji; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Malay Archipelago; mantle; Melanesia; New Guinea; New Zealand; North Pacific; Northwest Pacific; Oceania; P waves; Pacific Ocean; Philippine Islands; Polynesia; reflection; seismic methods; seismic waves; seismograms; Solomon Islands; surveys; Tonga; upper mantle; velocity structure; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0956-540X.


Rubenstone, J, Zindler, Alan, Leslie, T, Staudigel, H. and Nixon, P. 1984. “Nd and Sr Isotope Geochemistry of Lherzolite Nodules and Megacrysts from Malaita, Solomon Islands; Heterogeneous Depletion and Enrichment in the Sub-Oceanic Mantle.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 65, Issue 16, Pages 296-297. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; basalts; breccia; elastic rocks; depletion; enrichment; geochemistry; heterogeneity; igneous rocks; inclusions; isotopes; lherzolite; Malaita; mantle; megacrysts; Melanesia; metals; mid ocean ridge basalts; mineral composition; neodymium; Oceania; peridotites; plate boundaries; plutonic rocks; rare earths; sea floor spreading; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; strontium; ultramafics; volcanic rocks; xenoliths; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Isotope geochemistry. Conference: AGU 1984 spring meeting. Washington, DC, United States. Apr. 17, 1984. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Sakihama, N., Ohmae, H., Bakote’e, B., Kawabata, M., Hirayama, K. and Tanabe, K. 2006. “Limited Allelic Diversity of Plasmodium Falciparum Merozoite Surface Protein 1 Gene from Populations in the Solomon Islands.” American Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene. 2006 January. Volume 74, Issue 1, Pages 31-40. Abstract: Meiotic recombination generates allelic diversity in the Plasmodium falciparum merozoite surface protein 1 (msp1) gene. In this study, we monitored recombination-based diversity of msp1 in Guadalcanal, the Solomon Islands, where malaria transmission is high. We identified 5’ recombinant types, 3’ sequence types, and msp1 haplotypes (unique associations of 5’ recombinant types and 3’ sequence types), and compared them with those from areas of low transmission in Thailand and Vanuatu. The mean number of 5’ recombinant types per person (multiplicity) was lower in Guadalcanal than in Thailand. Guadalcanal populations had 6-8 msp1 haplotypes; the numbers are comparable to Vanuatu but much lower than in Thailand. There were marked geographic differences in distribution of msp1 haplo-types. Linkage disequilibrium in msp1 was stronger in Guadalcanal than in Thailand, suggesting limited recombination events in the Solomon Islands. We suggest that the frequency of recombination events in msp1 is determined not only by transmission intensity but by the number of msp1 alleles prevalent and multiplicity of infections. Database: PubMed. Availability: NLM.

Samples, K. C. and Rolseth, E. B. 1985. “Marketing Role of International Joint Ventures in the Development of Pacific Island Industrial Tuna Fisheries.” Hawaii Univ., Honolulu. Sea Grant Coll. Program. Performer: Rhode Island Univ., Kingston. Dept. of Resource Economics. Feb. Volume: UNIHISGME8502, page(s): 31. Descriptors: Exports; Japan; Trends; Fiji Islands; Solomon Islands; Food processing; Profits; International trade; Marketing; Tunas; South Pacific Ocean; Commercial fishing; Behavioral and social sciences Economics; Business and economics International commerce marketing and economics; Business and economics Foreign industry.
development and economics. Abstract: International joint ventures have played a significant role in the recent development of commercial tuna fisheries in the southwest Pacific. This report describes the tuna export marketing activities of Japanese joint venture partners in three enduring joint venture companies in Fiji, the Solomon Islands, and Vanuatu. Tuna export development trends in these island nations suggest that affiliation with Japanese firms has led to dramatic expansion in tuna exports and increased value-added due to additional local processing. Japanese partners have tended to dominate production and marketing management in the joint venture companies and have devoted little attention to training local staff in tuna export marketing skills. Profitability of the ventures has also been less than anticipated. Notes: Funder: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Rockville, MD. Office of Sea Grant. Prepared in cooperation with Rhode Island Univ., Kingston. Dept. of Resource Economics. NTIS: PB85180271XSP.


Sawatari, H, Kawata, Y, Sugisaki, R, Dunkley, PN, Shimizu, H. and Masuda, A. 1990. “Rectilinear Partition Coefficient Function of REE Pertaining to the Formation of Basaltic Rocks from the New Georgia Group, the Solomon Islands.” Geochemical Journal. Geochemical Society of Japan: Nagoya, Japan. Volume 24, Issue 3, Pages 159-171. Descriptors: alkali metals; alkaline earth metals; barium; basalts; geochemistry; igneous rocks; isotopes; major elements; Melanesia; metals; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; New Georgia Group; Oceania; olivine basalt; partition coefficients; partitioning; petrology; picrite; rare earths; rubidium; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 and Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; volcanic rocks; Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0016-7002.


Schmidt, Anneliese, Burr, G. S., Taylor, F. W., O’Malley, J. and Beck, J. W. 2004. “A Semiannual Radiocarbon Record of a Modern Coral from the Solomon Islands.” Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research, Section B: Beam Interactions with Materials and Atoms. Volume 223-224, Pages 420-427. Descriptors: Radioisotopes; Carbon; Radioactive tracers; Oscillations; Engineering research; Time series analysis; Correlation methods. Abstract: Radiocarbon records from modern corals have long been recognized for their usefulness as a geochemical tracer of surface ocean waters and oceanic upwelling. Pacific corals are especially interesting because of their potential relevance to El Nino - Southern Oscillation (ENSO) events. At present, the Pacific Ocean is undersampled with respect to radiocarbon time series. This study
Natural History of Guadalcanal

establishes a 14C time series for a coral from the Solomon Islands, located near the center of the Western Pacific Warm Pool (WPWP). We present radiocarbon results from a Porites colony which grew in Marau Sound, on the east coast of Guadalcanal. A semiannual record of 14C was constructed from measurements of alternating bands which grew continuously from 1944 to 1994. The record reflects the uptake of atmospheric bomb-produced 14C since the late 1950s with superimposed subannual radiocarbon variations, presumably related to changes in ocean circulation. Although the coral radiocarbon is influenced by ENSO events, the record is not closely correlated with the Southern Oscillation Index (SOI) for the same period. ISSN: 0168-583X.

Scholl, DW and Marlow, M.S. 1974. “Sedimentary Sequence in Modern Pacific Trenches and the Deformed Circum-Pacific Eugeosyncline.” Special Publication - Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists. SEPM (Society for Sedimentary Geology): Tulsa, OK, United States. Volume 19, Pages 193-211. Descriptors: acoustical methods; age; Alaska; Aleutian Islands; Asia; Australasia; Bonin; Caroline Islands; Cenozoic; Circum Pacific; Commonwealth of Independent States; deformation; deposition; distribution; downwarps; eugeosynclines; evolution; Far East; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; geosynclines; Hikurang Trench; Jap; Japan; Kamchatka Peninsula; Kuril Islands; Mariana Islands; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Micronesia; New Britain; ocean floors; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Palau; Papua New Guinea; patterns; Philippine Islands; plate tectonics; rates; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Ryukyu; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; sedimentary petrology; sedimentation; sediments; Solomon Islands; Southwestern Alaska; structure; subduction; subductions; surveys; tectonics; terrigenous; Tonga Kermadec Trench; trenches; turbidite; United States; USSR; Vanuatu; west; Sedimentary petrology. ISSN: 0097-3270.


Schuth, Stephan, Rohrbach, Arno, Muenker, Carsten, Ballhaus, Chris, Garbe Schoenberg, Dieter and Qopoto, Cromwell. 2004. “Geochemical Constraints on the Petrogenesis of Arc Picrites and Basalts, New Georgia Group, Solomon Islands.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 148, Issue 3, Pages 288-304. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; Australian Plate; basalts; Cenozoic; chemical composition; crust; geochemistry; hafnium; ICP mass spectra; igneous rocks; island arcs; isotope ratios; isotopes; major elements; mantle; mass spectra; metals; mid ocean ridge basalts; mixing; models; neodymium; New Georgia Archipelago; New Georgia Group; ocean floors; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; petrography; picrite; plate tectonics; Pleistocene; provenance; Quaternary; rare earths; sea floor spreading; Solomon Islands; spectra; spreading centers; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; subduction; subduction zones; thermal ionization mass spectra; trace elements; trenches; volcanic rocks; volcanism; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Woodlark Ridge; X ray fluorescence spectra; Geochemistry of rocks, soils, and sediments; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0010-7999.

Natural History of Guadalcanal

Descriptors: aftershocks; earthquakes; elastic waves; faults; focal mechanism; focus; foreshocks; Melanesia; Oceania; seismic sources; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands; Solomon Islands earthquake 1971; subduction; thrust faults; Seismology. Conference: American Geophysical Union, fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 6-11, 1987. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Schwartz, Susan Y, Lay, Thorne and Ruff, Larry J. 1989. “Source Process of the Great 1971 Solomon Islands Doublet.” Phys. Earth Planet. Inter. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 56, Issue 3-4, Pages 294-310. Descriptors: asperities; body waves; deconvolution; earthquakes; elastic waves; faults; focal mechanism; island arcs; mechanism; Melanesia; New Britain Trench; Oceania; P waves; plate boundaries; seismic waves; seismology; Solomon Islands; Solomon Islands earthquake 1971; Solomon Islands Trench; Solomon Plate; surface waves; thrust faults; Seismology. ISSN: 0031-9201.

Schwartz, S. Y. 1996. “Large Underthrusting Earthquakes in Subduction Zones with “Premature” Recurrence; Implications for the Seismic Gap Hypothesis.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 77, Issue 46, Suppl., Pages 517. Descriptors: aftershocks; Alaska; Aleutian Islands; Asia; Commonwealth of Independent States; earthquakes; elastic waves; Far East; faults; Green function; Honshu; inverse problem; Japan; Kuril Islands; Melanesia; Oceania; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; rupture; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Sakhalin Russian Federation; seismic gaps; seismic moment; seismic waves; seismicity; Solomon Islands; Southwestern Alaska; spatial variations; subduction zones; underthrust faults; United States; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: American Geophysical Union 1996 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 15-19, 1996. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Schwartz, Susan Y. 1999. “Noncharacteristic Behavior and Complex Recurrence of Large Subduction Zone Earthquakes.” Journal of Geophysical Research, B, Solid Earth and Planets. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 104, Issue 10, Pages 23,111-23,125. Descriptors: Aleutian Islands earthquake 1957; Asia; broad band spectra; earthquakes; Far East; Green function; Honshu; Japan; Kuril Islands earthquake 1994; Melanesia; Oceania; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; rupture; seismic moment; Solomon Islands; spatial distribution; subduction zones; Seismology. ISSN: 0885-3401.

Schwartz, Susan Ynid. 1988. Fault Zone Heterogeneity and Earthquake Occurrence in Subduction Zones. Ann Arbor, MI, United States: University of Michigan. page(s): 170. Descriptors: Asia; asperities; Commonwealth of Independent States; displacements; earthquakes; Far East; fault zones; focus; heterogeneity; Japan; Kuril Islands; lithosphere; magnitude; Melanesia; Oceania; rheology; rupture; Russian Federation; Russian Pacific region; Russian Republic; Sakhalin Russian Federation; Sakhalin Russian Republic; seismic energy; seismology;
seismotectonics; Solomon Islands; Solomon Islands earthquake 1971; stress; subduction zones; tectonics; Tokachi Oki earthquake 1968; USSR; Seismology. GeoRef Accession Number: 1989-043091.

Schweiger, H. G. and Berger, S. 1975. “Acetabularia Haemmerlingi, a New Species.” Nova Hedwigia. Volume 26, Issue 1, Pages 33-43. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: New species; Taxonomy; Biogeography; Aquatic plants; Article Taxonomic Terms: Acetabularia haemmerlingi; Article Geographic Terms: Solomon Is; Marine. Notes: Records keyed from 1976 ASFA printed journals. TR: 1976. Abstract: A new sp which belongs to the fam Dasycladaceae, the subfam Acetabulariioideae, the gen Acetabularia and the section Acetabuloides is described. It occurs in the British Solomon Islands (Guadalcanal Island). The new sp is called Acetabularia haemmerlingi. It is similar to A. kilneri and A. dentata with respect to the shape of the rays. However, it is a different sp because of the number of cap rays and the number of protuberances per segment of the corona superior. Database: ASFA 1: Biological Sciences and Living Resources. ISSN: 0029-5035.

Sdzuy, Klaus. 1962. “Trilobiten Aus Dem Unter-Kambrium Der Sierra Morena (S-Spanien).” Senckenbergiana Lethaea. Volume 43, Issue 3, Pages 181-217. Descriptors: Arthropoda; Cambrian; Europe; Iberian Peninsula; Invertebrata; paleontology; Paleozoic; Sierra Morena; Southern Europe; Spain; Trilobita; Trilobitomorpha. Illustrations. Abstract: A revision of the lower Cambrian trilobite faunas of the Cala, Llerena, and Guadalcanal localities in the Sierra Morena range, southwest Spain; includes descriptions of a new species and a new subspecies. ISSN: 0037-2110.


Sego, P. D. 1969. Magnetic Investigations East of Malaita Island. Honolulu, HI, United States: University of Hawaii. page(s): 37. Descriptors: East Pacific Ocean Islands; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Hawaii; magnetic methods; Malaita; Melanesia; Oceania; Polynesia; Solomon Islands; surveys; United States; Applied geophysics. GeoRef Accession Number: 1989-029456.

Shafer, John T., Neal, Clive R. and Castillo, Paterno R. 2004. “Compositional Variability in Lavas from the Ontong Java Plateau; Results from Basalt Clasts within the Volcaniclastic Succession at Ocean Drilling Program Site 1184.” Geological Society Special Publications. Geological Society of London: London, United Kingdom. Volume 229, Pages 333-351. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; Aptian; basalts; chemical composition; chemical ratios; clasts; Cretaceous; igneous rocks; isotope ratios; isotopes; Kwaimbaita Formation; lava; Leg 192; Lower Cretaceous; major elements; Malaita; mantle; Melanesia; Mesozoic; metals; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Ocean Drilling Program; Oceania; ODP Site 1184; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; petrography; rare earths; Singgalo Formation; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; tholeiitic basalt; trace elements; volcanic rocks; volcaniclastics; West Pacific; Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: Tholeiitic basalts have been recovered from drill sites in different locations on the Ontong Java Plateau (OJP) and are remarkably homogeneous across this large igneous province. The most abundant basalt type is represented by the Kwaimbaita Formation on Malaita in the Solomon Islands, where it is capped by the isotopically distinct and slightly more incompatible-element-enriched basalt of the Singgalo Formation. Ocean Drilling Program (ODP) Leg 192 drilled five sites on the OJP, four of which penetrated basement lava successions. All basalt recovered during Leg 192 is chemically and isotopically indistinguishable from Kwaimbaita-type lavas. Site 1184 of ODP Leg 192 is situated on the eastern salient of the OJP, and is unique because the recovered volcaniclastic succession
contains the first conclusive evidence for emergence of part of the OJP above sea level. Within this succession are clasts of basaltic material. We report the major element-, trace-element and isotopic compositions of 14 moderately to highly altered basalt clasts. On the basis of incompatible-element concentrations, specifically high field strength elements (HFSE) and rare earth elements (REE), four groups of clasts are defined. Group 1 clasts are similar to basalt from the Kwaimbaita Formation. Group 2 clasts show variable composition, but the heavy rare earth element (HREE) concentrations are similar to those of basalts from the Kwaimbaita Formation. Group 3 clasts have compositions similar to the high-MgO Kroenke-type basalt recovered during ODP Leg 192. Group 4 clasts are more evolved than the Kwaimbaita or Singgalo lavas, and contain deep negative Eu and Sr anomalies on primitive-mantle (PM)-normalized diagrams, as well as high concentrations of Nb, Ta and Th. Group 4 clasts also show a large fractionation of Nb from La and have (Nb/La) (sub PM) ratios of approximately 2. Sr-, Nd-and Pb-isotope ratios were measured on five clasts covering all four groups. Although the Sr-and Pb-isotope ratios exhibit some variability, which we attribute to alteration, the Nd-isotope ratios are within the field defined for Kwaimbaita-type lavas. We conclude that most of the compositional variability displayed by these clasts is a result of alteration and that Ta appears to be the most immobile incompatible trace element. All of the clasts were derived from the mantle source that produced the Kwaimbaita-type and Kroenke-type basalts. Our data emphasize the widespread nature of Kwaimbaita-type basalt and show that the source region was active under both the eastern salient and the high plateau of the OJP.


Shafik, S. 1989. “Calcareous Nannofossils from the Solomon Islands-Bougainville Region, R/ V S.P. Lee Cruise L6-84-SP.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 12, Pages 269-274. Descriptors: algae; Australasia; Bougainville; calcareous algae; Cenozoic; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; gravity methods; Melanesia; microfossils; nannofossils; Oceania; paleontology; Papua New Guinea; Plantae; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; surveys; thallophytes; Paleobotany; Applied geophysics.


Shatwell, David. 1987. “Epithermal Gold Mineralization and Late Cenozoic Magmatism in the Melanesian Outer Arc.” Australas. Inst. Min. and Metall.: Parkville, Victoria, Australia. Pages 393-398. Descriptors: Bismarck Arc; calc alkalic composition; Cenozoic; composition; epithermal processes; Feni Arc; Fiji; gold ores; igneous rocks; island arcs; Melanesia; Melanesian outer arc; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; Neogene; Oceania; petrology; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; processes; Solomon Islands; structural controls; subduction zones; Tabar Arc; tectonophysics; Tertiary; Vanuatu; volcanic rocks; volcanism; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: Pacific Rim congress 87; an

Shcheka, S. A. 1979. “Bureniye Drevney Kory Tikhogo Okeana.” Translated Title: “Drilling Ancient Crust of the Pacific Ocean.” Rossiyskaya Akademiya Nauk: Moscow, USSR. Pages 58-60. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; basalts; composition; crust; Deep Sea Drilling Project; differentiation; DSDP Site 462; igneous rocks; IPOD; Kiribati; Leg 61; Leg 62; Leg 89; magmas; Malay Archipelago; Marshall Islands; Melanesia; Micronesia; Nauru Island; New Guinea; Oceania; oceanic crust; Pacific Ocean; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; tectonophysics; Vanuatu; volcanic rocks; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0032-874X.

Sheppard, PJ and Pavlish, L.A. 1992. “Weathering of Archaeological Cherts; a Case Study from the Solomon Islands.” Geoarchaeology. Wiley & Sons: New York, NY, United States. Volume 7, Issue 1, Pages 41-53. Descriptors: absolute age; alkali metals; aluminum; archaeology; artifacts; chaledony; chemical weathering; chemically precipitated rocks; chert; chlorides; coralline cherts; dates; framework silicates; geochemistry; halides; Lapita archaeological complex; Melanesia; metals; Oceania; pH; potassium; sedimentary petrology; sedimentary rocks; silica minerals; silicates; sodium; soils; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; trace elements; weathering; Quaternary geology. ISSN: 0883-6353.


Shimizu, Hiroshi, Sawatari, Hideyuki, Kawata, Yousuke, Dunkley, Peter, N. and Masuda, Akimasa. 1992. “Ce and Nd Isotope Geochemistry on Island Arc Volcanic Rocks with Negative Ce Anomaly; Existence of Sources with Concave REE Patterns in the Mantle Beneath the Solomon and Bonin Island Arcs.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 110, Issue 2-3, Pages 242-252. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; anomalies; basalts; Bonin Islands; Ce 142 Ce 138; Cenozoic; cerium; chemical composition; evolution; geochemistry; igneous activity; igneous rocks; island arcs; isotope ratios; isotopes; lithogeochemistry; mantle; Melanesia; metals; mid ocean ridge basalts; mineral composition; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; rare earths; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0010-7999.

Shinohara, M., Suyehiro, K. and Murayama, T. 2003. “Microearthquake Seismicity in Relation to Double Convergence Around the Solomon Islands Arc by Ocean-Bottom Seismometer Observation.” Geophysical Journal International. June. Volume 153, Issue 3, Pages 691-698. Descriptors: Earthquakes; Seismology; Plates (tectonics); Subduction (geology); Ocean bottom; Earth crust; Seismographs; Convergence; Islands; Pacific Ocean; Slip. Abstract: The Solomon
Islands arc area is a complex plate convergence zone. At the North Solomon Trench on the northern side of the arc, it is believed that the Pacific Plate was subducting before coming into collision with the Ontong Java Plateau, the world’s largest oceanic plateau. After the collision about 5 Ma, northeastward subduction initiated along the southern side of the arc at the San Cristobal Trench, another trench on the south side. GPS observations and crustal seismic structure surveys confirm that convergence occurs at both trenches. Without detailed and accurate seismicity, it is difficult to characterize the plate subduction to reveal the tectonics of such a complex zone where a key mechanism of continental growth may also exist. In 1994, an ocean-bottom seismometer (OBS) experiment was carried out for the first time in the area around the Solomon Islands arc to locate microearthquakes. Observations started in late August and continued until early September. Five digital recording OBSs were deployed around the Russell Islands west of Guadalcanal Island. OBS spacing was about 20 km. All the OBSs were recovered and yielded data with a good signal-to-noise ratio. Forty earthquakes, with magnitudes in the range 1.5-4.4 were located over 8 days. The seismicity clearly images the two subducting plates. Though the seismicity beneath the arc side slope of the San Cristobal Trench is relatively high, we can see the seismicity, which is related to the subducting Pacific Plate beneath Santa Isabel Island. In addition, earthquakes occur within the crust beneath the southern part of the New Georgia Basin and the Russell Islands. An aseismic area extending 40 km inward from the San Cristobal trench axis implies initial aseismic slip of the India Australia Plate at a small dip angle. ISSN: 0956-540X.


Shorten, Graham; Shapira, Avi; Regnier, Marc, et al. 2001. “Site-Specific Earthquake Hazard Determinations in Capital Cities in the South Pacific.” Suva, International: Committee for Co-Ordination of Joint Prospecting for Mineral Resources in South Pacific Offshore Areas (CCOP/SOPAC). CCOP/SOPAC Technical Report. Volume: 300, page(s): 156. Descriptors: active faults; distribution; earthquakes; epicenters; fault planes; faults; Fiji; geologic hazards; geologic sites; Honiara Solomon Islands; Melanesia; microzonation; neotectonics; Nuku' alofa Tonga; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Polynesia; Port Vila Vanuatu; seismicity; seismotectonics; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Suva Fiji; tectonics; Tonga; Vanuatu; Viti Levu; Structural geology; Seismology. ISSN: 1018-9173.

Shorten, G. G. 2003. “Challenges for the Application of Earthquake Engineering in the Pacific Islands.” Bulletin of the New Zealand Society for Earthquake Engineering. June. Volume 36, Issue 2, Pages 125-133. Descriptors: Earthquake engineering; Seismic phenomena; Earthquake construction; Seismic engineering; Foundations; Capacity; Education; Catastrophic failure analysis; Networks; Sustainable development; Urban areas; Infrastructure; Disasters. Abstract: Experience has shown that successful application of earthquake engineering in the Pacific, particularly the understanding of earthquake risk as applied in the high-risk urban areas, is fundamentally dependent on continuing studies of seismicity and neotectonics; research on foundation problems; the institution of building standards; and seismic microzonation studies of urban population.
centers. The whole needs to be carried forward by a comprehensive risk-management approach that takes scientific and engineering advances towards social outcomes by defining the people, buildings and infrastructure at risk, and engages the relevant communities in planning for ways to treat risk, including risk-financing for catastrophes. The challenges inhibiting that successful application in the Pacific Islands are manifold, and include problems imposed from outside the region as well as those inherent from within. The focus of activities related to earthquake engineering should now be on the solutions to those challenges, including improvements in education, organizational approaches and research on the local risk, as well as providing for an immediate technical response capacity to disasters and a regional network facility. Overwhelmingly, a more efficient coordination of the services provided by the international community is called for, because a concerted effort is required if there is to be any chance of successfully overcoming the challenges to sustainable development in the Pacific. ISSN: 1174-9857.

Sillitoe, Richard H. 1989. “Gold Deposits in Western Pacific Island Arcs; the Magmatic Connection.” Economic Geology Monographs. Economic Geology Publishing Co.: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 6, Pages 274-291. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; brines; contact metamorphism; country rocks; economic geology; epithermal processes; extension; Far East; fluid inclusions; geologic thermometry; gold ores; homogenization; igneous processes; igneous rocks; inclusions; intrusions; Japan; kuroko type deposits; leaching; Melanesia; metal ores; metamorphic rocks; metamorphism; metasomatic rocks; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; New Zealand; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; paleosalinity; Papua New Guinea; Porgera Deposit; porphyry; porphyry copper; skarn; Solomon Islands; stockwork deposits; subduction; volatiles; West Pacific; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0099-6300.

Sillitoe, Richard H. 1988. “Geotectonic Setting of Western Pacific Gold Deposits.” Proceedings of the International Conference on Basement Tectonics. Basement Tectonics Committee: [location varies], United States. Volume 8, Pages 665-678. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; epithermal processes; Far East; Fiji; gold ores; igneous activity; island arcs; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; New Guinea; New Zealand; North Island; Oceania; Pacific region; Philippine Islands; Solomon Islands; structural controls; Taiwan; western Pacific region; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits; Structural geology. Conference: Eighth international conference on Basement tectonics. Butte, MT, United States. Aug. 8-12, 1988. ISSN: 0270-5427.


geology; ground motion; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; seismology; Solomon Islands; spectral analysis; strong motion; USGS; 30 Engineering geology. Notes: Supersedes Open-file report 85-261. ISSN: 0196-1497.


Slavinskii, V. V. 1997. “The Oceanic Lithosphere Cooling Based on Thermobarometric Data.” Transactions (Doklady) of the Russian Academy of Sciences. Earth Science Sections. MAIK Nauka/Interperiodica: Moscow, Russian Federation. Volume 356, Issue 7, Pages 965-967. Descriptors: cooling; Cretaceous; equilibrium; garnet group; geologic barometry; geologic thermometry; high pressure; high temperature; igneous rocks; inclusions; lithosphere; Malaita; mantle; mantle plumes; measurement; Melanesia; Mesozoic; nesosilicates; Oceania; oceanic lithosphere; Ontong Java Plateau; orthosilicates; oxides; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; peridotites; plate tectonics; plutonic rocks; pressure; silicates; Solomon Islands; spinel; temperature; ultramafics; upper mantle; West Pacific; xenoliths; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 1083-3552.

Slee, J. 1977. The Australian Mines Handbook, 1976-1977. Aust., Australia: National Miner of Australia and the Mining Geological Consultants Derry, Michener, and Boothe Pty Ltd., in conjunction with the Stock Exchange of Perth. Perth, West. The Australian Mines Handbook. Volume: 1976-1977, page(s): 223. Descriptors: 1976 1977; actinides; annual report; antimony; asbestos; Australasia; Australia; bauxite; bismuth; Bougainville; catalogs; chemically precipitated rocks; chromite; clastic sediments; coal; copper; economic geology; evaporites; gold; Hamersley; iron; lead zinc deposits; manganese; Melanesia; metal ores; metals; mineral resources; mining geology; natural gas; nickel; North Broken Hill; Oceania; organic residues; oxides; Papua New Guinea; petroleum; phosphates; report; salt; sand; sedimentary rocks; sediments; silicates; silver; Solomon Islands; tantalum; Tasmania Australia; tin; tungsten; uranium; vanadium; Woodsreef; Economic geology, general. ISSN: 0314-3554.

Smaill, Alastair G. 1986. “Geological Investigations for a Proposed Wharf at Noro, New Georgia, Solomon Islands.” Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication. Volume 35A, Pages 97. Descriptors: boreholes; Cenozoic; drilling; engineering geology; Guadalcanal; Holocene; marine installations; marine platforms; Melanesia; Neogene; New Georgia Island; Noro; Oceania; Pleistocene; Pliocene; Quaternary; reefs; Roviana Formation; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; Engineering geology; Oceanography. Notes: Geological Society of New Zealand; 16th annual conference. Palmerston North, New Zealand. Dec. 1-5, 1986. OCLC 19527587.

Smith, I. E. 1969. “Notes on the Volcanoes Mount Bagana and Mount Victory, Territory of Papua and New Guinea.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1969/12, page(s): 14. Descriptors: andesites; Australasia; Bougainville; eruptions; geologic hazards; igneous rocks; Melanesia; Mount Bagana; Mount Victory; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; SB5612; Solomon Islands; volcanic rocks; volcanism; volcanoes; volcanology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Quaternary geology. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.

Human nutrition - General aspects; Nutritional Status; Living Standards; Health; Social Services; Nutrition Policies; Solomon Islands. FAO Library.


“Solomon Islands Alluvial Gold.” 1985. Mining Magazine (London). Mining Journal Ltd.: London, United Kingdom. Volume 152, Issue 6, Pages 459-460. Descriptors: economic geology; gold ores; Gold Ridge; Matepno River; Melanesia; metal ores; news; Oceania; placers; Solomon Islands; volcanism; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0308-6631.

Solomon Islands Map Series.

1980. Descriptors: areal geology; economics; geologic maps; Guadalcanal; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; structural geology; Structural

1979. Descriptors: areal geology; Choiseul; geologic maps; Katurasele; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; 14 Geologic maps; color geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Solomon Islands, 1:50,000. 1979. SO: Sheet CH6, 1979.

1979. Descriptors: areal geology; geologic maps; Gold Ridge; Guadalcanal; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; 14 Geologic maps; color geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Solomon Islands, 1:50,000. 1979. SO: Sheet GU9, 1979.

1978. Descriptors: areal geology; geologic maps; Guadalcanal; Honiara; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; 14 Geologic maps; color geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Solomon Islands, 1:50,000. 1978. SO: Sheet GU4, 1978.

1978. Descriptors: areal geology; geologic maps; Guadalcanal; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Shortland Islands; Solomon Islands; 14 Geologic maps; color geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Solomon Islands, 1:50,000. 1978. SO: Sheet GU4, 1978.

1977. Descriptors: areal geology; Florida Islands; geologic maps; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; West Florida Islands; 14 Geologic maps; color geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Solomon Islands, 1:50,000. 1977. SO: Sheet FL1, 1977.

1977. Descriptors: areal geology; Choiseul; Choiseul Bay; geologic maps; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; 14 Geologic maps; color geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Solomon Islands, 1:50,000. 1977. SO: Sheet CH1, 1977.

1977. Descriptors: areal geology; Choiseul; Chorovanga; geologic maps; maps; Melanesia; Oceania; Solomon Islands; 14 Geologic maps; color geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Solomon Islands, 1:50,000. 1977. SO: Sheet CH2, 1977.


Solomon Islands. Guadalcanal 1942? “A captured Japanese map of Guadalcanal (Reproduction)” Map Scale: 1:20,000. In Japanese. Translated markings: “A Plain: an enemy airfield.” “The virgin forest region along the coast are usually located in higher planes than are the jungle regieme, and are usually dry.” “The south of the river is closed with mud and sand. It is a good place for boats.” “There is jungle to the west of the river.” “Cocoanut jungle.” “Reefs cover the southern coast.” “Jungle region.” Library of Congress.


Gross National Product; Behavioral and social sciences; Economics; Business and economics
Foreign industry development and economics. Abstract: This introductory economic report, the
first Bank report since the country's independence, 1) describes the present economic situation and
discusses the most critical issues with which the country is confronted. Recent developments and
issues in agriculture, human resource development and domestic resource mobilization receive
special attention. Microfiche copies only. Paper copy available from World Bank, 1818 H St., NW,
Washington, DC. 20433. DTIC Accession Number: PB83262014XSP.

Solomon Islands and Dept. of Development Planning. 2000. Analytical Report on
Monitoring & Planning for Displaced Families: Case Study, Malaita. Honiara, Solomon Islands:
Dept. of Development Planning. Descriptors: 58; Refugees- Solomon Islands- Malaita Province;
Refugees- Solomon Islands- Malaita Province- Statistics; Refugees- Solomon Islands-
Guadalcanal- Social conditions; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- Ethnic relations. Notes: At head
Other Titles: Analytical report on monitoring and planning for displaced families. Library of
Congress. LCCN: 2002-437175.

Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; copper ores; economic geology; Far East;
Fiji; gold ores; Guadalcanal; island arcs; Luzon; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis;
Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Philippine Islands; plate collision; plate tectonics;
porphyry copper; processes; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction;
tectonophysics; West Pacific. References: 56; sketch maps. Abstract: The Tertiary-Quaternary
porphyry copper-gold deposits of the southwest Pacific rim (particularly in Luzon, mainland Papua
New Guinea, Bougainville, Guadalcanal, and Fiji) mostly formed after a reversal of arc polarity.
Where this reversal has not occurred (e.g., New Zealand and Japan), porphyry copper-gold deposits
are absent or scarce; hence, older porphyry copper-gold deposits may be useful clues to tectonic
history. Enrichment of magmas in gold may have resulted from two-stage melting. The tectonic
setting of porphyry copper-gold deposits differs from that inferred for volcanic-hosted massive
sulfide deposits. ISSN: 0091-7613.

Fiji: page(s): 36. Descriptors: annual report; Australasia; Australia; Cook Islands; Fiji; government
agencies; Guam; Kiribati; Mariana Islands; Marshall Islands; Melanesia; Micronesia; New
Zealand; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; Polynesia; report; Samoa; Solomon Islands; South Pacific
Applied Geoscience Commission; Tonga; Tuvalu; Vanuatu; Miscellaneous. South Pac. Appl.


South Pacific indigenous nuts. 1995. Proceedings of a workshop 31 October - 4 November
1994, Le Lagon Resort, Port Vila, Vanuatu. ACIAR Proceedings (Australia), no. 69. Canberra
(Australia): Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research, Canberra (Australia). 174 p.,
col. illus., diags., tables. Descriptors: Nut Crops; Nuts; Oil Crops; Oceania; Papua New Guinea;
Vanuatu; Solomon Islands; Philippines. Notes: Includes bibliographies. FAO Library. ISBN: 1-
86320-175-0.

Stanton, R. L. 1994. Ore Elements in Arc Lavas. Oxford, United Kingdom: Oxford University Press. Oxford Monographs on Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 29, page(s): 391. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; chemical properties; copper ores; exhalative processes; igneous rocks; island arcs; Kermadec Islands; lava; Malay Archipelago; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; New Britain; New Guinea; New Zealand; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; physical properties; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; volcanic rocks; volcanism; West Pacific; West Pacific Ocean Islands; zinc ores; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISBN: 0 19 854050 7.

Stanton, R. L. 1985. “Stratiform Ores and Geological Processes.” J. Proc. R. Soc. N. S. W. Royal Society of New South Wales: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 118, Issue 3-4, Pages 77-100. Descriptors: Antilles; Australasia; Australia; Caribbean region; chemical composition; composition; concepts; Dominica; economic geology; exhalative processes; genesis; geochemistry; Golden Grove Deposit; Indian Ocean; indicators; lava; lead zinc deposits; Lesser Antilles; marine environment; Melanesia; metal ores; metamorphism; Mid Indian Ridge; mineral assemblages; mineral deposits, genesis; models; Mount Misery Deposit; New Georgia; Oceania; petrography; petrology; processes; regional metamorphism; Solomon Islands; stratiform deposits; submarine environment; sulfides; volcanism; West Indies; zoning; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0004-8364.

Stanton, R. L. 1978. “Mineralization in Island Arcs with Particular Reference to the South-West Pacific Region.” Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: Melbourne, Victoria, Australia. Pages 9-19. Descriptors: chromite ores; copper ores; economic geology; igneous activity; igneous processes; igneous rocks; island arcs; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; New Georgia; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; patterns; plate tectonics; podiform deposits; porphyry copper; Santa Isabel; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; stratiform deposits; tectonophysics; volcanic rocks; volcanism; zinc ores; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0004-8364.

Stanton, R. L. 1961. “Explanatory Notes to Accompany a First Geological Map of Santa Ysabel, British Solomon Islands Protectorate.” Overseas Geology and Mineral Resources. Great Britain, Institute of Geological Sciences: London, United Kingdom. Volume 8, Issue 2, Pages 127-149. Descriptors: Cenozoic; geologic maps; geology; maps; Melanesia; metamorphic rocks; Oceania; Santa Ysabel; Solomon Islands; tectonics; Tertiary; Structural geology. Map Scale: 1:40,000. Abstract: This report supplements and completes previously reported information and includes the completed geologic map. The basement complex, pre-Miocene in age, consisting of lavas and sediments intruded by gabbro-diorite, has been folded and metamorphosed with subsequent base-leveling. During Miocene and Pliocene time, the Sigana volcanics and sediments of the Tanakau group were deposited, and were later folded. At this time, the Kaipito-Korigole thrust fault, extending some 60 miles in the southern part of the island, was formed. The abundant microfauna in the Tanakau group, probably upper Miocene in age, is listed. ISSN: 0030-7467.

Stanton, R. L. 1952. The Geology of the South-Eastern Portion of the Island of Santa Yasabel and the Island of San Jorge, with Particular Reference to the Significance of this Area in
the Determination of the Geotectonic Evolution of the Solomon Islands. Sydney, N.S.W., Australia: University of Sydney. page(s): 86. Descriptors: areal geology; Melanesia; Oceania; San Jorge Island; Santa Yasabel Island; Solomon Islands; tectonics; 13 Areal geology. Notes: Access according to University regulations. GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-066469.


Starmuehlner, F. 1976. “(Contributions to Knowledge of the Freshwater Gastropods of Pacific Islands).” Annalen des Naturhistorischen Museums in Wien. no. 80. Pages 473-656. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Biological collections; Anatomy; Ecology; Geographical distribution; Taxonomy; Organism morphology; Check lists; Biogeography; Shells; Article Taxonomic Terms: Gastropoda; Article Geographic Terms: Papua New Guinea; New Hebrides; French Polynesia; Society Is., Tahiti; Fiji; Wallacia; Freshwater. Notes: 88 ref., 21 tabl. Abstract: The study deals with 58 spp of freshwater gastropods, collected by the Indian Ocean-Expedition 1970/71 of the 1st Zoological Institute of the University of Vienna on the Pacific Islands of New Guinea, New Britain, Guadalcanal (Solomon-Is.), Efate (New Hebrides), Viti Levu (Fiji) and Tahiti. In addition was studied material from the University of Papua and New Guinea, from Mr. J. Glucksman and Mr. E. Ball (Long Island, Manus-Island, New Ireland) from Mr. G. Buick (New Guinea, New Ireland) and J.A. McLean (Fiji). From each sp, collected at 82 stations are given conchological, anatomical, ecological and zoogeographical remarks. ISSN: 0083-6133.


Stearns, Harold T. 1945. “Eustatic Shore Lines in the Pacific.” Geological Society of America Bulletin. Volume 56, Issue 11, Pages 1071-1077. Descriptors: changes of level; Pacific Islands; shorelines; terraces. Abstract: A series of shore lines and horizontal coralliferous limestone terraces of Quaternary age, accompanied by drowned valleys and shelves, are present on Espiritu Santo Island in the New Hebrides group. Remnants of higher terraces correspond to those in the Hawaiian Islands and seem to indicate Quaternary eustatic shifts in sea level ranging from at least 300 feet below to 560 feet above present sea level. Several of the terraces have been identified on Saipan Island, Marianas group, and on Guadalcanal Island, Solomon group. ISSN: 0016-7606.


Stewart, WD, Francis, G. and Pederson, S. L. 1987. “Hydrocarbon Potential of Papua New Guinea's Bougainville, Southeastern New Ireland Basins.” Oil Gas J. PennWell: Tulsa, OK, United States. Volume 85, Issue 47, Pages 83-87. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; economic geology; energy sources; exploration; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Melanesia; New Ireland; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; reservoir rocks; sedimentation; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; structural traps; surveys; traps; Economic geology, geology of energy sources. ISSN: 0030-1388.


Strand, M., Hjelmgren, A. and Sundberg, P. 2005. “Genus Baseodiscus (Nemertea: Heteronemertea): Molecular Identification of a New Species in a Phylogenetic Context.” Journal of Natural History. Volume 39, Issue 44, Pages 3785-3793. Descriptors: Cladistics; New species; Nucleotide sequence; Phylogenetics; Phylogeny; Probability theory; Taxonomy; Article Taxonomic Terms: Baseodiscus; Heteronemertea; Nemertea; Article Geographic Terms: Solomon Islands. Solomon Islands. Guadalcanal. TR: CS0741878. Abstract: A new heteronemertean, Baseodiscus joniasi sp. nov., is described from Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. It resembles B. delineatus in inner morphology but can be distinguished from this species by its different color pattern and differences in the nucleotide sequence of the mitochondrial 16S rRNA gene. The monophyletic status of the genus is investigated by reconstructing the phylogeny of six specimens from four species assigned to this genus, together with 22 specimens from nine other heteronemertean genera, using parsimony and Bayesian analysis. The results imply that Baseodiscus is a monophyletic group while several other heteronemertean genera are non-monophyletic. ISSN: 0022-2933.

Victoria, Australia. Pages 633-637. Descriptors: applications; Australasia; Australia; economic geology; Melanesia; mineral exploration; mineral resources; mining geology; mining legislation; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; production; Queensland Australia; Solomon Islands; Economic geology, general, economics. Conference: Pacific Rim congress 87; an international congress on the geology, structure, mineralisation and economics of the Pacific Rim. Gold Coast, Queensl., Australia. Aug. 26-29,1987. ISBN: 0-949106-15-1.

Suess, Wolfgang. 1995. “Papua-Neuguinea Translated Title: Papua New Guinea.” Beitraege Zur Regionalen Geologie Der Erde. Gebrueder Borntraeger Verlagsbuchhandlung: Berlin-Stuttgart, Federal Republic of Germany. Volume 22, Part 2, Pages 647-650. Descriptors: Australasia; basins; Bougainville; history; Melanesia; New Ireland; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; petroleum; petroleum exploration; production; reserves; reservoir rocks; sedimentary basins; Solomon Islands; source rocks; Economic geology, geology of energy sources. ISSN: 0522-7038.

Supply of Agricultural Produce to Honiara, Solomon Islands. Terminal statement. 1991. Rome (Italy): FAO. Agriculture Dept. 10 pages. Descriptors: Trade, marketing and distribution; Food Supply; Villages; Marketing Channels; Surveys; Markets; Transport; Prices. FAO Library.

Sutton, George H., Maynard, G. Lafayette and Hussong, Donald M. 1969. “Marine Crustal Seismic Refraction Studies using Repetitive Sources and Sonobuoys.” Earthquake Notes. Seismological Society of America, Eastern Section: [El Cerrito, CA], United States. Volume 40, Issue 2, Pages 9. Descriptors: 1966; crust; crustal studies; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; marine; Melanesia; Oceania; refraction; regional; repetitive sources; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; sonobuoys; surveys; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0012-8287.

Swain, H. D. 1997. “Due Diligence; a Proposal.” The AusIMM Bulletin - the Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy: [Parkville, Victoria], Australia. Volume 1997, Issue 7, Pages 15-17. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; case studies; concepts; copper ores; data processing; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral exploration; mining geology; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; reserves; Solomon Islands; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 1034-6775.

Swiridiuk, P. 1998. “Exploring the Solomon Islands with Airborne Geophysics.” Exploration Geophysics (Melbourne). Volume 29, Issue 3-4, Pages 620-625. Descriptors: airborne methods; basement; Cenozoic; gabbroic composition; geophysical methods; gold ores; Guadalcanal; intrusions; magnetic methods; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral exploration; Oceania; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; topography; volcanic features; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits; Applied geophysics. Notes: Conference: ASEG 13th international Geophysical conference and exhibition. Hobart, Tasmania, Australia. Nov. 10-14, 1998. Abstract: The Island of Guadalcanal occurs as an “s” shape with each end twisted along the en echelon chain of the Solomon Islands primary fractured arc. The regional geology of Guadalcanal consists broadly of Mesozoic gabbroic and ultrabasic basement with Tertiary intrusives and sedimentary cover, and Quaternary volcanics. Helicopter borne magnetic and radiometric surveying was completed to delineate known gold-copper porphyry and epithermal style mineralization events as well as locating structurally favorable sites for the emplacement and control of mineralization. Porphyry prospects in the mountainous southern weather coast are coincident with magnetic features that correlate with IP anomalies. An intense amplitude magnetic anomaly on the southern side of Mount Turipukumahi is interpreted as an intrusive in the contact between gabbro and Kavo greywacke beds where magnetite rich skarn is likely to exist. A post volcanic event at the Sutakiki prospect is apparent as an outer halo of magnetite and potassium destruction 2 km in diameter. The event is also coincident with a circular topographic depression with magnetic ring dykes occurring within.
The topographic depression and ring dykes suggest it is a remnant of a collapsed strato-volcano, which is the possible control for present gold mineralization. Controlling mechanisms for widespread mineralization near the Gold Ridge deposit appears related to a 10 km-diameter partially collapsed strato-volcano that is evident from both the digital terrain model and Radarsat images. An inner 5 km-diameter halo of potassium anomalies is directly coincident with anomalous surface gold and copper sampling results. Other volcano occurrences evident from the Radarsat and magnetic data indicate the presence of a magmatic arc. Hot springs are located along the proposed arc, which appears to be a control of most of the mineralization that exists on the island. ISSN: 0812-3985.

Sydney University Department of Geology and Geophysics. 1957. “Geological Reconnaissance of Parts of the Central Islands of the British Solomon Islands Protectorate.” Colonial Geology and Mineral Resources. Volume 6, Issue 3, Pages 267-306. Descriptors: Cenozoic; central; geologic maps; geologic reconnaissance; igneous rocks; maps; Melanesia; metamorphic rocks; mineral resources; Oceania; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; Tertiary; Igneous and metamorphic petrology; Geologic maps. Abstract: In late 1950 and early 1951 reconnaissance surveys in the Solomon islands were carried out by C. E. Marshall, P. J. Coleman, R. L. Stanton, B. M. Levett, and F. K. Rickwood and are here reported. The areas mapped are 1) southeastern Santa Ysabel island and nearby San Jorge Island, 2) western Guadalcanal, and 3) Malaita Island. Sambani and Buena Vista Islands were examined briefly. The dominant rock types are Tertiary volcanic rocks and Tertiary-Quaternary sediments; a pre-Tertiary metamorphic complex is present on Santa Ysabel and a pre-Miocene igneous complex on Guadalcanal. For each area, physiographic, stratigraphic, structural, and economic data are given, together with photomicrographs of the rock types and colored geologic maps.


Taira Asahiko, Mann, Paul and Rahardiawan R. 2004. “Incipient Subduction of the Ontong Java Plateau Along the North Solomon Trench.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 389, Issue 3-4, Pages 247-266. Descriptors: acoustical methods; data acquisition; data processing; fracture zones; free air anomalies; geophysical methods; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; gravity methods; North Solomon Trench; ocean floors; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate collision; plate convergence; plate tectonics; reflection methods; remote sensing; satellite methods; seismic methods; seismic profiles; seismic stratigraphy; side scanning methods; Solomon Islands; sonar methods; subduction; subduction zones; surveys; trenches; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics. Abstract: The Ontong Java Plateau (OJP) in the western central Pacific is the largest and thickest oceanic plateau and one of a few oceanic plateaus converging on an island arc (Solomon island arc--SIA). To better understand the evolution of the North Solomon trench (NST), active oblique convergence between the OJP and SIA, and late Neogene development of Malaita accretionary prism (MAP), we present 850 km of multichannel seismic reflection data integrated with 7832 km (super 2) of IZANAGI side-scan
sonar coverage. We have focussed the study at the transition area between the well-defined northwestern end of the North Solomon trench and a diffusely deformed area where the trench is actively propagating in a northwestward direction. The deeper structure beneath the survey area is discussed by Phinney et al. [Oceancic plateau accretion in the Malaita accretionary prism inferred from multi-channel seismic reflection data, this issue] using deeper penetration, multichannel seismic reflection lines. The serial cross sections provided by multichannel seismic profiling combined with the IZANAGI backscattering imagery provides a time series evolution for the development of the North Solomon trench. The main evolutionary stages include (1) the incipient trench in the northern area marked by a diffuse zone of deformation above a broad arch in the crust. Deeper penetration profiles by Phinney et al. show the bulge is related to a deeper decollement fault that is propagating upward and seaward through the crust. (2) The formation of a continuous thrust front in the central area. Deeper penetration profiles by Phinney et al. show this thrust front is surface expression of the same decollement present at depth to the north. The boundary between the surface trace of the thrust and the diffuse area of deformation in the northern area is inferred as a vertical, high-angle tear fault with left-lateral offset. (3) The formation of a deep, elongate trench which controls gravitationally related slumping and sedimentation around the steep edges of the trench fill basin. The areas to the southeast are those that have undergone convergence for the longest period of time and therefore show better developed trench structures and a reduced width of the MAP. Areas to the northwest have undergone convergence for a shorter period of time and show less developed trench structures and a wide area of the MAP. ISSN: 0040-1951.


Takenouchi, Sukune. 1980. “Preliminary Studies on Fluid Inclusions of the Santo Tomas II (Philex) and Tapian (Marcopper) Porphyry Copper Deposits in the Philippines.” Nihon Shigen Chishitsu Gakkai - Society of Resource Geologists of Japan: Tokyo, Japan. Pages 141-150. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; copper ores; Cretaceous; diorites; economic geology; Far East; fluid inclusions; fluid pressure; framework silicates; geologic maps; geologic thermometry; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; igneous rocks; inclusions; Luzon; maps; Marcopper; Marinduque Island; Melanesia; Mesozoic; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits, genesis; minerals; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; P T conditions; Panguna; Papua New Guinea; Philex; Philippine Islands; plutonic rocks; porphyry; porphyry copper; processes; production; quartz diorites; salinity; Santo Tomas II; silicates; Solomon Islands; Tapian; temperature; Tertiary; Economic geology of ore deposits. Conference: Granitic magmatism and related mineralization. Tokyo, Japan. Jan. 29-30, 1979. ISSN: 0026-5209.

Takenouchi, Sukune. 1976. “Porphyry Copper Deposits of the Island Arc System from Japan to Bougainville through Philippines.” Mining and Metallur. Inst. of Japan. Tokyo, Japan |


Taylor, Brian. 1985. “Multi-National Geophysical Exploration of the Southwest Pacific.” Yearbook - Hawaii Institute of Geophysics. Hawaii Institute of Geophysics: Honolulu, HI, United States. Volume 1982-1983, Pages 8-13. Descriptors: Bauer Basin; East Pacific; East Pacific Rise; Fiji; Fiji Basin; geophysical surveys; Kavachi; Melanesia; Oceania; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; Pandora Ridge; plate tectonics; sea floor spreading; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; tectonophysics; Vanuatu Trench; Viti Levu; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Applied geophysics.


Taylor, Brian. 1982. “Active Submarine Volcano Sampled.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 63, Issue 33, Pages 609. Descriptors: basalts; igneous rocks; Kavachi; marine environment; Melanesia; Oceania; olivine basalt; petrology; sampling; Solomon Islands; stratovolcanoes; submarine environment; volcanic rocks; volcanism; volcanoes; volcanology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Taylor, Brian and Exon, N. F. 1982. “Subduction of Woodlark Spreading System at Solomon Island Arc.” Transactions of the Circum-Pacific Energy and Mineral Resources Conference. [Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources], International. Volume 3, Pages 649. Descriptors: Circum Pacific region; cores; crust; geophysical surveys; heat flow; island arcs; lithosphere; Melanesia; Oceania; oceanic crust; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; Solomon Islands; subduction; surveys; tectonophysics; Woodlark spreading system; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: Third Circum-Pacific energy and mineral resources conference. Honolulu, HI, United States. Aug. 22-28, 1982.

Taylor, Brian, Exon, Neville F. and ANZUS-SOPAC Cruise KK820316-4, Shipboard Party. 1982. “Forearc Volcanism, and Subduction without a Trench; Peculiarities of Ridge Subduction in the Woodlark-Solomons Region.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 63, Issue 45, Pages 1120-1121. Descriptors: basins; crust; faults; fore arc basins; fracture zones; magnetic anomalies; Melanesia; Oceania; oceanic crust; Pacific Ocean; plate tectonics; Pocklington Rise; rates; rift zones; sea floor spreading; Simbo Ridge; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; strike slip faults; subduction; tectonophysics; transform faults; trenches; triple junctions; volcanism; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: American Geophysical Union, 1982 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 7-15, 1982. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Taylor, FW, Mann, Paul, Bevis, MG, et al. 2005. “Rapid Fore-Arc Uplift and Subsidence Caused by Impinging Bathymetric Features; Examples from the New Hebrides and Solomon Arcs.” American Geophysical Union. Washington, DC, United States: Pages: 23. Descriptors: absolute age; Anthozoa; Australasia; Australian Plate; basins; bathymetry; Bougainville; Cenozoic; Coelenterata; crustal shortening; D' Entrecasteaux Ridge; dates; deformation; displacements; faults; fore arc basins; intraplate processes; Invertebrata; island arcs; Melanesia; neotectonics; New Georgia Group; North Fiji Basin; ocean basins; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; Quaternary; sea level changes; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; subduction; subsidence; tectonics; Th U; thrust faults; uplifts; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. Notes: Tectonics. 24; 6, 2005. ISSN: 0278-7407.

Taylor, Frederick W. and Tajima Fumiko. 1987. “Seismic Activity and Late Cenozoic Vertical Movements in the Region of Guadalcanal and San Cristobal, Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 68, Issue 44, Pages 1500. Descriptors: Cenozoic; earthquakes; faults; focal mechanism; Guadalcanal; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; San Cristobal; seismology; seismotectonics; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; tectonics; thrust faults; upper Cenozoic; vertical movements; Seismology. Notes: CN: American Geophysical Union 1987 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 6-12, 1987. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Taylor, G. A. 1959. “Notes of Savo Volcano, British Solomon Islands Protectorate.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1959/39, page(s): 5. Descriptors: craters; geologic hazards; hot springs; Melanesia; Oceania; Savo Volcano; Solomon Islands; springs; volcanism; volcanology; Quaternary geology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: Contains descriptions of the crater, associated volcanic products, and of several external thermal areas. The volcano is described as dormant and a large eruption is possible. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.


Taylor, G. R. 1983. “Manganese Oxide Mineralogy in an Exhalative Environment from the Solomon Islands.” Miner. Deposita. Springer-Verlag: Berlin, Federal Republic of Germany. Volume 18, Issue 1, Pages 113-125. Descriptors: Cenozoic; copper sulfides; economic geology; Eh; exhalative processes; exploration; ferromanganese composition; geochemistry; groutite; lava; manganese oxides; manganite; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Oligocene; ophiolite; oxidation; oxides; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; pelagic sedimentation; pillow lava; polymetallic ores; pyrite; pyrochroite; pyrolusite; ramsdellite; sedimentation; Solomon
Taylor, G. R. 1982. “A Mechanism for Framboid Formation as Illustrated by a Volcanic Exhalative Sediment.” Miner. Deposita. Springer-Verlag: Berlin, Federal Republic of Germany. Volume 17, Issue 1, Pages 23-36. Descriptors: colloidal materials; composition; exhalative processes; Florida Islands; frambooidal texture; gels; genesis; geochemistry; hydroxides; iron; magnesiomagnesioferrite; magnetic properties; Melanesia; metals; mineral data; mineralogy; minerals; Oceania; oxides; pyrite; sediments; SEM data; Solomon Islands; sulfides; textures; volcanoclastic; X ray data; Quaternary geology. ISSN: 0026-4598.

Taylor, G. R. 1977. The Ophiolite Terrain and Volcanogenic Mineralisation of the Florida Islands, Solomon Islands. Armidale, N.S.W., Australia: University of New England. page(s): variously paginated. Descriptors: Florida Islands; geochemistry; island arcs; Melanesia; mineral deposits; genesis; Oceania; ophiolite; Solomon Islands; stratabound deposits; volcanism; Economic geology; general; deposits; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Notes: Includes appendices; Access according to University regulations. GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-066059.

Taylor, G. R. 1976. “Residual Volcanic Emanations from the British Solomon Islands.” Elsevier Sci. Publ. Co.: New York, N.Y., United States. Pages 343-354. Descriptors: chemical composition; copper ores; fumaroles; genesis; geophysical surveys; heat flow; hot springs; hydrothermal alteration; hydrothermal processes; measurement; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits; genesis; Oceania; ore deposits; Paraso Island; Paraso thermal area; processes; pyrite ores; Savo Island; Simbo Island; Solomon Islands; springs; surveys; thermal waters; Vella Lavella Island; volcanism; volcanology; Applied geophysics. GeoRef


Taylor, G. R. 1974. “Volcanogenic Mineralization in the Islands of the Florida Group, B.S.I.P.” Institution of Mining and Metallurgy, Transactions, Section B: Applied Earth Science. Institution of Mining and Metallurgy: London, United Kingdom. Volume 83, Issue 816, Pages B120-B130. Descriptors: breccia; Buena Vista Island; Cenozoic; clastic rocks; copper ores; economic geology; Florida Group; genesis; Hanesavo Beds; hydrothermal alteration; igneous processes; iron ores; lava; lead ores; manganese ores; Melanesia; metal ores; metasomatism; mineral deposits; genesis; mineralization; Nggela Island; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; processes; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; sulfides; Tertiary; volcanism; zinc ores; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0371-7453.

Taylor S R, Capp Annette C, Graham A L and Blake, D. H. 1969. “Trace Element Abundances in Andesites; II, Saipan, Bougainville and Fiji.” Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology. Springer International: Heidelberg-New York, International. Volume 23, Issue 1, Pages 1-26. Descriptors: andesites; Australasia; Bougainville; Fiji; genesis; geochemistry; igneous rocks; magmas; major element analyses; Mariana Islands; Melanesia; Micronesia; Oceania; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; petrology; Saipan; Solomon Islands; trace elements; trace element analyses; volcanic rocks; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: Magma generation, two stage model proposed, upper mantle melting, sea-floor spreading, oceanic crust transport down dipping seismic plane, partial remelting. ISSN: 0010-7999.
Taylor, S. R. 1968. “Geochemistry of Andesites.” Oxford, England, and New York, Pergamon Press (Internat.Ser.Mons.Earth Sci. Volume 30), Pages 559-583. Descriptors: andesites; Asia; Australasia; basalts; Bougainville; chemical composition; composition; crust; Far East; Fiji; genesis; geochemistry; granites; granodiorites; igneous rocks; Japan; magmas; Melanesia; New Zealand; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; plutonic rocks; Solomon Islands; tholeiite; trace elements; volcanic rocks; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: Data on major and minor element abundances of andesites based on analyses of samples from New Zealand, Japan, Bougainville (Solomon Islands), and Fiji are tabulated, together with averages for granodiorite, granite, basalt, and oceanic tholeiite, and the distribution of about 40 trace elements is discussed with reference to their significance for theories of andesite origin and crustal composition. The data indicate that the calc-alkaline andesites of orogenic regions formed from a primary magma derived from the mantle rather than by fractional crystallization from a parent basalt magma or by mixing or contamination of parent basalt magma with granitic or crustal material.

Tedder, I. J. 1974. The Geology of Simbo Island and Relationship of a Sedimentary Iron and Manganese Mineralisation with Volcanism. Armidale, N.S.W., Australia: University of New England. page(s): 123. Descriptors: andesites; dacites; hot springs; igneous rocks; iron; lava; manganese; Melanesia; metal ores; metals; Oceania; reefs; sedimentation; Simbo Island; Solomon Islands; springs; volcanic rocks; volcanism; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Notes: Includes appendices; Access according to University regulations. GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-066460.


Tejada, MLG, Mahoney, JJ, Duncan, RA and Neal, C. R. 1996. “Geochemistry and Age of Ontong Java Plateau (OJP) Crustal in Central Malaita, Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 77, Issue 46, Suppl., Pages 715. Descriptors: absolute age; alkaline earth metals; Ar Ar; basalts; chemical ratios; Cretaceous; crust; dates; geochemistry; igneous rocks; isotope ratios; isotopes; lava; lead; major elements; Malaita; Melanesia; Mesozoic; metals; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; pillow lava; plateaus; rare earths; Solomon Islands; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; trace elements; Upper Cretaceous; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Isotope geochemistry; Geochronology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. CN: American Geophysical Union 1996 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 15-19, 1996. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Descriptors: absolute age; Aptian; basalts; Cretaceous; dates; East Mariana Basin; hot spots; igneous rocks; isotopes; Jurassic; Leg 192; Lower Cretaceous; mantle; mantle plumes; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Nauru Basin; Nd Nd; North Pacific; Northwest Pacific; Ocean Drilling Program; Oceania; ODP Site 1183; ODP Site 1184; ODP Site 1185; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; paleomagnetism; Pb Pb; plate tectonics; sampling; Solomon Islands; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Geochronology; Solid earth geophysics. Abstract: Age-corrected Pb, Sr and Nd isotope ratios for early Aptian basalt from four widely separated sites on the Ontong Java Plateau that were sampled during Ocean Drilling Program Leg 192 cluster within the small range reported for three earlier drill sites, for outcrops in the Solomon Islands, and for the Nauru and East Mariana basins. Hf isotope ratios also display only a small spread of values. A vitric tuff with epsilon (sub ND) (t) = +4.5 that lies immediately above basement at Site 1183 represents the only probable example from Leg 192 of the Singgalo magma type, flows of which comprise the upper 46-750 m of sections in the Solomon Islands and at Leg 130 Site 807 on the northern flank of the plateau. All of the Leg 192 lavas, including the high-MgO (8-10 wt%) Kroenke-type basalts found at Sites 1185 and 1187, have epsilon (sub Nd) (t) between +5.8 and +6.5. They are isotopically indistinguishable from the abundant Kwaimbaita basalt type in the Solomon Islands, and at previous plateau, Nauru Basin and East Mariana Basin drill sites. The little-fractionated Kroenke-type flows thus indicate that the uniform isotopic signature of the more evolved Kwaimbaita-type basalt (with 5-8 wt% MgO) is not simply a result of homogenization of isotopically variable magmas in extensive magma chambers, but instead must reflect the signature of an inherently rather homogeneous (relative to the scale of melting) mantle source. In the context of a plume-head model, the Kwaimbaita-type magmas previously have been inferred to represent mantle derived largely from the plume source region. Our isotopic modelling suggests that such mantle could correspond to originally primitive mantle that experienced a rather minor fractionation event (e.g. a small amount of partial melting) approximately 3 Ga or earlier, and subsequently evolved in nearly closed-system fashion until being tapped by plateau magmatism in the early Aptian. These results are consistent with current models of a compositionally distinct lower mantle and a plume-head origin for the plateau. However, several other key aspects of the plateau are not easily explained by the plume-head model. The plateau also poses significant challenges for asteroid impact, Icelandic-type and plate separation (perisphere) models. At present, no simple model appears to account satisfactorily for all of the observed first-order features of the Ontong Java Plateau. ISBN: 0305-8719; 1-86239-157-2.


Tejada Maria, Luisa Garcia. 1998. Geochemical Studies of Pacific Oceanic Plateaus; the Ontong Java Plateau and Shatsky Rise. Honolulu, HI, United States: University of Hawaii. page(s):
328. Descriptors: absolute age; Ar Ar; Asia; basalts; Cretaceous; crust; crystal fractionation; dates; Far East; geochemistry; igneous rocks; Indonesia; Java; Jurassic; Kwaimbaita Formation; lava; Lower Cretaceous; major elements; Malaita; mantle plumes; Melanesia; melts; Mesozoic; mid ocean ridge basalts; North Pacific; Northwest Pacific; ocean floors; ocean island basalts; Oceania; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Ramos Island; Shatsky Rise; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; thickness; trace elements; upper crust; Upper Jurassic; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; zoning; Isotope geochemistry; Oceanography. GeoRef Accession Number: 2000-057344.

Terpstra, G. R. J. 1966. “Micropalaeontological Examination of Outcrop Samples of Bougainville Island, Territory of Papua and New Guinea.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1966/66, page(s): 7. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; Buka Island; carbonate rocks; Cenozoic; Foraminifera; Invertebrata; limestone; Melanesia; microfossils; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; paleontology; Papua New Guinea; Protista; SB5608; SB5612; sedimentary rocks; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; Invertebrate paleontology. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.

Terpstra, G. R. J. 1965. “Outcrop Samples, Bougainville Island, Territory of Papua and New Guinea.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1965/110, page(s): 2. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; Foraminifera; Invertebrata; Melanesia; microfossils; micropaleontology; Miocene; Neogene; Oceania; paleontology; Papua New Guinea; Protista; SB5608; SB5612; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; 10 Invertebrate paleontology; Stratigraphy. Abstract: Foram assemblages from 16 limestone samples are dated as Lower Miocene and Middle to Lower Miocene. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.

Thomas, G. 1989. “Regional Tectonic Setting.” Publication - Geology Department and Extension Service, University of Western Australia. University of Western Australia, Geology Department and Extension Service. Perth, West: Aust., Australia. Volume 17, Pages 1-6. Descriptors: Australasia; Bismarck Archipelago; economic geology; Fiji; gold ores; Indian Plate; island arcs; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; structural geology; tectonics; Vanuatu; volcanism; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0156-9287.

Thompson, J. E. 1962. “The Pumkuna Copper-Gold Prospect, Bougainville Island, Territory of Papua and New Guinea.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1962/39, page(s): 12. Descriptors: Australasia; Bougainville; copper ores; economic geology; gold ores; lithology; Melanesia; metal ores; mineralization; Oceania; ore grade; Papua New Guinea; Pumkuna deposit; SB5612 1085; Solomon Islands; structural geology; veins; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Abstract: Gives a description of the quartz vein lode and associated mineralization. It is too small to be considered for gold mining under present conditions (1962). Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.

Thompson, J. E. 1961. “Magnetite Beach-Sands of Bougainville Island, Territory of Papua and New Guinea.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1961/97, page(s): 9. Descriptors: Aropa; Australasia; Bougainville; clastic sediments; coastal environment; economic geology; genesis; Kieta; magnetite; Melanesia; metals; mineralogy; Oceania; oxides; Papua New Guinea; sand; SB5608; sediments; Solomon Islands; titanium; Economic geology, general, deposits. Abstract:
The spectacularly high concentrations of magnetite on the eastern coast are probably too small for iron ore deposits. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.

Thompson, R. B. 1973. “Surface Expression of Mineralization in the Solomon Islands.” Bulletin - Australia, Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Australian Geological Survey Organization: Canberra, A.C.T., Australia. Volume 141, Pages 107-114. Descriptors: bauxite; copper ores; economic geology; exploration; geochemical methods; gold ores; iron ores; manganese ores; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral exploration; nickel ores; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; regional; silver ores; soils; Solomon Islands; stream sampling; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0084-7089.

Thompson, R. B. 1971. “Surface Expression of Mineralisation in the Solomon Islands.” Proceedings of the Pacific Science Congress. [Pacific Science Congress]: [location varies], United States. Volume 12, Issue 1, Pages 420. Descriptors: copper ores; economic geology; exploration; geochemical methods; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral exploration; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Solomon Islands; Economic geology of ore deposits.


Thompson, R. B. 1960. The Geology of the Ultrabasic Rocks of the British Solomon Islands. Sydney, N.S.W., Australia: University of Sydney. page(s): 326. Descriptors: igneous rocks; Melanesia; metageneric rocks; metasomatic rocks; Oceania; plutonic rocks; serpentinite; Solomon Islands; ultramafics; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Notes: Includes appendices; Access according to University regulations. GeoRef Accession Number: 2007-067339.

Tiffin, D. L. 1993. “GLORIA Surveys in Frontier Areas of the Southwest Pacific Ocean.” Geo-Mar. Lett. Springer International: Berlin-Heidelberg, International. Volume 13, Issue 2, Pages 65-70. Descriptors: acoustical methods; applications; bathymetry; Fiji; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; GLORIA; Melanesia; mineral resources; ocean floors; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Polynesia; remote sensing; Samoa; Solomon Islands; sonar methods; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; Tonga; Vanuatu; West Pacific; Oceanography; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0276-0460.


Titley, SR and Heidrick, T. L. 1978. “Intrusion and Fracture Styles of some Mineralized Porphyry Systems of the Southwestern Pacific and their Relationship to Plate Interactions.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 73, Issue 5, Pages 891-903. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; copper ores; economic geology; emplacement; evolution; Far East; fractures; genesis; geometry; Indonesia; intrusions; Irian Jaya Indonesia; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; metal ores; metallogeny; mineral deposits, genesis; mineralization; New Guinea; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; patterns; plate tectonics; plutons; porphyry copper; processes; Solomon Islands;
South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; stress; structural analysis; structural geology; structure; tectonics; tectonophysics; veins; West Pacific; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.

Tittley, S. R. 1975. “Geological Characteristics and Environment of some Porphyry Copper Occurrences in the Southwestern Pacific.” Econ. Geol. Bull. Soc. Econ. Geol. Economic Geology Publishing Company: Lancaster, PA, United States. Volume 70, Issue 3, Pages 499-514. Descriptors: absolute age; age; areal geology; Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; copper ores; economic geology; environment; genesis; Guadalcanal; igneous processes; Manus; Melanesia; metal ores; mineralization; Miocene; Neogene; New Britain; occurrence; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; Pliocene; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; upper Tertiary; zoning; Economic geology of ore deposits. ISSN: 0361-0128.


Takeda, Tatsuya. 1978. “Mineral Occurrences of the Solomon Islands: Regional Guide to Further Exploration.” Western Miner. Volume 51, Issue 6, Pages 7920. Descriptors: Mineral Exploration. Abstract: Most of the known mineral occurrences are suitable for either open pit or surface mining method, and are located on or not very distant from the coast. Guadalcanal has discoveries of significant hydrothermal mineralization in the uplifted and eroded core of the deep-seated ‘Basement Complex’. Similar discoveries have been made on New Georgia Island. OCLC: 13506316.

Taylor, Frederick W. and Tajima Fumiko. 1987. “Seismic Activity and Late Cenozoic Vertical Movements in the Region of Guadalcanal and San Cristobal, Solomon Islands.” EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union. Volume 68, Issue 44, Pages 1500. Descriptors: Cenozoic; earthquakes; faults; focal mechanism; Guadalcanal; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; San Cristobal; seismology; seismotectonics; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; tectonics; thrust faults; upper Cenozoic; vertical movements; 19 Seismology. Notes: American Geophysical Union 1987 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA. Dec. 6-12, 1987. ISSN: 0096-3941.


Taylor, W. R. 1977. “Marine Algae of the Te Vega 1965 Expedition in the Western Pacific Ocean.” Atoll Research Bulletin, (no.209), 1-16. (1977). Descriptors: geographical distribution; Algae; Pacific; aquatic plants; environmental factors; biological surveys; coastal waters; marine environments; Pacific Ocean; marine algae; Marine. Notes: TR: IR7815672. Abstract: A report of the algal flora collected during the 1965 Te Vega expedition to shallow coastal waters near Singapore, Borneo, the Philippines, the Bismarck Archipelago, New Britain Island, Bougainville Island and Guadalcanal Island is presented. Brief observations are included for each of these areas, and the algae collected are compared with findings from the literature. ISSN: 0077-5630.


Titley, S. R. 1975. “Geological Characteristics and Environment of some Porphyry Copper Occurrences in the Southwestern Pacific.” Economic Geology Bulletin. Society of Economic Geologists. May. Volume 70, Issue 3, Pages 499-514. Descriptors: absolute age; age; areal geology; Australasia; Bougainville; Cenozoic; copper ores; economic geology; environment; genesis; Guadalcanal; igneous processes; Manus; Melanesia; metal ores; mineralization; Miocene; Neogene; New Britain; occurrence; Oceania; ore deposits; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; Pliocene; porphyry copper; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; upper Tertiary; zoning. Notes: illus. incl. tables, geol. sketch maps. Abstract: The discovery of economic porphyry copper mineralization during the mid-1960s on the islands of New Guinea and Bougainville established the potential of this type of copper mineralization on certain southwestern Pacific islands. Continued exploration has resulted in the discovery of numerous porphyry copper systems. However, economic evaluation of these bodies is still pending or incomplete at this time. Only two of about 25 occurrences are presently in production. Considerable scientific interest attends the study of these deposits as they are geologically youthful and appear to be genetically related to the histories of old or active island arcs, or continental edges. Although detailed resolution of the times of certain events in the history of the Pacific Basin is lacking, there does appear to be correspondence in a general way of the probable age of those events with the ages of certain deposits. As a working hypothesis, it is suggested that times of increase of convergence rates of plates, which appear to be those times of porphyry copper evolution, are also those times of uplift and extension of the preore rock systems. Variations in the type of porphyry copper deposits known are the same as those recognized in deposits of the western hemisphere. They are composed of large volumes of rock, either porphyry or porphyry-associated, reflecting large sulfide systems with at least a hundredfold increase in the Clarke of copper. Supergene enrichment of a few has upgraded primary concentration another two to five times. Porphyritic rock types appear to be commonly quartz diorite or dacite. Alteration ranges from pyrometasomatic in carbonate wall rocks through potassic, phyllic, and propylitic alteration of intrusive and extrusive igneous rocks. Zoning of alteration seems less discrete than that generally recognized in some western hemisphere bodies and in many instances appears to be telescoped. ISSN: 0361-0128.

microscopy data; faunal list; Holocene; holotypes; Invertebrata; Mandibulata; marine environment; Melanesia; morphology; Mydionobairdia; new taxa; Oceania; Ostracoda; paleontology; Podocopida; Quaternary; shelf environment; Solomon Islands; type specimens; valves; Invertebrate paleontology. ISSN: 0262-821X.

Toba, Thomas. 2003. “Seismic Observation in the Solomon Islands.” Bulletin of the International Institute of Seismology and Earthquake Engineering. International Institute of Seismology and Earthquake Engineering: Tokyo, Japan. Volume 37, Pages 101-117. Descriptors: Australasia; Benioff zone; Bougainville; damage; earthquakes; focal mechanism; Indo Australian Plate; landslides; mass movements; Melanesia; monitoring; Oceania; Pacific Plate; Papua New Guinea; plate boundaries; plate collision; plate tectonics; San Cristobal Trench; Savo; seismicity; seismographs; short period seismographs; Solomon Islands; Solomon Plate; spatial distribution; subduction; tectonics; telemetry; tsunamis; vertical component seismographs; volcanoes; Woodlark Basin; Seismology. Abstract: The establishment of the Seismology Section in Solomon Islands was in the early 1960's. The establishment of this Section is more closely related to monitoring the active volcanoes; especially Savo which is situated some 35km northwest of the British colonial centre (Honiara) at that time. The seismicity in the Solomon Islands is relatively high. Because of this; later developments had more emphasis on earthquake monitoring. Minimal number of equipment is kept and operated by the observatory. As far as records are concerned Solomon Island Suffers little on earthquake disasters on the scale experienced in other parts of the world. Historical earthquake related disasters had occurred in 1939 and 1977. With its aims and obligations the observatory has a proposal to expand the net work as to cover the entire region of the Solomon Islands. ISSN: 0074-655X.

Todd, S. and Reynolds, D. W. 1981. “Assessment of the Potential for Peace Corps-USAID-Host Country Cooperation in Social Forestry Projects: Solomon Islands.” Peace Corps, Washington, DC. Jun. Volume: AIDPNAAL633, page(s): 45. Descriptors: Forestry; Solomon Islands; Project planning; Conservation; Structural timber; Production; Natural resources; Government policies; Peace Corps; US Agency for International Development; Agriculture Forestry; Behavioral and social sciences Administration and management; Natural resources and earth sciences Forestry; Administration and management Public administration and government. Abstract: Forestry and natural resource development goals for the Government of the Solomon Islands include environmental conservation and increased timber production. This report presents a brief overview of the institutions and activities concerning forestry and natural resource development in the Solomon Islands. The information is intended for use in developing collaborative projects between the Solomon Islands Government, the Peace Corps, and A.I.D. Notes: Funder: Agency for International Development, Washington, DC. NTIS Accession Number: PB85133320XSP.

Tolia, Donn H and Petterson, M. G. 2005. “The Gold Ridge Mine, Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands’ First Gold Mine; a Case Study in Stakeholder Consultation.” Geological Society Special Publications. Volume 250, Pages 149-160. Descriptors: gold ores; Gold Ridge Mine; Guadalcanal Solomon Island; investment; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral economics; mines; mining; negotiations; Oceania; Solomon Islands; sustainable development; Economic geology, economics of ore deposits. Abstract: The Pacific small island state of Solomon Islands gained independence from Britain in 1978. Solomon Islands has a population of around 400 000 mainly Melanesian people distributed across six moderately sized islands and hundreds of smaller islands. The traditional economy has been based on hunter-gatherer and small-scale farming activities, with the bulk of the population residing in self-sufficient rainforest and coastal villages. Melanesians have a
particularlly strong cultural attachment to land, which is considered to be within the custodianship of the community at large. Individual land ownership in the Western economic sense is largely unknown. Melanesian society and culture is strong and complex. Colonial and post-independence Solomon Islands has had to face the challenges of a transition from a traditional society to a partially urbanized society and a rapidly increasing population and changing economic drivers and dynamics. Mining and mineral development is one area of economic activity that holds the promise of generating hard currency quickly to develop the country, but that needs to be achieved in a sustainable manner. Gold Ridge is situated in Central Guadalcanal, some 22 km southeast of the country’s capital town, Honiara. Gold Ridge hosts around 1.4 million ounces of epithermal volcanic-hosted gold. Ross Mining NL began the construction of Solomon Islands’ first gold mine in 1997 and operated a highly successful gold mine between 1997 and 2000, when ethnic tensions (unrelated to the mine) closed the operations. This paper documents the painstaking negotiations and planning that took place from 1993 and particularly from 1995-1996 which paved the way forward for the development of a gold mine within a fragile tropical rainforest environment among traditional Melanesian people who had little prior knowledge of modern mining activities. ISSN: 0305-8719; ISBN: 1-86239-188-2.

Tolia, Donn H. 1992. “An Overview of Mineral Exploration in Solomon Islands.” Mineral Concentrations and Hydrocarbon Accumulations in the ESCAP Region. Volume 6, Pages 195-201. Descriptors: age; alluvium; bauxite; Circum Pacific metallogenic belt; classification; clastic sediments; construction materials; faults; gold ores; Gold Ridge Deposit; Guadalcanal; heavy minerals; island arcs; lithostratigraphy; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral exploration; mineral resources; Oceania; Phanerozoic; placers; plate tectonics; possibilities; reserves; sediments; Solomon Islands; volcanism; 26A Economic geology, general, deposits. Notes: Workshop on Epithermal gold mineralization. Tsukuba, Japan. May 9-18, 1989. OCLC: 21193408.

Tregoning, P., Tan, F., Gilliland, J., McQueen, H. and Lambeck, K. 1998. “Present-Day Crustal Motion in the Solomon Islands from GPS Observations.” Geophysics Research Letters. Oct. Volume 25, Issue 19, Pages 3627-3630. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: Island arcs; Oceanic crust; Plate tectonics; Plate convergence; Crustal adjustment; Deformation; Positioning systems; Article Geographic Terms: Philippine Sea Plate; Pacific, Solomon Islands. Pacific, San Cristobal Trench; Australia Plate; GPS; Marine. TR: CS0008878. Abstract: Site velocities in the Solomon Islands from Global Positioning System measurements spanning two years provide direct evidence of active deformation between the Pacific Plate and the Solomon Arc block. Convergence is occurring at the San Cristobal Trench at a rate of similar to 52 plus or minus 4 mm/yr, with no apparent local deformation occurring in the Australian Plate at a distance of similar to 100 km from the trench. The islands of Guadalcanal and Makira are in a first approximation moving with the Pacific Plate although there is evidence of small but significant decoupling from the Pacific Plate of 14-23 mm/yr in a direction of 75-85 degree. ISSN: 0094-8276.

Trull, Thomas W., Perfit, MR and Kurz, Mark D. 1990. “He and Sr Isotopic Constraints on Subduction Contributions to Woodlark Basin Volcanism, Solomon Islands.” Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta. Pergamon: Oxford, International. Volume 54, Issue 2, Pages 441-453. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; andesites; basalts; genesis; geochemistry; He 4 He 3; helium; igneous rocks; isotopes; lava; magmas; Melanesia; metals; mid ocean ridges; mixing; noble gases; Oceania; picrite; plate tectonics; ratios; Solomon Islands; spreading centers; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; subduction; tectonophysics; triple junctions; volatiles; volcanic rocks; volcanism; Woodlark Basin; Solid earth geophysics; Isotope geochemistry. Notes: Woods Hole Oceanogr. Inst., Contrib. No. 6720. ISSN: 0016-7037.

Trustrum N.A. Whitehouse, I.E. Blaschke, P.M. and Stephens, P.R. 1990. Flood and Landslide Hazard Mapping, Solomon Islands. IAHS. IAHS; Publication, 192 Pages: 138-138-146. Research Needs and Applications to Reduce Erosion and Sedimentation in Tropical Steeplands. Proc., Symposium, Suva, 1990 (1990). Suva Conference: 1990. Descriptors: Pacific- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; flood hazard; landslide hazard map; Cyclone Namu; evacuation strategy; map. Abstract: Cyclone Namu in 1986 highlighted the enormity of the risk to life and property on Guadalcanal from natural hazards. Buildings, roads, bridges, crops, and forests were destroyed and at least 100 people were killed. An aerial photographic reconnaissance survey of the two most severely damaged islands, Guadalcanal and Malaita, was undertaken three months after the storm. To assist the Solomon Islands Government in reducing the impact of future disasters, flood and landslide hazard mapping was later completed for eight major watersheds in northern Guadalcanal. Over 75% of the 400 km2 Guadalcanal Plain flooded in cyclone Namu and can be expected to flood in similar low probability events in the future. Siting of developments, both existing and proposed, should consider the consequences of flooding and landsliding. Evacuation strategies and relief planning also may be improved to cope with future flooding. OCLC: 22697522.


Turner, CC and Hughes, G. W. 1982. “Distribution and Tectonic Implications of Cretaceous-Quaternary Sedimentary Facies in Solomon Islands.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 87, Issue 1-4, Pages 127-146. Descriptors: Cenozoic; controls; Cretaceous; distribution; Indian Plate; island arcs; lithofacies; marine sedimentation; Melanesia; Mesozoic; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; sedimentary petrology; sedimentary rocks; sedimentation; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; structural controls; tectonophysics; West Pacific; Sedimentary petrology; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: Third Southwest Pacific Workshop symposium. Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Dec. 1979. Notes: IGCP Project No. 110. ISSN: 0040-1951.

Turner, C. C. and Ridgway J. 1982. “Tholeiitic, Calc-Alkaline and Alkaline Igneous Rocks of the Shortland Islands, Solomon Islands.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 87, Issue 1-4, Pages 335-354. Descriptors: alkalic composition; calc alkalic composition; composition; geochemistry; igneous rocks; Indian Plate; island arcs; lava; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific Plate; petrology; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; Shortland Islands; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; tectonophysics; tholeiitic composition; West Pacific; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Conference: Third Southwest Pacific Workshop

Turner, C. C., Eade, J. V., Danitofea, S. and Oldnall, R. 1977. “Gold-Bearing Sediments on the Continental Shelf Northern Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands.” South Pacific Marine Geological Notes. 1(6), 55-69. (1977). Descriptors: abundance; continental shelf; exploration; gold; Gold Ridge; marine geology; Melanesia; metals; North Guadalcanal; Oceania; oceanography; profiles; sediments; Solomon Islands; structure, sediment sampling; go; mineral resources; Solomon Islands., Guadalcanal; echo sounding. Notes: References: 6; illus. incl. tables, sketch maps. TR: IR7807290. Abstract: A nearshore bottom-sediment sampling programme and sub-bottom reflection profiling survey was carried out during November 1975 off the north coast of Guadalcanal. The aim of the project was to investigate the gold content of terrigenous sediment transported from the Gold Ridge area of central Guadalcanal by the Matepono River. A total of 88 samples were collected from the 93 stations occupied including 53 piston cores averaging 1 m in length, with a maximum length of 2.27 m, and 35 dredge samples. Subsampling of the cores and dredge samples provided 172 samples for analysis, of which 3 contained gold above the detection limit of 0.02 ppm. All are located off the present mouth of the Matepono River or its old mouth to the east. The gold-bearing samples were all -120 mesh size fractions of the total samples and had a maximum gold value of 0.66 ppm. Of four beach samples two, which are local black sand concentrates (87 ppm for the total sample) from Tetere and Koli Point contained 2.28 ppm and 0.4 ppm gold and the other two were barren. Echo soundings and sub-bottom reflection profiles were obtained along 140 km and 110 km respectively. The continental shelf occupies most of the area studied and water depths are commonly 30-66 m. The shelf is 2-5 km wide, and its outer edge is well defined by a sharp shelf break at a water depth of 55-75 m. ISSN: 0110-0408. OCLC: 6669472.


Udintsev, GB, Dmitriyev, L V, et al. 1974. “Novyye Dannyye o Zhelobakh-Razlomakh Yugo-Zapadnoy Chasti Tikhogo Okeana Translated Title: New Data on Trenches in the Southwestern Part of the Pacific Ocean.” Geotektonika. Akademiya Nauk SSSR: Moscow, USSR. Volume 2, Pages 3-14. Descriptors: Australasia; basalts; Bismarck Archipelago; composition; crust; diabase; distribution; East Pacific; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; igneous rocks; magnetic methods; Melanesia; Mussau Trench; occurrence; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanic; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; peridotites; petrology; plutonic rocks; sediments; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; southwest; St. Mathias Group; surveys; Tonga Trench; trenches; ultramafics; Vityaz Trench; volcanic rocks; Oceanography. Notes: No. 2; Abstract: Tonga, Vityaz, and Mussau trenches; structure, distribution of sediments, rocks of the oceanic crust. ISSN: 0016-853X.
Natural History of Guadalcanal

Udintsev, GB, Dmitriyev, LV, et al. 1974. “New Data on Trench-Faults in the Southwestern Pacific.” Geotectonics. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 2, Pages 65-69. Descriptors: basalts; Bismarck Isalnds; composition; crust; diabase; distribution; East Pacific; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; igneous rocks; magnetic methods; Melanesia; Mussau Trench; occurrence; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanic; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; peridotites; petrology; plutonic rocks; sediments; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southeast Pacific; southwest; St. Mathias Group; surveys; Tonga Trench; trenches; ultramafics; Vityaz Trench; volcanic rocks; Oceanography. Abstract: Tonga, Vityaz, and Mussau trenches; structure, distribution of sediments, rocks of the oceanic crust. ISSN: 0016-8521.


United Nations, Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific, Bangkok, Thailand. 1995. Guidebook to Water Resources, use and Management in Asia and the Pacific; Volume One, Water Resources and Water use. New York, NY, International: United Nations. Water Resources Series. Volume: 74, page(s): 305. Descriptors: Afghanistan; Asia; Australasia; Australia; Bangladesh; Bhutan; Brunei; Burma; Cambodia; Caroline Islands; China; Cook Islands; drainage; Far East; Fiji; French Polynesia; ground water; Guam; hydrology; Indian Ocean Islands; Indian Peninsula; Indonesia; Iran; Japan; Kiribati; Korea; Laos; Malaysia; Maldives Islands; Mariana Islands; Marshall Islands; Melanesia; Micronesia; Middle East; Mongolia; Nauru Island; Nepal; New Zealand; Oceania; Pacific region; Pakistan; Palau; Papua New Guinea; patterns; Philippine Islands; Polynesia; runoff; Samoa; Singapore; Solomon Islands; Sri Lanka; surface water; Thailand; Tonga; Tuvalu; Vanuatu; Vietnam; water management; water quality; water resources; water use; waterways; Hydrogeology. ISSN: 0082-8130.

United Nations, Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific, Bangkok, Thailand. 1985. United Nations, Econ. and Soc. Comm. Asia and Pac.. Bangkok, Thailand: Pages: 35. Descriptors: asbestos deposits; atlas; chromite ores; economic geology; economic geology maps; explanatory text; gold ores; gravel deposits; ilmenite; iron ores; magnetite; manganese ores; maps; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral resources; nickel ores; Oceania; oxides; phosphate deposits; sands; Solomon Islands; sulfur deposits; Economic geology, general, deposits. Map Scale: 1:2,000,000. GeoRef

United Nations, Food and Agriculture Organization. 1978. Unesco. Paris, France: Pages: 221. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; explanatory text; maps; Melanesia; Micronesia; New Zealand; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; soil maps; soil surveys; soils; Solomon Islands; surveys; Soils. Notes: In the collection: Soil map of the world, 1:5,000,000. 1978.; SO: 10; 1978. ISSN: 9231013599.

Natural History of Guadalcanal


Natural History of Guadalcanal

approved by the US Board on Geographic Names. Abstract: This gazetteer contains about 12,450 entries for places and features in the British Solomon Islands (11,600) and the Gilbert and Ellice Islands Colony (850), both located in the Southwestern part of the Pacific Ocean.

United States Bureau of Mines. 1974. “The Mineral Industry of Other South Pacific Islands.” U. S. Bur. Mines, Washington, D: C. Pages 1093-1103. Descriptors: 1972; Australasia; Christmas Island; economic geology; economics; Fiji; Indian Ocean; Malay Archipelago; Melanesia; mineral resources; Nauru; New Caledonia; Ocean Island; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; production; Solomon Islands; Southern Hemisphere; Vanuatu; Economic geology, general. USGS Library.


Van Deventer, J. and Postuma, J. A. 1973. “Early Cenomanian to Pliocene Deep-Marine Sediments from North Malaita, Solomon Islands.” Journal of the Geological Society of Australia. Geological Society of Australia: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 20, Part 2, Issue 2, Pages 145-150. Descriptors: Aiero River; Albian; biostratigraphy; Campanian; carbonate rocks; Cenomanian; Cenozoic; Cretaceous; deep sea; depositional environment; environment; Eocene; Foraminifera; Invertebrata; Kwai River; Lower Cretaceous; Maastrichtian; Malaita; marine; Melanesia; Mesozoic; microfossils; Miocene; Neogene; northwest; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Paleocene; paleoecology; Paleogene; planktonic; Pliocene; Protista; sedimentary rocks; sedimentation; Senonian; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Tertiary; Tomba Anticline; Upper Cretaceous; Stratigraphy. Notes: Vol. 20, Part 2. Abstract: Pelagic foraminifera, uninterrupted deep-water sedimentation. ISSN: 0016-7614.

Varol, O. 1989. “Calcareous Nannofossil Study of the Central and Western Solomon Islands.” Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources: Houston, TX, United States. Volume 12, Pages 239-268. Descriptors: algae; calcareous algae; Cenozoic; central Solomon Islands; Konggu Formation; Melanesia; microfossils; nannofossils; Neogene; Oceania; paleontology; Plantae; Pleistocene; Pliocene; Quaternary; sedimentary structures; Solomon Islands; Tanakau Group; taxonomy; Tertiary; Tetepare Formation; thallophytes; Tuara Formation; western Solomon Islands; Paleobotany.


Vedder, JG, Colwell, JB, Bruns, Terry R. and Cooper, Alan K. 1986. “Regional Offshore Geology of Central and Western Solomon Islands and Bougainville, Papua New Guinea.” AAPG Bull. American Association of Petroleum Geologists: Tulsa, OK, United States. Volume 70, Issue 7, Pages 937-938. Descriptors: Australasia; back arc basins; basins; Bougainville; Cenozoic; central Solomon Islands; Central Solomons Trough; faults; folds; fore arc basins; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Kilinailau Trench; Melanesia; Miocene; multichannel methods; Neogene; New Ireland; ocean basins; Oceania; oceanography; offshore; Oligocene; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; Papua New Guinea; sedimentary rocks; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; surveys; Tertiary; West Pacific; western Solomon Islands; Oceanography. Conference: AAPG fourth Circum-Pacific energy and mineral resources conference. SGP, Singapore, Aug. 17-22, 1986. ISSN: 0149-1423.

geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Melanesia; mineral resources; Oceania; offshore; Papua New Guinea; possibilities; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; structural geology; surveys; tectonics; western Solomon Islands; Economic geology, general, deposits; Applied geophysics.

Vedder, J. G., Tiffin, D. L., Kroenke, Loren W., Colwell, J. B., Cooper, A. K. and South Pacific Cruise, Shipboard Scientific Party, United States. 1982. “Preliminary Reports of Leg 3 Lee Cruise, Solomon Islands; Transactions of the Third Circum-Pacific Energy and Mineral Resources Conference.” Honolulu, HI, United States. Aug. 22-28, 1982. Transactions of the Circum-Pacific Energy and Mineral Resources Conference. Volume 3, Pages 645-648. Descriptors: Choiseul; Circum-Pacific region; economic geology; genesis; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; Guadalcanal; Melanesia; New Georgia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; petroleum; Santa Ysabel; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; surveys; traps. Notes: Non-USGS publications with USGS authors; References: 2; sketch maps. OCLC: 66079818.


Vedder, J. G. and Bruns, T. R. 1989. Geology and Offshore Resources of Pacific Island Arcs; Solomon Islands and Bougainville, Papua New Guinea Regions. Houston, TX, United States: Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series. Volume: 12, page(s): 329. Descriptors: areal geology; Australasia; Bougainville; Melanesia; mineral resources; Oceania; offshore; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; regional; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; tectonics; Areal geology. Notes: Individual papers are cited separately. GeoRef Accession Number: 1992-016302.


Geological Survey); data acquisition; geophysical methods; geophysical profiles; geophysical surveys; maps; Melanesia; multichannel methods; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; reflection methods; seismic methods; seismic profiles; seismic survey maps; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; USGS; West Pacific; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0196-1497.


Villaescusa, E. and Brown, E. T. 1990. “Characterizing Joint Spatial Correlation using Geostatistical Methods.” A. A. Balkema: Rotterdam, Netherlands. Pages 115-122. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; Bougainville; Brisbane Ignimbrites; deformation; distribution; Elura Mine; engineering geology; equations; field studies; fractures; joints; Melanesia; methods; models; New south Wales Australia; Oceania; Panguna Andesite; Papua New Guinea; pyrite; rock mechanics; silica; Solomon Islands; spatial distribution; statistical analysis; sulfides; variance analysis; variograms; 30 Engineering geology. Conference: International symposium on Rock joints. Loen, Norway. June 4-6, 1990. ISSN: 90-6191-109-5.

Viola, Bill; International Television Workshop and Electronic Arts Intermix. 1990s. Memories of Ancestral Power the Moro Movement in the Solomon Islands. New York, NY: Electronic Arts Intermix. Volume: 1 videocassette (37 min.), Descriptors: Solomon Islands- Social life and customs; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- Social life and customs; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Documents the collision of Western influences with cultural heritage in the Solomon Islands. The filmmaker calls it “a form of visual anthropology.” Moro, a leader on Guadalcanal, was inspired to help his people keep their traditions alive in the face of European influences. He helped revive dance, music and crafts. The film shows dances and music in Makaruka Village and visits the House of Memories where people can learn their ancestors’ traditions. Notes: System Info: VHS format. Notes: Originally produced in 1977. Responsibility: a production of the International Television Workshop; a videotape by Bill Viola. OCLC: 82457790.

Vorobeva, I A, Dewey, D, Rotvain, I. M. and Hatten, K. 1988. “Experience in Monitoring a Long-Term Precursor of Strong Earthquakes of the Burst of Aftershocks Type.” Computational Seismology: Earthquake Prediction and the Structure of the Earth. Allerton Press: New York, NY, United States. Volume 21, Pages 15-20. Descriptors: aftershocks; Asia; California; California earthquake 1984; catalogs; Caucasus; Central Asia; earthquakes; Europe; factors; interpretation; Melanesia; monitoring; Northern California; northern Japan; Oceania; precursors; prediction; seismology; Solomon Islands; South America earthquake 1985; strong motion; United States; Vanuatu; Seismology. ISSN: 0733-5792.

Wairiu, Morgan M. 2001. Erosion and Land use Effects on Soil Quality and Crop Yield on Sloping Lands in Solomon Islands. Columbus, OH, United States: Ohio State University. page(s): 176. Descriptors: agriculture; bulk density; carbon; chemical properties; erosion; forests; hydraulic conductivity; infiltration; Kolombangara Island; land use; Melanesia; Oceania; organic carbon; physical properties; properties; rainfall; runoff; soil erosion; soil treatment; soils; Solomon Islands; textures; vegetation; yields; Environmental geology. ISBN: 0-493-21780-0.
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Wall, J R D and Hansell, J. R. F. 1971. “The Soils of some Quaternary Marine Terraces in the British Solomon Islands Protectorate and their Agricultural use.” Proceedings of the Pacific Science Congress. [Pacific Science Congress]: [location varies]. United States. Volume 12, Issue 1, Pages 3. Descriptors: Cenozoic; geomorphology; Melanesia; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Quaternary; shore features; soil surveys; soils; Solomon Islands; surveys; terraces; Soils.

Wallace, Gordon D. And Rosen, Leon. 1965. “Studies on Eosinophilic Meningitis: I. Observations on the Geographic Distribution of Angiostrongylus Cantonensis in the Pacific Area and its Prevalence in Wild Rats.” American Journal of Epidemiology. Oxford: January 1965. Volume 81, Pages 52 - 62. Abstract: “...cantonensis has been found in rats from Thailand (7); Koror and Babel- thuap, Palau Islands (8); Saipan, Mariana Islands (8); Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands (9); and Vate, New Hebrides (9)...” NLM.


Wartho, Jo Anne and Kelley, Simon P. 2003. “(Super 40) Ar/ (Super 39) Ar Ages in Mantle Xenolith Phlogopites; Determining the Ages of Multiple Lithospheric Mantle Events and Diatreme Ascent Rates in Southern Africa and Malaita, Solomon Islands.” Geological Society Special Publications. Geological Society of London: London, United Kingdom. Volume 220, Pages 231-248. Descriptors: absolute age; Africa; amphibole group; Ar 40; Ar Ar; argon; chain silicates; clinoamphibole; Cretaceous; dates; diatremes; electron probe data; igneous rocks; inclusions; intrusions; isotopes; Kimberley South Africa; kibemlite; Letseng Southern Africa; lithosphere; mantle; MARID; Melanesia; Mesozoic; mica group; noble gases; Northern Cape Province South Africa; Oceania; phlogopite; pipes; plutonic rocks; richterite; sheet silicates; silicates; Solomon Islands; South Africa; Southern Africa; stable isotopes; ultramafics; xenoliths; Geochronology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: Kimberlites are extraordinary natural phenomena, ascending through the Earth's lithosphere, entraining xenoliths, to erupt at the surface within hours to days of their inception deep within the lithospheric mantle. With the realization that some Ar/Ar phlogopite grain core ages may be indicative of geological events, we have undertaken high spatial resolution Ar/Ar dating of phlogopites in xenoliths and megacrysts from Kimberley, Monastery and Letseng in Southern Africa, and Malaita, in the Solomon Islands, to test whether other mantle phlogopite cores may yield meaningful ages. Modelling of Ar diffusive loss profiles from phlogopite grain boundaries to cores provides information on both the eruption age and the duration of outgassing within the kimberlite magma, and hence yields estimates on diatreme ascent rates. The ascent durations are very similar for all of the southern African pipes studied, yielding durations of 0.9-6.9 days, assuming an average kimberlite magma temperature of 1000 degrees C. These can be compared to estimates from phlogopite xenoliths from Siberian diamond-bearing kimberlites yielding ascent durations of 2-15 hours (assuming the same magma temperature). ISSN: 0305-8719.


Webb, G. P. 1977. “The Impact of Mineral Development on Papua New Guinea, Algeria and Jamaica, and the Role of Producer Associations in Third World Development Strategies.” Association of Geoscientists for International Development, c/o Asian Institute of Technology: [location unknown], International. Pages 133. Descriptors: Africa; Algeria; Antilles; Australasia; bauxite; Bougainville; Caribbean region; concepts; copper; developing countries; development; economic geology; exploitation; Greater Antilles; Jamaica; Melanesia; metals; mineral exploration; mining geology; natural gas; North Africa; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; petroleum; Solomon Islands; West Indies; Economic geology, general. Conference: New directions in mineral development policies. Bagauda, Niger. September 8-10, 1975. ISSN: 0825-0979.

Webber, R. H. and Southgate, B. A. 1981. “The Maximum Density of Anopheline Mosquitoes that can be Permitted in the Absence of Continuing Transmission of Filariasis.” Transactions of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene. Volume 75, Issue 4, Pages 499-506. Abstract: Using two years of mosquito collections from two fixed stations on Guadalcanal it was possible to compare the average man-biting rate with the prevalence of microfilaraemia. One area was found to be free of infection while the other still had one positive case. The DDT residual spraying had caused a change in biting habits of A. farauti No. 1 allowing a greater density of mosquitoes to bite man at times when they had lower microfilaria densities. This difference was compared with the pre-spray density so that the maximum permissible number of mosquitoes biting man without transmission of filariasis taking place, could be calculated. A theoretical value for m of 19.84 had been worked out previously, this study gave a corrected observed value of m of approximately 20, very close to the calculated theoretical value. The situation studied here probably showed incomplete interruption of transmission, so it was considered preferable to recommend a figure of 0.66 average vector man-biting rate per hour indoors for the critical value. ISSN: 0035-9203.


Weber, Jon N. 1973. “Generic Diversity of Scleractinian Reef Corals in the Central Solomon Islands.” Pac. Sci. University Press of Hawaii: Honolulu, HI, United States. Volume 27, Issue 4, Pages 391-398. Descriptors: Anthozoa; Cenozoic; Coelenterata; diversity; ecology; evolution; generic; Holocene; Invertebrata; Melanesia; modern; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; paleontology; Quaternary; reefs; Scleractinia; Solomon Islands; Zoantharia; Invertebrate paleontology. ISSN: 0030-8870.

activity; igneous rocks; K Ar; Melanesia; models; Oceania; Oligocene; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; Paleogene; plate tectonics; Solomon Islands; tectonophysics; Tertiary; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. USGS Library.

Wells, Ray E. 1989. “Origin of the Oceanic Basalt Basement of the Solomon Islands Arc and its Relationship to the Ontong Java Plateau; Insights from Cenozoic Plate Motion Models.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 165, Issue 1-4, Pages 219-235. Descriptors: absolute age; basalts; Cenozoic; crust; igneous rocks; island arcs; Melanesia; movement; Oceania; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate collision; plate tectonics; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; tectonophysics; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; Solid earth geophysics. ISSN: 0040-1951.


Whatley, R. C. and Titterton R. 1981. “Some New Recent Podocopid Ostracoda from the Solomon Islands, South-West Pacific.” Revista Espanola De Micropaleontologia. Empresa Nacional: Madrid, Spain. Volume 13, Issue 2, Pages 157-170. Descriptors: Alatahermanites gen. nov.; Arthropoda; Cenozoic; Crustacea; Cytheracea; Cytherocopina; Holocene; Invertebrata; Mandibulata; Melanesia; new taxa; Oceania; Ostracoda; Pacific Ocean; paleontology; Podocopida; Quaternary; Solomon Islands; stratigraphy; Trachyleberididae; West Pacific; Invertebrate paleontology. ISSN: 0556-655X.

White, NC, Leake, M J, McCaughey, S N and Parris, B. W. 1995. “Epithermal Gold Deposits of the Southwest Pacific.” J. Geochem. Explor. Elsevier: Amsterdam-New York, International. Volume 54, Issue 2, Pages 87-136. Descriptors: Asia; Australasia; Australia; epithermal processes; Far East; Fiji; gold ores; Indonesia; Melanesia; metal ores; mineral deposits, genesis; New Zealand; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pacific region; Papua New Guinea; Philippine Islands; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; West Pacific; Economic geology, geology of ore deposits. Abstract: Since the freeing of the market price of gold in 1971, exploration for epithermal gold deposits in the southwest Pacific region has been intense, and has been encouraged by some major successes. Sufficient discoveries have been made to summarise what has been found to date, and to assess what implications may be drawn for future exploration. Data are tabulated for 137 epithermal precious metal deposits and prospects in Australia (30), Fiji (2), Indonesia (43), New Zealand (22), Palau and Yap (2), Papua New Guinea (18), the Philippines (19), and Solomon Islands (1). Comparison of the character of epithermal deposits in the southwest Pacific with those in other regions (e.g. the northeastern Pacific margin) suggests that they are in
most respects similar, with however, three differences: (i) through much of the region (especially the Philippines and Indonesia) low-sulfidation style deposits commonly show characteristics suggestive of formation at deeper levels than is typical elsewhere; (ii) high-sulfidation deposits appear to be more common than along the northeast Pacific margin; (iii) many of the largest deposits show atypical features, particularly those suggestive of a transition to porphyry or mesothermal conditions, or indicating overprinting of an epithermal system on a porphyry environment. These differences can be partly understood in terms of the tectonic setting and evolution of the volcanic arcs of the southwest Pacific, and the consequent hydrological conditions that existed during mineralization. The results of exploration in the southwest Pacific indicate that, while the principles of formation of epithermal deposits still apply, deposit models developed in other tectonic/volcanic settings should not be rigidly applied. Gold explorers should first consider the character of the geologic environment at the time of mineralization to try to predict the hydrological conditions during mineralization. Once the likely volcanic environment and paleorelief have been established, then the types, distribution, and zoning of hydrothermal alteration, coupled with observations of deposit form, vein textures and mineralogy, will allow a judgement to be made on the level of system that is now exposed, and on the probable controls that localized mineralization. The very dynamic character of the tectonic and volcanic setting throughout much of the southwest Pacific has resulted in deposits that reflect changes in the environment of the deposit, in some cases even while the deposition was occurring. This has produced some deposits with unusual characteristics which could not have been predicted before exploration. 

White, PA and Scott, D. M. 1988. “Examination of Sounding Curve Extrapolation used by the Offset Wenner System.” Geophys. Prospect. European Association of Exploration Geophysicists: The Hague, Netherlands. Volume 36, Issue 2, Pages 194-200. Descriptors: electrical methods; equations; exploration; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; mathematical models; Melanesia; numerical analysis; Oceania; resistivity; Solomon Islands; sounding; surveys; Economic geology, general, deposits; Applied geophysics. Abstract: The Offset Wenner resistivity sounding system provides for the extrapolation of the Wenner resistivity curve. The extrapolation technique was applied to data measured in the solomon Islands and it is shown to be unreliable. An accurate method of predicting the reliability of extrapolation using measured resistances could not be found. ISSN: 0016-8025.

White, W. C. and Warin, O. N. 1959. “The Phosphate Deposits of Bellona Island.” Canberra, A.C.T., Australia: Geoscience Australia. Record - Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Volume: 1959/47, page(s): 10. Descriptors: Bellona Island; chemical composition; economic geology; genesis; lithology; Melanesia; Oceania; phosphate deposits; sedimentary petrology; Solomon Islands; well logs; Economic geology, geology of nonmetal deposits. Abstract: Contains detailed descriptions of the phosphate material and of the individual phosphate deposits, and a discussion of their formation. Notes: Available at open file centres. ISSN: 0811-062X.

Whitehead, N E, Devine, S D and Leach, B. F. 1986. “Electron Spin Resonance Dating of Human Teeth from the Manu Burial Ground, Taumako, Solomon Islands.” N. Z. J. Geol. Geophys. Department of Scientific and Industrial Research (DSIR): Wellington, New Zealand. Volume 29, Issue 3, Pages 359-361. Descriptors: absolute age; archaeology; C 14; carbon; Cenozoic; Chordata; dates; electron paramagnetic resonance; EPR spectra; Eutheria; geochronology; Holocene; Hominidae; Homo; Homo sapiens; isotopes; Mammalia; Melanesia; methods; Oceania; Primates;
Quaternary; radioactive isotopes; Solomon Islands; spectra; spectroscopy; stratigraphy; Taumako; teeth; Tetrapoda; Theria; Vertebrata; Quaternary geology; Geochronology. ISSN: 0028-8306.


Wesnousky, Steven G., Astiz, Luciana and Kanamori, Hiroo. 1986/12. “Earthquake Multiplets in the Southeastern Solomon Islands.” Physics of the Earth and Planetary Interiors. Volume 44, Issue 4, Pages 304-318. Descriptors: body waves; earthquakes; elastic waves; epicenters; equations; focal mechanism; Guadalcanal Island; guided waves; Indian Plate; mathematical models; Melanesia; numerical analysis; Oceania; P-waves; Pacific Plate; Rayleigh waves; San Cristobal Island; seismic waves; seismology; seismotectonics; Solomon Islands; southeastern Solomon Islands; spatial distribution; subduction; surface waves; tectonics. Abstract: The 350-km stretch of the Solomon Islands trench that lies adjacent to the islands of Guadalcanal and San Cristobal has been the site of 10 large shallow earthquakes since 1966: June 15, 1966 doublet (Ms = 7.7,7.3), May 20, 21, 1977 quadruplet (Ms = 6.7,7.5,7.5,7.5), November 4, 5, 1978 doublet (Ms = 6.9,7.1), and two single events on October 23, 1979 (Ms = 7.1) and February 7, 1984 (Ms = 7.7). Analyses of P-wave first-motions, aftershock distributions, P-wave-forms recorded at epicentral distances of 30° to 90° on the WWSSN, and 256 s-period Rayleigh-wave spectra obtained from the IDA and GDSN networks are used to examine the source characteristics of the events. The close temporal association and large size of earthquakes precluded collection of useful seismograms for the latter of the two 1966 events and the second and third events of the 1977 sequence. P-waveforms analyzed show smooth traces that can be modeled with simple trapezoidal source-time functions located at shallow (15–45 km) depths. Focal mechanisms are consistent with oblique subduction of the Indian plate beneath the Pacific plate at about N73°E. Estimates of seismic moment for individual events range from 0.2 to 2.3 × 1027 dyne-cm. Average stress drops of the sequences are estimated to range between 10 and 40 bars. This section of island arc may have ruptured in a similar sequence of earthquakes during the 1930’s. Conversion of the cumulative seismic moment to displacement and averaging over 40 years suggests a convergence rate of about 4.5 cm year 1, about one half of the rates that have been assessed on the basis of seafloor magnetic lineations. ISSN: 0031-9201.


American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 80, Issue 46, Suppl., Pages 684. Descriptors: anisotropy; Asia; Australian Plate; Banda Arc; body waves; earthquakes; elastic waves; epicenters; Far East; Indonesia; IRIS network; Java; Kermadec Islands; Malay Archipelago; mantle; measurement; Melanesia; New Guinea; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; plate boundaries; plate tectonics; polarization; S waves; seismic waves; Solomon Islands; subduction; subduction zones; Sunda Arc; upper mantle; Vanuatu; wave splitting; West Pacific; West Pacific Ocean Islands; Solid earth geophysics. Conference: American Geophysical Union 1999 fall meeting. San Francisco, CA, United States. Dec. 13-17, 1999. ISSN: 0096-3941.

Williams, DJ and Walker, L. K. 1984. “Laboratory and Field Strength of Mine Waste Rock.” National Conference Publication - Institution of Engineers, Australia. Institution of Engineers, Australia: Sydney, N.S.W., Australia. Volume 84/2, Pages 118-122. Descriptors: analysis; Australasia; Bougainville; design; engineering geology; laboratory studies; materials, properties; Melanesia; mining; Oceania; open pit mining; Papua New Guinea; pressure; rock mechanics; shear strength; slope stability; Solomon Islands; spoils; strength; stress; surface mining; triaxial tests; waste disposal; Engineering geology. Conference: Fourth Australia-New Zealand conference on geomechanics. Perth, West. Aust., Australia. May 14-18, 1984. ISSN: 0313-6922.

Williams, SN and Stoiber, R. E. 1985. “Degassing of 4 Active Volcanoes in PNG, Sept. 1983.” Volcano News. Michigan Technical University, Department of Geology and Geological Engineering: Houghton, MI, United States. Volume 19-20, Pages 10. Descriptors: Australasia; Bagana; Bougainville; degassing; eruptions; Langila; Manam; Melanesia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; SO2; Solomon Islands; Ulawun; volcanism; volcanoes; volcanology; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. ISSN: 0271-8936.


Willis, Paul. 1987. “A Fish-Eating Crocodile from the South Pacific.” Angus & Robertson Publishers: North Ryde, N.S.W., Australia. Pages 35-37. Descriptors: Archosauria; Cenozoic; Chordata; Crocodylia; Crocodylidae; Diapsida; diet; Gavialis papuensis; marine environment; Melanesia; morphology; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Pisces; Pleistocene; Quaternary; Reptilia; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Tetrapoda; Vertebrata; Vertebrate paleontology. ISSN: 0207156646.


Winterer, Edward L., Riedel, William R, Broennimann Paul, et al. 1971. “Site 64.” Initial Reports of the Deep Sea Drilling Project. Texas A & M University, Ocean Drilling Program: College Station, TX, United States. Volume 7, Part 1, Pages 473-606. Descriptors: biostratigraphy; cores; Deep Sea Drilling Project; DSDP Site 64; Equatorial Pacific; geophysical surveys; Leg 7; marine geology; Melanesia; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanography; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; sedimentary petrology; Solomon Islands; Solomon Rise; stratigraphy; Surveys; West Pacific; Oceanography. ISSN: 0080-8334.

“Witches’ Broom Disease of Sweet Potato.” 1990. FAO Plant Prot. Bull. Volume 38, Issue 1, Pages 51. Descriptors: Article Subject Terms: witches’ broom; Article Taxonomic Terms: Ipomoea batatas; mycoplasma-like organisms; Solomon Islands. disease control. Abstract: Witches’ broom disease of sweet potato is reported to occur on Guadalcanal, Ngella and St Anna Islands of the Solomon Islands. Measures being carried out to control the disease include distribution of clean planting material and roguing. ISSN: 0254-9727.


Wong, Florence L, Greene, H. Gary and CCOP/SOPAC 1982 Cruise Scientific Staff. 1984. “Hydrocarbon- and Mineral-Resource Investigations in the Southwest Pacific.” U.S.Geological Survey Circular. U. S. Geological Survey: Reston, VA, United States. Volume C 0938, Pages 37-48. Descriptors: economic geology; energy sources; Fiji; geophysical methods; geophysical surveys; gravity methods; international cooperation; magnetic methods; Melanesia; mineral resources; ocean floors; Oceania; oceanography; Pacific Ocean; Polynesia; seismic methods; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; South Polynesian Pacific; Southwest Pacific; surveys; Tonga; USGS; Vanuatu; West Pacific; 26A Economic geology, general, deposits; Oceanography. ISSN: 0364-6017.


Woodhead, Jon and Brauns Michael. 2004. “Current Limitations to the Understanding of Re-Os Behaviour in Subduction Systems, with an Example from New Britain.” Earth Planet. Sci. Lett. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 221, Issue 1-4, Pages 309-323. Descriptors: alkaline earth metals; Australasia; basalts; Bismarck Archipelago; Bismarck Sea; Cenozoic; chemical composition; crust; fractional crystallization; geochemistry; igneous rocks; island arcs;
Natural History of Guadalcanal

isotope ratios; isotopes; lead; magmas; mantle; Manus Basin; mass spectra; Melanesia; metals; mid ocean ridge basalts; Nd 144 Nd 143; neodymium; New Britain; Oceania; oceanic crust; Os 188 Os 187; osmium; Pacific Ocean; Papua New Guinea; Pb 206 Pb 204; plate tectonics; plates; platinum group; Quaternary; radioactive isotopes; rare earths; Re 187 Os 188; rhenium; slabs; Solomon Islands; South Pacific; Southwest Pacific; spectra; Sr 87 Sr 86; stable isotopes; strontium; subduction; subduction zones; thermal ionization mass spectra; tholeiitic composition; upper mantle; volatiles; volcanic rocks; West Pacific; 02D Isotope geochemistry; Igneous and metamorphic petrology. Abstract: Existing data for subduction-related magmas reveal a considerable diversity in both Re and Os concentrations and osmium isotope ratios. Unfortunately, with current knowledge, deciphering the relative roles of mantle, subducting slab and crust in generating these signatures remains a difficult undertaking. Fractional crystallisation imparts a significant influence on both Re and Os abundances which, in the case of Re, can be corrected for, although the extent to which Re volatility influences measured concentrations remains to be firmly established. With these provisos in mind, Re does appear to be more mobile in “fluid-dominated” low-K tholeiite-type arcs. A compilation of existing isotope data strongly suggests that Os isotope signatures in continental arcs are compromised by interactions within the crust rendering them largely unsuitable for the estimation of subduction fluxes. Within intra-oceanic arcs, taking lavas from New Britain as an otherwise well-constrained example, estimation of the local upper mantle isotopic composition remains a major impediment to the quantification of slab-derived Os fluxes.

ISSN: 0012-821X.


Wright, L D, Thom B G and Higgins, R. J. 1980. “Wave Influences on River-Mouth Depositional Process; Examples from Australia and Papua New Guinea.” Estuarine and Coastal Marine Science. Academic Press: London, United Kingdom. Volume 11, Issue 3, Pages 263-277. Descriptors: Australasia; Australia; beach ridges; Bougainville; embayments; erosion; estuaries; geomorphology; Jaba River; landform evolution; Melanesia; New South Wales Australia; Oceania; Papua New Guinea; patterns; sedimentary petrology; sedimentation; Shoalhaven River; shoals; shore features; Solomon Islands; streams; swash bars; transport; Hydrogeology. ISSN: 0302-3524.

Wright, Robert, Flynn, Luke P., Garbeilm Harold, Harrismm Andrew, J. L. and Pilger,
Eric. 2004. “MODVOLC; Near-Real-Time Thermal Monitoring of Global Volcanism.” J. Volcanol. Geotherm. Res. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 135, Issue 1-2, Pages 29-49. Descriptors: algorithms; Atlantic Ocean Islands; computer networks; Earth; Earth Observing System; global; hot spots; imagery; information systems; Internet; Kavachi; lava flows; lava lakes; Melanesia; Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer; MODIS instrument; monitoring; Montague Island; Mount Belinda; Oceania; orbital observations; remote sensing; satellite methods; Scotia Sea Islands; Solomon Islands; South Sandwich Islands; thermal anomalies; thermal emission; volcanism; volcanoes; World Wide Web; Quaternary geology; Applied geophysics.

Abstract: MODVOLC is a non-interactive algorithm developed at the Hawaii Institute of Geophysics and Planetology (HIGP) that uses low spatial resolution (1-km pixel-size) infrared satellite data acquired by the Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer (MODIS) to map the global distribution of volcanic thermal anomalies in near-real-time. MODVOLC scans the Level-1B MODIS data stream, on a pixel-by-pixel basis, for evidence of pixel and sub-pixel-sized high-temperature radiators. Once a hot spot has been identified its details (location, emitted spectral radiance, time, satellite observation geometry) are written to ASCII text files and transferred via FTP to HIGP, from where the results are disseminated via the internet (http://modis.higp.hawaii.edu). In this paper, we review the underlying principles upon which the algorithm is based before presenting some of the results and data that have been obtained since its inception. We show how MODVOLC reliably detects thermal anomalies at a large number of persistently and sporadically active volcanoes that encompass the full range of common eruptive styles including Erebus (Antarctica), Colima (Mexico), Karymsky (Kamchatka), Popocatepetl (Mexico), Etna (Italy), and Nyiragongo (Democratic Republic of Congo), amongst others. We also present a few cautionary notes regarding the limitations of the algorithm and interpretation of the data it provides. ISSN: 0377-0273.

Wright, L. D. 1989. “Dispersal and Deposition of River Sediments in Coastal Seas; Models from Asia and the Tropics.” Netherlands Journal of Sea Research. Netherlands Institute for Sea Research: Den Helder, Netherlands. Volume 23, Issue 4, Pages 493-500. Descriptors: aerial photography; Asia; Australasia; Bohai Bay; Bougainville; China; coastal environment; deltaic environment; Empress Augusta Bay; Far East; Huang He; Jaba River; marine sedimentation; marine sediments; Melanesia; North Pacific; Northwest Pacific; Oceania; Pacific Ocean; Papua Gulf; Papua New Guinea; Purari River; remote sensing; sedimentation; sediments; Shandong China; Solomon Islands; stream transport; suspended materials; West Pacific; Yellow Sea; Oceanography. ISSN: 0077-7579.


X.Y.Z

Xu, Zhengyu. 1993. Large Earthquake Doublets and Fault Plane Heterogeneity in the Northern Solomon Islands Subduction Zone and Heterogeneity Spectrum and Structural Scale- Anisotropy in the Upper Crust Revealed by the German Continental Deep-Drilling (KTB) Holes. Santa Cruz, CA, United States: University of California, Santa Cruz. Descriptors: anisotropy; crust; deep drilling; drilling; earthquakes; fault planes; heterogeneity; KTB; Melanesia; Oceania; seismotectonics; Solomon Islands; subduction zones; tectonics; upper crust; Seismology. GeoRef Accession Number: 1996-049850.

Yanagihara, RA, et al. 1991. Solomon Islands Variants of Human T-Lymphotropic Virus. Patent Application. page(s): 26. Descriptors: Bioassay; HTLV I infections; Western blotting; Nucleic acid hybridization; Humans; Base sequence; Patent applications; HTLV I; Solomon Islands; Medicine and biology Microbiology; Government inventions for licensing Biology and medicine. Abstract: The invention relates to a human T-cell line persistently infected with a Solomon Island HTLV-I-related virus, for example, the cell line, and to the infecting virus, for example, the HTLV-I-SI variant. The cell lines of the invention grow better and produce more virus than the other known T-cell line persistently infected with an HTLV-I variant from that area. The invention also relates to vaccines for use in humans against infection with and diseases caused by HTLV-I and variants thereof. The invention further relates to a variety of bioassays for the detection of infection by HTLV-I and variants thereof. Notes: Filed 28 Feb 91; NTIS: PB92230119XSP.

Yoneshima S, Mochizuki K, Araki E, Hino R, Shinohara, M. and Suyehiro K. 2005. “Subduction of the Woodlark Basin at New Britain Trench, Solomon Islands Region.” Tectonophysics. Elsevier: Amsterdam, Netherlands. Volume 397, Issue 3-4, Pages 225-239. Descriptors: basins; crust; earthquakes; elastic waves; focus; New Britain Trench; ocean bottom seismographs; ocean floors; oceanic crust; Ontong Java Plateau; Pacific Ocean; plate collision; plate tectonics; seismic waves; seismicity; seismographs; Shortland Basin; Solomon Islands; stress; subduction; subduction zones; trenches; triple junctions; velocity; West Pacific; Woodlark Basin; Solid earth geophysics; Seismology. Abstract: The Woodlark Basin, located south of the Solomon Islands arc region, is a young (approximately 5 Ma) oceanic basin that subducts beneath the New Britain Trench. This region is one of only a few subduction zones in the world where it is possible to study a young plate subduction of several Ma. To obtain the image of the subducting slab at the western side of the Woodlark Basin, a 40-day Ocean Bottom Seismometer (OBS) survey was conducted in 1998 to detect the micro-seismic activity. It was the first time such a survey had been performed in this location and over 600 hypocenters were located. The seismic activity is concentrated at the 10-60 km depth range along the plate boundary. The upper limit just about coincides with the leading edge of the accretionary wedge. The upper limit boundary was identified as the up-dip limit of the seismogenic zone, whereas the down-dip limit of the seismogenic zone was difficult to define. The dip angle of the plate at the high seismicity zone was found to average about 30 degrees. Using the Cascadia subduction zone for comparison, which is a typical example of a young plate subduction, suggests that the subduction of the Woodlark Basin was differentiated by a high dip angle and rather landward location of the seismic front from the trench axis (30 km landward from the trench axis). Furthermore, as pointed out by previous researchers, the convergent margin of the Solomon Islands region is imposed with a high stress state, probably due to the collision of the Ontong Java Plateau and a rather rapid convergence rate (approximately 10 cm/year). The results of the high angle plate subduction and inner crust earthquakes beneath the
Shortland Basin strongly support the high stress state. The collision of the Ontong Java Plateau, the relatively rapid convergence rate, and moderately cold slab as evidenced by low heat flow, rather than the plate age, may be dominantly responsible for the geometry of the seismogenic zone in the western part of the Woodlark Basin subduction zone. ISSN: 0040-1951.


Yoshinobu, Uemura and Masaki, Hisamatsu. 2005. “A List of the Butterflies Collected on Guadalcanal and Malaita Islands, the Solomon Islands, Donated by Hiroyoshi Maruyama.” Ibarakiken Shizen Hakubutsukan Kenkyu Hokoku. Issue 8, Pages 115-119, 121-125. Journal title: 茨城県自然博物館研究報告. Translated title: Bulletin of Ibaraki Nature Museum. Descriptors: butterfly; Guadalcanal; Malaita; Soloman Islands; Maruyama H.; ガダルカナル島; マライタ島. Abstract: A list of the butterflies from Guadalcanal and Malaita Islands, the Solomon Islands, donated by Hiroyoshi Maruyama is presented. This list includes a total of 38 species in five families of butterflies. In Japanese. ISSN: 1343-8921.

Zelt, Barry C, Taylor, Brian and Goodliffe, Andrew M. 2001. “3-D Crustal Velocity Structure at the Rift Tip in the Western Woodlark Basin.” Geophys. Res. Lett. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, United States. Volume 28, Issue 15, Pages 3015-3018. Descriptors: arrival time; Australasia; body waves; continental margin; elastic waves; geodynamics; geophysical methods; inverse problem; marine methods; Melanesia; ocean bottom seismographs; Oceania; ophiolite; P waves; Papua New Guinea; plate tectonics; rifting; sea floor spreading; seismic methods; seismic waves; seismographs; Solomon Islands; three dimensional methods; traveltime; velocity structure; Woodlark Basin; Solid earth geophysics; Applied geophysics. ISSN: 0094-8276.

History of Guadalcanal

The Battle of Guadalcanal, August 1942–February 1943, was a series of World War II land and sea clashes between Allied and Japanese forces on and around Guadalcanal, one of the southern Solomon Islands, in the South Pacific. Strategically, possession of a Guadalcanal air base was important to control of the sea lines of communication between the United States and Australia. Japanese troops had landed on Guadalcanal on July 6, 1942, and had begun constructing an airfield there. The ensuing six-month Guadalcanal campaign proved to be the turning point of the Pacific war. On August 7, in the Allies’ first major offensive in the Pacific, 6,000 U.S. Marines landed on Guadalcanal and seized the airfield, surprising the island’s 2,000 Japanese defenders. Both sides then began landing reinforcements by sea, and bitter fighting ensued in the island’s jungles. The Japanese forces on the island reached a peak strength of 36,000 troops by October, but they were unable to overwhelm the Americans’ defensive perimeter and retake the airfield. Six separate naval battles were also fought in the area as the navies of both sides sought to land reinforcements. By November, the U.S. Navy was able to land reinforcements on Guadalcanal faster than were the Japanese, and by January 44,000 U.S. troops were on the island. By February 1943 the Japanese, badly outnumbered, were forced to evacuate 12,000 of their remaining troops from Guadalcanal. Along with the naval Battle of Midway (June 3–6, 1942), the fighting on Guadalcanal marked a turning point in favour of the Allies in the Pacific War. Operationally, the Battle of Guadalcanal was notable for the interrelationship of a complex series of engagements on the ground, at sea, and in the air. Tactically, what stood out was the resolve and resourcefulness of the U.S. Marines, whose tenacious defense of the air base dubbed Henderson Field enabled the Americans to secure air superiority.

The Japanese lost a total of 24,000 men killed in the Battle of Guadalcanal, while the Americans sustained 1,600 killed, 4,200 wounded, and several thousand dead from malaria and other tropical diseases. The various naval battles cost each side 24 warships: the Japanese lost 2 battleships, 4 cruisers, 1 light carrier, 11 destroyers, and 6 submarines, while the Americans lost 8 cruisers, 2 heavy carriers, and 14 destroyers.13 But by far the most significant loss for the Japanese was the decimation of their elite group of naval aviators. Japan after Guadalcanal no longer had a realistic hope of withstanding the counteroffensive of an increasingly powerful United States.14


ERDC 10/4/2007 1
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Adams, Clay; Salomon, Henry; Hanser; Richard; Rodgers, Richard; Graves, Leonard, et al. 1998. Victory at Sea. [Collection 1]. Norwalk, CT: Video Bargains. Volume: 1 videocassette (185 min.). Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations; Midway, Battle of, 1942; Coral Sea, Battle of the, 1942; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii), Attack on, 1941; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Western Front; World War, 1939-1945- Propaganda; World War, 1939-1945- Causes; World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations, Japanese; World War, 1939-1945- United States- Public opinion; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations- Submarine; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Mediterranean Region; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Malta; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; World War, 1939-1945- War work- United States; World War, 1939-1945- Equipment and supplies; Anti-submarine warfare; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Features the World War II U.S. naval operations on land and sea from 1939 to 1945 as recorded in footage taken by Allied and enemy combat photographers. Design for war: Details the events occurring at the beginning of the war, including the German invasion of Europe, the spread of propaganda, and the development of American opinion about the European war. Focuses on the Battle of the Atlantic, 1939-1941, to emphasize the nature of fighting a war on and under water and the importance of the defense of Britain’s waterways. Also examines the role that North American Armed Forces played in defending Britain, Greenland and Iceland. Pacific boils over: Details the philosophy behind Japan’s aggression on Pearl Harbor and examines the factors that allowed Japan to take the U.S. naval base by surprise. Discusses the breakdown of U.S. and Japanese negotiations before the attack. Shows the peaceful activities taking place at Pearl Harbor prior to the attack, the destruction of the attack and its impact on the war. Sealing the breach: Rare live-action film footage from the Allied and Axis governments show American and Allied naval operations against Axis


Leonard Graves; music, Richard Rodgers; music arranger, Robert Russell Bennett; technical advisor, Captain Walter Karig, USN; coordinator, Robert W. Sarnoff. Various editions and formats: film, video, DVD, etc. OCLC: 32598838; 84046348.


“Adventures of Bob Ballard.” 1992. Department of the Navy, Washington, DC. Descriptors: Hawaii; Guadalcanal Atoll; Audiovisual aids; Scientists; Naval personnel; Biographies; Oceanographic research; History; Naval history; Titanic vessel; Bismark ship; World War II; Robert Ballard; Behavior and society Education law and humanities; Ocean technology and engineering; Military sciences; Library and information sciences Reference materials. Notes: Betacam SP. Audiovisual. Abstract: This production is developed around Mr. Ballard’s discovery of the Titanic and the Bismark, as well as his work in the Great Lakes in 1990 and his work on the Juan De Fuca Ledge 150 miles off Washington State in August 1991. Program also contains material developed around Mr. Ballard’s work in October, 1991 and the Spring of 1992 in locating the Hornett and PT-109. Contains history of the Navy early in World War II, including Pearl Harbor and events leading up to Guadalcanal. Features a segment with Ballard in uniform speaking to high school class about Science and the Navy. Notes: 25 Nov 92. 1 Betacam SP.NT: Intended audience: Junior and Senior High School students and the general public. Cleared for all TV. This Betacam SP has a running time of 09 minutes. NTIS: AVA20347BCSPXSP.

Air Force History Support Office Bolling AFB DC. 1992. Pacific Counterblow: The 11th Bombardment Group and the 67th Fighter Squadron in the Battle for Guadalcanal: An Interim Report. Ft. Belvoir; Defense Technical Information Center. Pages: 63. Descriptors: Humanities And History; Military Operations, Strategy And Tactics; Military History; Aerial Warfare; Air Force Operations; Army Aviation; Bombing; South Pacific Ocean; Second World War; Fighter Aircraft; Air Force; Military Forces(Foreign); Military Commanders; Australia; Shipping; Bomber Aircraft; Pacific Ocean Islands; New Zealand; Army Air Force; Guadalcanal; B-17 Aircraft; P-39 Aircraft; P-400 Aircraft; B-26 Aircraft; Tulagi; Solomon Islands; Millard F Harmon; Laverne G Saunders; 67th Fighter Squadron; 11th Bombardment Group. Abstract: “Pacific Counterblow” tells the story of the Battle for Guadalcanal (1942), focusing on the operations of the 11th Bombardment Group and the 67th Fighter Squadron. Months after the devastation of Pearl Harbor, U.S. forces had crushed the Japanese fleet at Midway and then moved to seize the initiative. Army Air Force commanders in the Pacific sought to prevent the enemy from severing Australia’s supply lines. So the B-17s of the 11th Bomb Group and the P-39s and P-400s of the 67th Fighter Squadron, flying from makeshift bases at Espiritu Santo and Henderson Field, began grueling attacks on Japanese shipping between Rabaul, New Britain and the Solomon Islands. After several months of bitter fighting, American forces gained control of Guadalcanal, positioning them to swing forward beyond Rabaul to New Guinea. Notes: Wings at War Series, No. 3. General Info: Approved for Public Release; OCLC: 64436766.

“The Allied Campaign against Rabaul (Pacific Ocean).” 1946. 01 Sep 1946. Descriptors: *Military Operations; *Military Strategy; *Military Planning; Military Intelligence; Japan; Pacific Ocean; Bomb Damage. DTIC: ADB227667.

Allmon, William B. 1996. “Marine Sergeant Al Schmid Lost an Eye while Heroically Manning a Machine Gun in Blood Fighting..” World War II. Volume 11, Issue 3; Pages 14. Descriptors: Schmid, Al; World War, 1939-1945- Battlefields; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands. Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: Sep96, Vol. 11 Issue 3, p14; Subject Term: Schmid, Al; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945- Battlefields; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 3p; Illustrations: 1bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 2126. Abstract: Relates the experience of US Marine Sergeant Al Schmid in bloody fighting on Guadalcanal during World War II. Personal background; Assault on Guadalcanal; Japanese defenses; Armed encounter in which Schmid was injured; Citation given to Schmid; Life after the war. ISSN: 0898-4204.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Anon. 2005. “From Action Plan to Action on the Ground.” ITU News. Issue 7, Pages 15-17. Descriptors: Internet; Personal communication systems; Education; Information technology; Personnel training; Project management. Abstract: Samoa and the Solomon Islands will have multipurpose community telecenters, which should be functioning as telephone and Internet access points for not only personal communications, but also educational, business, and community applications. In cooperation with Samoa’s Ministry of Communications and Information Technology, International Telecommunication Union (ITU) will install five MCTs in rural district on the island of Upolu, serving a total of about 21,000 people who mainly work in agriculture and fishing. The ITU project will design and equip ten MCTs on the island of Guadalcanal and support staff training. In Samoa and the Soloman Islands, the business model is based on partnership between government and the telecommunication operators. ISSN: 1020-4148.


“Army Air Forces in the War Against Japan, 1941-1942.” 1945. Aug 1945. Volume: ADB311823, Descriptors: *Military History; *Air Force; *United States; *Army Aviation; *Japan; *Second World War; India; China; Aleutian Islands; Pearl Harbor; Midway Island; New Guinea; Philippines; Army Personnel; Army Operations; Australia; Hawaii; Army Aircraft. Database: DTIC.

Arts and Entertainment Network; Greystone Communications; Flight 33; History Channel (Television network); A & E Home Video and New Video Group. 2007. Shootout! Seasons 1 and 2. 1. New York, N.Y: A&E Home Video; Distributed by New Video. Volume: 1 videodisc (ca. 188 min.), Descriptors: Assault weapons; Shooters of firearms; Iraq War, 2003-- Campaigns- Iraq-Fallujah; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Gunfights- West (U.S.); World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Germany; Television programs; Documentary television programs; Historical television programs; Documentary- Television series; Historical- Television series; Videorecording; DVD video; Videodisc. Abstract: Veterans of the world’s most memorable conflicts tell never-before-heard stories of rescues, sniper attacks, ambushes, and hand-to-hand combat. Legendary battles are re-created shot by shot. Coupled with eyewitness reports from military experts and soldiers from World War II to Iraq, these blow-by-blow re-creations of history’s bloodiest confrontations take viewers to the front lines. From Iwo Jima to the Tet Offensive to the Siege of Baghdad. D-Day: Fallujah- Guadalcanal- Wild west- WWII assault on Germany. Notes: System Info: DVD, region 1; Dolby Digital stereo. subatomic digital. Notes: Title from set and disc containers. Originally broadcast on the History Channel, 2005-2006. Other Titles: Shootout!; Seasons 1 and 2. Disc 1; Shootout! (Television program); Responsibility: A&E
Television Networks; produced by Greystone Communications, Inc. Flight 33 for History Channel. OCLC: 85484769 and 70276992.


Auer, William C. 2004. William C. Auer Papers, [2004?]. Descriptors: 1 folder. World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Area; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Auer, William C; United States. Army. Bombardment Group, 5th; Manuscript; Picture. Abstract: General description of the collection: The Auer papers include a completed World War II Veterans Survey questionnaire which comments on motivation for enlisting, training, leadership, recreation activities, daily life in combat, and recall for service in Korea. Notes: Contains the following type(s) of materials: questionnaire. Bio/History: Technical Sergeant William C. Auer enlisted in the Army Air Corps on 5 July 1940 in Pottsville, PA. He took basic training at Fort Slocum, Rye, NY, Fort Dix, NJ, and Hickam Field, HI, training as a draftsman. He saw combat in Hawaii, Guadalcanal, Munda Point, and the Admiralty Islands. He returned to the United States before Victory in Europe (VE) Day because he had accumulated enough points. He was assigned to the Eastern Technical Training Command in Saint Louis, MO. He was discharged on 25 May 1945, then joined the reserves in 1947. He was called up in July, 1950 and assigned to the 91st Reconnaissance Technical Squadron at Barksdale Air Force Base, LA. He used money from the GI Bill to buy a home. General Info: Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute/ Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. A finding aid to this collection can be found at. Other Titles: Papers of William C. Auer; Auer papers. OCLC: 56721240.

Austerman, Wayne R. 2004. “Ordnance Oddity Served Pacific War Soldiers.” World War II. 02. Volume 18, Issue 6; 6, Pages 18-22. Descriptors: Browning automatic rifle; Garand rifle; Springfield rifle; World War, 1939-1945; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands. Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: Feb2004, Vol. 18 Issue 6, p18; Subject Term: Browning automatic rifle; Subject Term: Garand rifle; Subject Term: Springfield rifle; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 3p; Illustrations: 1c; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 1823. Abstract: Provides information on the model 1903 Springfield rifle used by U.S. troops in Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands during World War II. Evaluation of the rifle’s performance during World War I; Flaw in the rifle’s design; Modification of the rifle; Selection of Garand as the successor of Springfield in 1937. Provides information on the model 1903 Springfield rifle used by U.S. troops in Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands during World War II. Evaluation of the rifle’s performance during World War I; Flaw in the rifle’s design; Modification of the rifle; Selection of Garand as the successor of Springfield in 1937. ISSN: 0898-4204.

Avion Park and Jaguar Home Video. 1999. This is Guadalcanal. Louisville, KY: Avion Park; Distributed by Jaguar Home Video. Volume: 1 videocassette (40 min.); 1/2 in. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Notes: System Info: VHS format; Hi-Fi Stereo. OCLC: 44139800.


Bacon, Lloyd; Baxter, Anne et al. 2005. The Fighting Sullivans. Tulsa, OK: VCI Entertainment. Volume: 2 videodiscs (112 min.), Descriptors: Brothers- Drama; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943- Drama; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean- Drama; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations- Drama; Feature films; War films; Historical films; Biographical films; War- Feature; Historical- Feature; Biographical- Feature; Videorecording; DVD video; Videodisc. Abstract: The five Sullivan brothers were close since their childhood in Iowa. They went to war together and all five died together when their ship, the U.S.S. Juneau, was sunk in the Pacific. Notes: Named Corp: Juneau (Antiaircraft cruiser)- Drama. Notes: Based on a true story. Special features: Disc 1: New digital transfer; original theatrical trailer; actor photo gallery; actor bios; Disc 2: A tribute to the Sullivan Brothers include: Service records of the Sullivans, Family photo album, Letters to the Navy, A letter from Joseph, A letter from Franklin D. Roosevelt, and The freedom flag; The Grout Museum; The U.S.S. Juneau - The last muster list, Eyewitness account by Victor Gibson and Memorials; The survivors include: Interview with Frank Holmgren, Speeches by Wyatt Butterfield and Lt. Cmdr. Lester Zook and a list of survivors. Participants: Anne Baxter, Thomas Mitchell, Selena Royle, Edward Ryan, Trudy Marshall, John Campbell, Ward Bond. Audience: Not rated. Responsibility: 20th Century Fox; screenplay by Mary C. McCall; story by Edward Doherty and Jules Schermer; produced by Sam Jaffe; directed by Lloyd Bacon. Director of photography, Lucien Andriot; editor, Louis Loeffler; music, Cyril J. Mockridge. Note: Connect to reviews of this title online. OCLC: 62869203 and 70263559. URL: http://www.mrqe.com/lookup?fighting+sullivans


Baker III, A. D. 2005. “Historic Fleets.” Naval History. 08. Volume 19, Issue 4, Pages 12-13. Descriptors: Cargo ships; Shipbuilding; Torpedo bombers; Warships; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands. Notes: Naval History; Article; Source Information: Aug 2005, Vol. 19 Issue 4, p12; Subject Term: Cargo ships; Subject Term: Shipbuilding; Subject Term: Torpedo bombers; Subject Term: Warships; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 2p; Illustrations: 2bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 986. Abstract: The article reports that the supply ship Alchiba had already seen considerable service in the Pacific when on November 25, 1942 off Lunga Point, Guadalcanal, at least one torpedo slammed into her. Laid down by Sun Shipbuilding and Drydock at Chester, Pennsylvania, on August 15, 1938, the U.S. Maritime Commission Type C-2 freighter Hull Number 21 was one of six sisters built for use by Moore-McGormack Lines, each powered by a single Sun-built, 6,000 brake horsepower, British-designed Doxford diesel. ISSN: 1042-1920.

Baldwin, Hanson Weightman. 1942. “Flight to Guadalcanal.” N. Y. Times Magazine. November 1. Pages 3-5+. Descriptors: Aviation/Transpacific flights; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Oceania; Guadalcanal; South Sea Islands. Notes: Illustration; Map. ISSN: 0028-7822.


Ballard, Robert D. Keach, Stacy; National Geographic Society (U.S.) and National Geographic Video. 1993. The Lost Fleet of Guadalcanal. Washington, D.C: National Geographic Society. Volume: 1 videocassette (approx. 106 min.), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Video recordings for the hearing impaired; Dewey: 940.54; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Fifty years after the famous battle, the brutal events are retraced as the underwater graveyard of 50 warships is explored. Includes memories of those who fought and survived. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Closed captioned for the hearing impaired. With a special introduction by former President George Bush. “51588.”/ Participants: Robert Ballard; narrator, Stacy Keach. Responsibility: produced by the National Geographic Society. Produced and directed by Robert Kenner; written by Kage Kleiner; photographed by Robert Elfstrom; edited by Leonard Feinstein; music by Mark Adler. OCLC: 31769433.


Barnes, Michael Schreiber, Liev; Cineflix Productions; WNET (Television station: New York, N.Y.), et al. 2006. Dogfight Over Guadalcanal. Arlington, VA: PBS Home Video. Volume: 1 videodisc (ca. 60 min.), Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations, Japanese; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations; Fighter plane combat; Fighter pilots; Documentary television programs; Video recordings for the hearing impaired; Documentary- Television series; Historical- Television series; War- Television series; Videorecording; DVD video; Videodisc. Abstract: In the summer of 1942 a Japanese and an American ace fighter pilot faced off during the dogfight over Guadalcanal. The American was shot down over enemy lines, but escaped. Memoirs and forensics examine and recreate the dramatic story. Notes: System Info: DVD, region 1, widescreen (16:9, enhanced) presentation; Dolby Digital stereo. Notes: Audience: Not rated. Other Titles: Secrets of the dead (Television program); Responsibility: a Cineflix Production in association with Thirteen/WNET New York, National Geographic Channels International and Discovery Canada; a Cineflix/Windfall presentation; directed by Michael Barnes. Narrator, Liam Schreiber.OCLC: 77517134.

Barr, William Thomas. 2002. “Interview with William Thomas Barr [9/24/2002]” Veteran’s History Project. Excerpt: Sally Ainsley: So, you were stationed at first then in Traverse City. What was your mission there? William Thomas Barr: The base at Traverse City was working on a secret project television-guided bombs which were actually plywood airplanes guided by remote control. And we had proceeded to a point where we could plunge these airplanes by pre-arrangement flying them remotely into haystacks by pre-arrangement with the farmers. And we got to be very accurate at it, but everybody in Traverse City knew what was going on about this so-called secret project, so the Navy decided to build a Navy ... another base in some state where there were many fewer people around. Sally Ainsley: And where was that? William Thomas Barr: That was, it wound up being in a place called Burns Flat in Oklahoma. The name of the Navy Base was NAS Naval Air Station Clinton. At Burns Flat there was just simply an intersection and the nearest town of any size was 22 miles away. So it was an ideal spot to operate in secrecy. Sally
Ainsley: And what happened eventually to the television-guided bomb program? William Thomas Barr: Oh, after we had been there about a year or so, I believe it was in June of 1943, they sent a squadron of these television-guided airplanes to Bougainville, which is near Guadalcanal in the South Pacific and they launched them against the Japanese, but with their bombs on the plywood airplanes they only went about 1-10 mph, so the Japanese easily shot them out of the sky and the whole thing was a bust and President Roosevelt was so upset that he cancelled the entire program. There were actually four different bases in the United States but the whole program was cancelled and Roosevelt said, “Send them all out to sea.” Library of Congress. http://lcweb2.loc.gov/diglib/vhp-stories/loc.natlib.afc2001001.10509/transcript?ID=sr0001


Natural History of Guadalcanal

Islands- Guadalcanal; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Marines- New Jersey- Biography. Notes: Cover title. Includes bibliographical references (p. [8]). OCLC: 55180912.


Beckman, K. B. 2002. “Personality and Strategy: How the Personalities of General MacArthur and Admiral King Shaped Allied Strategy in the Pacific in World War Two. Master’s Thesis.” Army Command and General Staff College, Fort Leavenworth, KS. 31 May. Pages: 104. Descriptors: Theater level operations; Decision making; Bibliographies; Theses; Personality; Second world war; Military strategy; Leadership; Conventional warfare; Officer personnel; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics; Administration and management Management practice. Abstract: This thesis examines the impact that the dominant personalities of General Douglas MacArthur and Admiral Ernest King had in shaping Allied strategy in the Pacific during the Second World War. The concept of dominant personality is defined as containing three essential elements: arrogance, tenacity, and supreme competence. The lives of MacArthur and King are examined, demonstrating that the actions of each consistently reflected these characteristics, allowing them to dominate those around them. Three key decisions from the Pacific war are scrutinized for the impact of one or both of these dominant personalities. King and MacArthur affected these decisions in different ways. In the first, the decision to initiate carrier raids against Japan in early 1942, King acted unopposed in pushing his audacious plans through. The second decision was to invade Guadalcanal (Operation Watchtower) in August 1942. King and MacArthur drove this decision in parallel competition, each striving to begin offensive operations and each desiring to be in control. Finally, the long competition between the Central and Southwestern Pacific drives for primacy, culminating with the debate over invading Luzon or Formosa, is examined. In this case, MacArthur and King pursued mutually exclusive courses and stalemate nearly resulted. Notes: Product reproduced from digital image. Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited. DTIC: ADA 406385. OCLC: 70153478.


Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Juvenile (no specific ages); Non-musical recording; LP recording.
Notes: A dramatization, with music and sound effects, adapted from the book of the same title by
R.W. Tregaskis. With the author’s The Alaska gold rush. LCCN: r 67-803; r 61-2183; OCLC:
4744783; 14710968.

1945). Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945-
Naval operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan; World War, 1939-1945-
Personal narratives, American. Abstract: Collection contains a wide range of items relating to his
service in the U.S. Navy, the bulk of the material dating from World War II (1941-1945). Includes
personal papers, photographs, journals, and letters; Navy documents, maps, and photographs; and
newspaper and magazine articles from the 1950s to 2001, including post-war publications about the
ships on which Bennink served, and an account of the Japanese experience during World War II.
Ephemera include his uniform, helmet, an ashtray made out of cartridge casings, buttons, and
medals. Notes: 2 document boxes. 1 oversized photograph box. 1 garment box. 2 boxes of
Guam (Cruiser) Heywood (Troop transport) Livermore (Destroyer) Sangamon (Tanker);
Genre/Form: Correspondence- Massachusetts- Cambridge. Ephemera- Massachusetts- Cambridge.
Journals (accounts)- Massachusetts- Cambridge. Maps- Massachusetts- Cambridge. Personal
papers- Massachusetts- Cambridge. Photographs- Massachusetts- Cambridge. Notes: Bio/History:
Bennink was born in 1917, and graduated from Harvard University and the Navy ROTC in 1938,
when he was commissioned as an ensign in the U.S. Naval Reserve that June. He reported for
active duty on 6 June 1941, and over the next four years he served as a communications officer on
board the USS Heywood in Iceland and Alaska, on the USS Sangamon in Guadalcanal, and on the
USS Guam at Leyte Gulf and Okinawa. After post-war stints with the Naval Reserve aboard the
USS Livermore in 1948 and 1949, Bennink was transferred to the Volunteer Reserve in 1952 and,
after twenty years of naval service, the Retired Reserve in 1958. General Info: Finding aid is
OCLC: 71014304.

Bereuter, Robert, L. and United States Army Infantry School. 1943. Operations of the 27th
Infantry Regiment (25th Infantry Division) on Guadalcanal, 10-26 January 1943 (Guadalcanal
Campaign). Descriptors: vp. World War, 1939-1945- United States- Personal narratives, American;
World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Guadalcanal; United States. Army- 25th Infantry Division-
27th Infantry Regiment; Government publication; National government publication. Abstract: Type
of operation described: Regiment in the attack. Notes: Personal experiences of a Regimental S-2.
Advanced Infantry Officers Course. Submitted as a course requirement at the United States Army
Infantry School (USAIS), Fort Benning, GA. Includes bibliographical references. Responsibility:
by MAJ Robert L. Bereuter. OCLC: 56971821.

Bertin, Claude. 1980. La Lutte Pour La Pacifique. Gen?: Famot. Descriptors: World War,
1939-1945; Pacific; Ocean. Abstract: Contents: 1. Le drame de Pearl Harbour- 2. La rue de
de Claude Bertin. 5 v.: ill. maps; 18 cm. Includes bibliographies. Accession Number: 001132651.

250; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal. Notes:

1 v. (various foliations); World War, 1939-1945- United States- Regimental histories; Guadalcanal,
Battle of Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; United States. Marine Fighter Squadron, 121st- History.

Bilello, Jack Jaffe, Sam; Bacon, Lloyd; McCall, Mary C., et al. 1999. The Fighting Sullivans. Asheville, NC: Distributed by Ivy Classics Video; Roan Group. Volume: 1 videodisc (110 min.), Descriptors: Five Sullivan brothers- Drama; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943- Drama; Feature films; World War, 1939-1945- Drama; Waterloo (Iowa)- Biography- Drama; Videorecording; DVD video; Videodisc. Abstract: Describes the true story of the five Sullivan brothers from Waterloo, Iowa, whose togetherness becomes final as they share a watery grave off Guadalcanal when a torpedo sinks their cruiser. Notes: System Info: DVD; Dolby digital mono. Notes: “This Roan Group DVD includes Commentary by Jack Bilello.” Originally produced as motion picture in 1944. Participants: Anne Baxter, Thomas Mitchell. Responsibility: Realart Pictures, Inc. screen play by Mary C. McCall, Jr. produced by Sam Jaffe; directed by Lloyd Bacon. Story, Edward Doherty, Jules Schermer; director of photography, Lucien Andriot; film editor, Louis Loeffler; music, Cyril J. Mockridge. OCLC: 42996138.


“Blood in the Water.” 1999. Newsweek. March 8, 1999. Volume 133, Issue 10, Pages 49. Subject Term: Autobiography; Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Shark attacks; Geographic Subject: Esperance, Cape (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 1/2p; Illustrations: 1c. Abstract: Presents the author’s recollection of his experience in the United States Navy’s battle for Guadalcanal in October, 1942. His escape from the burning destroyer USS Duncan during the Battle of Cape Esperance; Loss of a companion to sharks. Presents the author’s recollection of his experience in the United States Navy’s battle for Guadalcanal in October, 1942. His escape from the burning destroyer USS Duncan during the Battle of Cape Esperance; Loss of a companion to sharks. Abstract: Guadalcanal, 1942: In the 1960s, Roy Boehm founded the SEALs, the Navy’s commando unit. But
at Guadalcanal, the brutal, six-month battle for control of a key island in the Solomon chain, he was just a teenage sailor floundering in the Pacific. “The plunge overboard drove me into dark, warm waters. I fought to hold on to my senses. If I passed out, I would just keep sinking. I was 18, and I had shrapnel in both legs and my skull. I struggled to the surface and saw my destroyer, the USS Duncan, burning and adrift, struck 56 times by Japanese shells during the Battle of Cape Esperance near Guadalcanal. It was Oct. 12, 1942. I saw a wooden spar and grabbed it. To my surprise, a Japanese sailor was hanging on to the other end. I reached for my knife as we eyed each other. We remained frozen with indecision for a long moment. I eased off my end of the spar. He eased off his end. We swam away as fast as we could in opposite directions. Both of us had had all of the fight we wanted. As luck would have it, I splashed into someone else floating face up. It was [my shipmate] Stanley Dubiel, raving, out of his mind with pain. His legs were badly burned; I had thrown him overboard before I jumped into the ocean. Looking back over my shoulder as I swam, I saw the Duncan chasing me. The ship was like a giant flamethrower. Still steaming wildly in a tight circle, blazing like a Viking’s funeral pyre, she bore straight down on me, growing larger as she approached, spewing fire and smoke from every opening. The ship rushed by so near I thought I could reach out and grab her. I held on to Dubiel and his life jacket with a drowning man’s grip as the wake caught us and drove us tumbling underwater. When we surfaced, after what seemed like hours, the world had grown quiet and warm and peaceful. I thought I must have died. Then I spotted the Duncan, flaming away across the sea in the distance. I must have passed out for a minute. We had gone into the drink about midnight. Now it was daylight. I had been swimming for hours, towing Dubiel. “Keep going” played itself over and over in my brain. Somehow I became aware that Dubiel and I were no longer alone. I saw fins cutting the surface like blades of knives. The sharks closed in. One of the fish, larger and bolder than the others, darted in for a bite. My foot was bleeding. The shark’s fin disappeared beneath the surface. I spun in the water, my eyes searching frantically. I screamed, Dubiel screamed. His body exploded out of the water. He twisted violently, then he was gone, wrenched from my grip. I swam like a madman. I figured by all rights I should have been dead. I heard Dubiel’s screams for years afterward.” ISSN: 0028-9604.


Botts, Robert H., interviewee. Van Ellis, Mark D. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 1997. Oral History Interview with Robert H. Botts, 1997. Descriptors: Veterans- Wisconsin- Madison; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Atomic bomb; World War, 1939-1945- Health aspects; World War, 1939-1945- Psychological aspects; Malaria; World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan- Okinawa Island; Combat; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Guam; Tank warfare; Cassette recording. Abstract: The Madison, Wis. veteran discusses his pre-war and World War II service as a tank commander with the 4th Regiment of the 6th Marine Division island hopping during the Pacific campaign. He talks about enlisting in the Marines because he wanted to serve in China, being issued supplies, guard duty at the Naval air station at North Island (California), and learning of the attack on Pearl Harbor. After being transferred to the 11th Defense Battalion, he left for overseas in 1942. Landing at Guadalcanal Island, he comments on participating in the fighting for the island, the effectiveness of training, bathing and washing clothes in a river, interacting with


British Directorate of Overseas Surveys, United Kingdom. 1974. Descriptors: explanatory text; Florida Islands; geomorphology; Guadalcanal Island; hydrogeologic maps; land use; land use maps; landform evolution; mapping; maps; natural resources; physiographic maps; planning; soils; soils maps; Solomon Islands; 14 Geologic maps. Notes: In the collection: Land resources of the British Solomon Islands Protectorate. 1974. 1974. Notes: Land Resource Study 18; LAT: S100000;


inscription, Brodie refers to Mack Morriss, Yank magazine correspondent. Notes: 1 drawing; 
Genre/Form: Drawings- American- 1940-1950. Notes: Signed lower right: Sgt. Howard Brodie, 
Guadalcanal '43. Inscribed below image: Mack & I later witnessed the terrific damage our artillery 
had inflicted on the Japs along the Kokumbona Road. General Info: May be restricted: For 
information see “Howard Brodie” LCCN: 2004-661740.

Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military 
personnel; Bombers- 1940-1950; Soldiers- American- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; 
Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Drawing shows a World War II bombardier, stripped to the 
waist, sitting at the turret of an airplane bomber during the Battle of Guadalcanal. Notes: 1 
drawing; Genre/Form: Drawings- American- 1940-1950. General Info: May be restricted: For 
information see “Howard Brodie” LCCN: 2004-661728.

Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1943. [Soldiers Going Up 
the Matanakau River [e.g. Mataniko River] - Guadalcanal - 3 Sketches]. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, 
Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military personnel; Boats- 1940- 
1950; Rivers- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; Soldiers- American- Solomon Islands- 
Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Sketch shows a boat filled with 
soldiers going up the Mataniko River in the jungle during the World War II Battle of Guadalcanal. 
Soldiers pole the boat forward. Notes: 1 drawing; Genre/Form: Drawings- American- Color- 1940-
be restricted: For information see “Howard Brodie” LCCN: 2004-661768.

Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1943. Soldiers Going Up 
the Matanakau River [e.g. Mataniko River] - Guadalcanal - 3 Sketches. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, 
Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military personnel; Boats- 1940-
1950; Rivers- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; Soldiers- American- Solomon Islands-
Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; Graphic; Original artwork. Notes: 1 drawing; Genre/Form: Drawings- 
Signed lower right: Sgt. Howard Brodie '43 Guadalcanal. General Info: May be restricted: For 
information see “Howard Brodie” http://lcweb.loc.gov/rr/print/res/435%5Fbrod.html LCCN: 

Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1943. Top Turret B-17. 
Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military 
personnel; Soldiers- American- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; Bombers- 1940-1950; 
Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Drawing shows a gunner, from behind, standing in the turret 
of an airplane bomber during World War II. He is visible from the shoulders down and nude from 
the waist up. Howard Brodie was the staff artist for Yank magazine during the Battle of 
Guadalcanal in 1942 and 1943. Notes: 1 drawing; Genre/Form: Drawings- American- 1940-1950. 
Notes: Signed: Sgt. Howard Brodie '43 Guadalcanal. For similar drawing see: DRWG/US - Brodie, 
no. 51 (A size). General Info: May be restricted. LCCN: 2004-661773.

Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1943. [Infantrymen 
Carrying Back Jap Prisoner Shelter-Half - was Told Jap Couldn’t or Wouldn’t Walk and Wanted to 
Die, Horses’ Neck Front]. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World 
War, 1939-1945- Military personnel; Prisoners of war- Japanese- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal-
1940-1950; Soldiers- American- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; War casualties- 
Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Sketch shows 
three American soldiers carrying a Japanese prisoner-of-war in a sling from the Horses’ Neck front
of the World War II Battle of Guadalcanal. Notes: 1 drawing; Genre/Form: Drawings- American-1940-1950. Notes: Signed lower right: To an inspiration, Isabel, with love - Howard 2/3/43. Inscribed below image: To Miss Isabel Parker - 3825 Scott St. - San Francisco. General Info: May be restricted: For information see “Howard Brodie”


Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1942-1943. Impressions Coming Down the Matanakau [e.g. Mataniko] River with Wounded - Guadalcanal. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military personnel; Boats- 1940-1950; Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Sketch shows two scenes of a boat carrying wounded soldiers down the Mataniko River on Guadalcanal island during the World War


Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1942-1943. Aid Station 3rd BN 132 Front. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Medical aspects; Military medicine- 1940-1950; Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Drawing shows an earthen bunker with a small entrance used as an aid station near the front during the Battle of Guadalcanal of World War II. Notes: 1 drawing; Genre/Form: Drawings- American-
Natural History of Guadalcanal

1940-1950. Notes: Inscribed below image: closest to front lines than ever before 150 yeds from front. General Info: May be restricted: For information see “Howard Brodie” LCCN: 2004-661752.


Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1942-1943. PFC Sal De George Manhattan Asst. Gunner. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military personnel; Artillery (Weaponry)- 1940-1950; Soldiers- American- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- 1940-1950; Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Rough sketch shows American soldier Sal de George kneeling on the ground operating a box during the
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Brodie, Howard, artist. Place: Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1942-1943. [Soldiers Going Up the Matanakau [i.e. Mataniko] River. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military personnel; Boats- 1940-1950; Graphic;


Notes: 1 drawing; Genre/Form: Drawings- American- 1940-1950. General Info: May be restricted: For information see “Howard Brodie” LCCN: 2004-661736.


Brodie, Howard artist Place: Vanuatu; Espiritu Santo Island; Solomon Islands and Guadalcanal. 1942-1943. Sgt. Howard J. Brodie #19086947 “Yank” Staff Artist - N.Y.C. Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Military personnel; World War, 1939-1945- Prisoners- Japanese- Vanuatu- Esp ritu Santo Island; Artillery (Weaponry)- 1940-1950; Soldiers- 1940-1950; Graphic; Original artwork. Abstract: Sketchbook drawings show: scenes from a Navy Kingfisher airplane, ground artillery, a jeep, soldiers and
Japanese prisoners-of-war at Espiritu Santo and Guadalcanal islands in the South Pacific in December 1942 and January 1943 prior to the Battle of Guadalcanal. Howard Brodie was a sketch artist for the newspaper Yank. Notes: 1 sketchbook; Genre/Form: Sketchbooks- 1940-1950.

General Info: May be restricted: For information see “Howard Brodie” LCCN: 2004-661651.


Brown, Lewis Thomas and Saints at War. 2000. Papers. Descriptors: 1 folder (4 pages). World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Manuscript. Abstract: Includes a brief biography of Brown, emphasizing his desire to serve his country and his zeal, as an active member of the LDS Church, for missionary work. Describes the naval battle near Guadalcanal in which Brown was killed when an enemy shell hit the bridge of his ship, the U.S.S. San Francisco. Photograph shows Brown in full military dress. Notes: Genre/Form: Memoirs. Photographs. Notes: Bio/History: Brown served in the U.S. Navy during World War II in 1942. He achieved the rank of lieutenant, junior grade. General Info: Open for research. Items were donated by Afton DeHaan, sister of the late veteran Lewis Brown, to the Saints At War Project in 2001. OCLC: 80667397.


Camp, Dick. “Leatherneck: Star-Crossed Translator.” Abstract: Second Lt Merle Ralph Cory was an expert cryptanalyst, who, at the height of patriotic fervor, joined the Corps and went to war. His comprehensive knowledge of the American code-breaking successes caused many to second-guess the decision that allowed him to risk capture by the Japanese. He was killed while serving in the Goettge Patrol. “The last survivor, Platoon Sergeant Frank L. Few, made a mad dash for the water. As he looked back, “swords flashed in the morning sun.” Cory's old friend Van der Rhoer was told, "The swimmer saw a [Japanese] soldier thrust his bayonet into Cory's body, stretched out on the sand where he had first fallen." Cory was listed as missing in action on 13 Aug. 1942, which was changed to killed in action (body not recovered) a year later for administrative purposes by the Secretary of the Navy. His wife, Carolyn, wrote to Van der Rhoer informing him that she had received the “bad-news telegram.” A headstone was erected in New Tacoma Cemetery, Tacoma, Wash. See: http://www.military.com/NewContent/0,13190,Leatherneck_Translator_080404,00.html

Intelligence, 1945. ISBN: 0160381339 (no.1); 0160381347 (no.2); 0160381304 (no.3); 0160381355 (no.4); 0160381320 (no.5); 0160381312 (no.6).


Chaney, William Marshal. 1940-1986. Papers, 1940-1986. Descriptors: 19 items. World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii), Attack on, 1941; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Tuttle, W. B; Chaney, William Marshall; United States. Army. Infantry Regiment, 147th; Camp Shelby (Miss.); Manuscript. Abstract: Collection consists of photocopies of letters, articles, documents, and the short stories to which they refer, “Pearl Harbor Day - 7 December 1941” and “Ah! Yes: we remember,” written by William M. Chaney. The stories tell of his service in the 147th Infantry Regiment from Cincinnati and action in the South Pacific during World War II. Also included are an article on Camp Shelby, Mississippi with its 1940 Christmas menu and 1941 chapel dedication, a 1945 press release from the 147th, regimental histories of the 147th, and biographical sketches of William Marshal Chaney and of Col. W.B. Tuttle, commander of the 147th Regiment during World War II. Notes: Other Titles: Ah! Yes: we remember. Pearl Harbor Day - 7 December 1941. OCLC: 41527676.


Clemens, Martin. 1966. “Coastwatcher’s Diary.” American Heritage. February. Volume 17, Pages 104-110. Descriptors: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943; Military intelligence; World War, 1939-1945/Personal narratives; Guadalcanal, Battle of, 1942-1943. ISSN: 0002-8738.

Clubb, Timothy L. 1996. “CACTUS Airpower at Guadalcanal.” Army Command and General Staff Coll Fort Leavenworth KS. Volume: ADA313107, 155 Pages. Descriptors: *Military History; *Amphibious Operations; *Military Capabilities; *Air Logistics Support; *Air Power; *Marine Corps Operations; Military Strategy; Lessons Learned; Military Doctrine; Assault; Theses; Japan; Limitations; Military Tactics; Reconnaissance; Shortages; Strategic Areas. Abstract: This study examines the role of the CACTUS Air Force during the battle for Guadalcanal. Hurriedly planned and executed, Guadalcanal was the first U.S. ground offensive in the Pacific. Starting as an unopposed amphibious assault, the operation turned into a six-month-long air, land, and sea battle to secure the island. Operating from an expeditionary airfield, the U.S. Marine Corps employed air power as its primary means of defending the island. The CACTUS Air Force conducted the campaign with limited air assets and was plagued by a variety of critical shortages, yet it managed to play a key role in the U.S. victory. This study focuses on the specific contributions of air power during this campaign. It examines the role of air power in reconnaissance, deep, close, and rear area air operations. It also examines the factors that influenced how air assets were employed and the
changes in U.S. concepts about air operations that were made to conduct the air campaign. CACTUS planes assisted in defeating several major Japanese attacks. However, the daily presence and routine operations of the CACTUS Air Force were its key contributions. CACTUS Air’s most important contribution was its ability to deny the Japanese air superiority and disrupt their freedom of action in the lower Solomon Islands. Notes: Approved for Public Release. DTIC. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA313107.


Collins, J. Lawton; United States; Army Training and Doctrine Command and Office of the Command Historian. 1994. Operations of the 25th Infantry Division on Guadalcanal. Descriptors: 228 pages; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands); World War, 1939-1945- Regimental histories-United States; United States. Army. Infantry Division, 25th- History; Government publication; National government publication. Notes: “This is a reprint of an undated original... prepared by the 25th Infantry Division and resulted from a series of conferences held by the Division Commander and his officers and NCO’s following the completion of the Guadalcanal action.” Foreword by J. Lawton Collins, Division Commander. Funding: Sponsored by the Office of the Command Historian, HQ, TRADOC, Fort Monroe, VA. Photocopy. 28 cm. DTIC: ADA288405; OCLC: 34044312.

Combs, Marcus. 1900s. The U.S.S. San Francisco at the Battle of Guadalcanal on the Night of November 12-13, 1942. San Francisco, Calif.: Golden Gate National Recreation Area. Descriptors: 11 pages, 3; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; U.S.S. San Francisco Memorial (San Francisco, Calif.); San...


Cotts, Christopher D. “Decisive Halt 1942: Guadalcanal and Implications for American Military Strategy in the 21st Century.” Air Command and Staff College, Maxwell AFB, AL. Volume: ADA398334, 54 Pages. Descriptors: *Military Strategy; *Battles; *Second World War; Warfare; Air Force; Combat Effectiveness; United States; Military Equipment; Theses; Military Capabilities; Enemy; *Guadalcanal Campaign. Abstract: The recent Report of the Quadrennial Defense Review outlines an increased need to execute Halt Phase Operations, defined as the halt of an enemy invasion of friendly territory before the enemy reaches his strategic goals. In order to meet this challenge, the QDR panel proposes a force that relies on the Revolution in Military Affairs to leverage increased military capability from a smaller force. Other agencies, in particular the United States Air Force, have proposed that Halt Phase operations can best be executed by modern airpower. Unfortunately, this assertion is not borne out by current military combat models. Therefore, this study examines a historical example, the World War II Guadalcanal campaign, to examine the Halt Phase and develops some critical issues for this key phase of battle. First, trading mass for technological superiority increases the risk of failure under a wide range of circumstances. Second, sound operational force employment is also a key to victory, a major problem in a two-
major theater war scenario. Third, sustainment capability is crucial. Fourth, multi-dimensional combat capability provides a war-winning edge. Failure to heed these conclusions may not risk outright defeat but does increase the possibility of failure in the Halt Phase and a reversion to attrition warfare exactly the situation the American strategy and operational forces are designed to avoid. Notes: Master’s thesis. Approved for Public Release. The original document contains color images. Database: DTIC AND NTIS. URL: [http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA398334](http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA398334)

“Country Reports on Human Rights Practices, 2003: Solomon Islands.” 2004. Department of State, Washington, DC. Bureau of Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor. 25 Feb. Pages: 22. Descriptors: Civil rights; Political systems; Politics; Economics; Foreign government; International relations; Religion; Military government; Foreign policy; Crimes; Solomon Islands; Human rights; Behavior and society Social concerns; Behavior and society International relations. Abstract: The Solomon Islands has a modified parliamentary system of government consisting of a single-chamber Legislative Assembly of 50 members. Executive authority is vested in the Prime Minister, who is elected by a majority vote of Parliament, and his Cabinet. A new Parliament was elected in 2001 with Sir Allan Kemakeza as Prime Minister; elections were considered generally free and fair. Since 1998, conflict between two of the main ethnic groups in the country—the Malaitans and the Guadalcanalese—has forced thousands of Malaitans residing on Guadalcanal from their homes, and in June 2000, armed Malaitan militants took over Honiara, the capital. The Malaitan militants forced the then-Prime Minister to resign. Although a peace agreement formally ending the conflict was signed in October 2000, subsequent governments had limited success in their efforts to restore peace, due to political and institutional weaknesses and the public’s perception that their leaders were beholden to one or the other of the conflicting parties. In late July, the Regional Assistance Mission for Solomon Islands (RAMSI), a multinational police-centered force organized by Australia, arrived in the country at the invitation of the Government and began to assist the Government in restoring law and order and rebuilding the country’s institutions. The Constitution provides for an independent judiciary; however, prior to RAMSI’s arrival, the judiciary was hampered by police ineffectiveness, lack of resources, and threats against judges and prosecutors. Notes: Appendices not included. NTIS: PB2005103542XSP.

“Country Reports on Human Rights Practices, 2001: Solomon Islands.” 2002. Department of State, Washington, DC. Bureau of Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor. 4 Mar. Pages: 54. Descriptors: History; Political systems; Politics; Religion; Economics; Foreign government; International relations; Geography; Foreign policy; Culture; Warfare; Education; Agriculture; Climate; Solomon Islands; Human rights; Country studies; Behavior and society International relations. Abstract: The Solomon Islands has a modified parliamentary system of government consisting of a single-chamber legislative assembly of 50 members. Executive authority is vested in the Prime Minister and his Cabinet. The Prime Minister, elected by a majority vote of Parliament, selects his own Cabinet. A new Parliament was elected in December with Allan Kemakeza as Prime Minister; elections were considered free and fair. In 1998 tensions between two of the main ethnic groups in the country—the Malaitans and the Guadalcanalese—resulted in violence. Throughout 1999 Guadalcanalese militants forced thousands of Malaitans residing on Guadalcanal from their homes. Beginning in January 2000, Malaitan militants stole large quantities of weapons from the police and actively began to combat the Guadalcanalese. The conflict continued to escalate, and in June 2000, armed Malaitan militants, reportedly assisted by paramilitary police officers acting without authorization, took over Honiara, the capital. Following their takeover of the capital, the Malaitan militants forced the then-Prime Minister, Bartholomew Ulufa’alu, to resign, and Parliament chose a new Prime Minister, Manasseh Sogavare, under duress. A new government,
known as the Coalition for National Unity, Reconciliation, and Peace, was formed. The Government has sought to restore peace, but its success has been limited due to its weakness—both political and institutional—and the perception that its leaders are beholden to one of the conflicting parties. The judiciary is independent, but was hampered by police ineffectiveness, lack of resources, and threats against judges and prosecutors. Notes: Product reproduced from digital image. NTIS: PB2002104848XSP.

“Country Reports on Human Rights Practices, 1999: Solomon Islands.” 2000. Department of State, Washington, DC. 23 Feb. Pages: 10. Descriptors: Civil rights; Political systems; Politics; Economics; Foreign government; International relations; Religion; Military government; Foreign policy; Crimes; Solomon Islands; Human rights; Behavior and society Social concerns; Behavior and society International relations. Abstract: Solomon Islands, with a population of approximately 450,000, is an archipelago stretching over 840 miles in the South Pacific. Its government is a modified parliamentary system consisting of a single-chamber legislative assembly of 50 members. Executive authority is vested in the Prime Minister and his Cabinet. The Prime Minister, elected by a majority vote of Parliament, selects his own Cabinet. Political legitimacy derives from direct election by secret ballot. There have been five general elections since independence in 1978, most recently in August 1997. The judiciary is independent. A police force of approximately 900 persons under civilian control is responsible for law enforcement and border security. About 75 percent of the population engage to some extent in subsistence farming and fishing and have little involvement in the cash economy. Commercial activities include some plantation production of copra, cocoa, and palm oil, one fish cannery, a gold mine on Guadalcanal, and small resort and diving enterprises. Basic individual rights are provided for in the Constitution, generally respected by authorities, and defended by an independent judiciary; however, some rights were suspended during a state of emergency. Notes: Product reproduced from digital image. NTIS: PB2003106348XSP.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


D


Davis, Edward F. 2004. Edward F. Davis Papers, 2004? Descriptors: 1 folder. World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Islands; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Vietnam War, 1961-1975- Campaigns; Vietnam War, 1961-1975- Personal narratives, American; Davis, Edward F; United States. Army. Infantry Division, 25th. Field Artillery Battalion, 8th. Headquarters Company; Germany- History-1945-1955; Bangkok (Thailand)- Description and travel; Japan- Description and travel; Hong Kong- Description and travel; Taiwan- Description and travel; Pennsylvania- National Guard; Manuscript; Picture. Abstract: General description of the collection: The Edward F. Davis papers include a World War II Veteran’s Survey Questionnaire, a Vietnam War Veteran’s Survey Questionnaire, and a memoir filled with computerized reproductions of photos, maps, newspaper clippings, propaganda leaflets, and an issue of the 8th Field Artillery Battalion newspaper. Sergeant Davis describes his training, quarters, rations, equipment, uniforms, relations with civilians, rest and relaxation (R & R) tours to Japan, Hong Kong, Taiwan, and Bangkok, troop transports, disease, flora and fauna in the jungle, USO shows, drug use, his work at missile sites in the US, and his time in the National Guard. Notes: Contains the following type(s) of materials: memoir, questionnaires. Bio/History: First Sergeant Edward F. Davis enlisted as a high school student on 2 May 1940 because of family financial hardships. He trained at Scofield Barracks, HI after being assigned to the 25th Infantry Division (ID), 8th Field Artillery Battalion, Headquarters Battery. After the bombing of Pearl Harbor, he went into combat with the 25th ID at Guadalcanal and participated in the invasion of the Philippine Islands. He was released from combat in 1945 because he had accumulated enough points, and was discharged at Fort Dix, NJ on 16 July 1945. He joined the Pennsylvania National Guard in 1946, then volunteered to return to active duty when the
Korean War broke out. He was sent for occupation duty in Hoenfels, Germany from 1953-1955. After returning to the United States (US), he was assigned to Korea in 1957, then to Pakistan in 1963. After another tour in the US, he volunteered for Vietnam, where he served three tours. He retired in 1970 after twenty-two years of active duty service. He used the GI Bill to attend trade school in the early 1970’s.

General Info: Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute, Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Other Titles: Papers of Edward F. Davis; Davis papers. OCLC: 56791706.


[Dead Japanese Soldiers Strewn Over a Beach on Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands, while U.S. Marines Get the Lay of the Land and Consolidate their Positions]. 1942. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Casualties- Japanese- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal Island; Guadalcanal, Battle

Deuel, Jay Riley and Saints at War. 1944-2000. Memoir, Ca. 1944-2000. Descriptors: 1 folder (7 pages); World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; World War, 1939-1945- Religious aspects- Catholic Church; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Manuscript. Abstract: In this narrative about Jay Riley Deuel, Geneve Deuel expresses the feeling of Deuel as he served in the U.S. Navy as recorded in a collection of letter found and held by his family. He served around Guadalcanal, but was never in any danger. In his letters, and the memoir, his love for his family, and positive outlook are emphasized. The memoir recounts many of the personal life aspects of Deuel as he served. Notes: Genre/Form: Memoirs. Notes: Bio/History: Deuel served in the U.S. Navy during World War II from 1944-1946. He achieved the rank of Seaman First Class. General Info: Open for research. Items were donated by Geneve Deuel to the Saints At War Project in 2000. OCLC: 55006266.


Dickson, Donald L. United States; Navy, et al. 1996. To the Shores of Iwo Jima. Cerritos, CA: Diamond Entertainment Corp. Volume: 1 videocassette (45 min.), Descriptors: Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Presents a dramatic documentary account of the American invasion of Iwo Jima and the Battle of Guadalcanal in the Solomon Islands. Shows ship bombardment, rocket fire, air bombing, the use of flame throwers, and scenes of individuals and groups in combat. Notes: System Info: VHS format. Notes: At head of title on container: World War II - War in the Pacific. Originally issued as a motion picture in 1945. Participants: Narrator, Donald L. Dickson (2nd work). Other Titles: Title on cassette label; To the shores of Iwo Jima/Guadacanal; To the shores of Iwo Jima, Guadacanal; This is Guadalcanal (Motion picture); Responsibility: Photographed in combat areas by cameramen of the U.S. Navy, Marine Corps and Coast Guard. 45035; Diamond Entertainment Corp. OCLC: 68671302.

Dickson, Donald L. United States; Navy; Viking Video Classics and United Artists Corporation. 1986. To the Shores of Iwo Jima this is Guadalcanal. Burbank, Calif: Viking Video Classics; Distributed by United Artists. Volume: 1 videocassette (ca. 41 min.), Descriptors: Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; Documentary films; LC: D767.99.19; Dewey: 940.54/26; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Presents a dramatic documentary account of the American invasion of Iwo Jima. Shows ship bombardment, rocket fire, air bombing, the use of flame throwers, and scenes of individuals and groups in combat. The 2nd work is a pictorial revue of the U.S. Marines’ bravery at Guadalcanal as they prepare for a Japanese counterattack. Notes: Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps-History- World War, 1939-1945. System Info: VHS format. Notes: First work originally issued as a motion picture in 1945. Packaging indicates works in color but both works in black & white.
“Edited at Warner Bros. Studios for the U.S. Government Office of War Information and exhibited by the War Activities Committee of the Motion Picture Industry.” “Presented by Industrial Incentive Division, United States Navy in cooperation with the O.W.I. Motion Picture Bureau.” With: This is Guadalcanal. Participants: 2nd work narrated by Donald L. Dickson. Other Titles: Container title; To the shores of Iwo Jima Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal; This is Guadalcanal. Responsibility: [produced by the U.S. Navy]. Photographed in combat areas by cameramen of U.S. Navy, Marine Corps and Coast Guard. 2nd work photographed by U.S. Marine Corps Combat cameramen. VCC 911; Viking Video Classics. OCLC: 51338726.


Dillard, Nancy R. 1997. “Operational Leadership: A Case Study of Two Extremes during Operation Watchtower.” Naval War College, Newport, RI. Volume: ADA325157, Pages: 27 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Military Operations; *Leadership; Military History; Theater Level Operations; Decision Making; Skills; Morale; Theses; Case Studies; Military Capabilities; Strength (General), Vision; Military Commanders; Judgement (Psychology); Pacific Ocean Islands; South Pacific Ocean; Operation Watchtower. Abstract: Amid the fog and friction of war, operational leadership is an essential element of success. Never was this better demonstrated than in the South Pacific theater during World War II’s Operation Watchtower (the American occupation of Guadalcanal and Tulagi), where an unforeseen change of command altered the course of history. Successful military theater commanders possess common traits that facilitate their operational leadership role. These traits include the intellectual ability and imagination to analyze situations, and to envision a future end state and the steps required to achieve it; communication skill to clearly articulate the vision to subordinates; enthusiasm and confidence to inspire subordinates beyond their known capabilities; boldness and audacity to take calculated risks decisively; good judgment to make the right decisions; and, when the going gets tough, strength of character and will to maintain the vision, stay the course, rekindle enthusiasm and keep hope alive. With the success of America’s first major offensive operation against Japan in jeopardy, Fleet Admiral Chester W. Nimitz, USN, Commander in Chief Pacific Ocean Areas, faced the soul-searching decision to relieve a subordinate commander. He replaced Vice Admiral Robert L. Ghormley, USN, Commander South Pacific Area and South Pacific Force, with Vice Admiral William F. Halsey, USN. Admiral Halsey’s immediate positive impact on morale and readiness, coupled with his bold audacity, turned the tide and achieved victory in less than a month. Admiral Halsey proved to be the right leader in the right place at the right time. Approved for Public Release. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA325157


“The Dogfight.” 2007. Air & Space Smithsonian. Volume 21, Issue 5; 5, Pages 34-35. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Warships; Wildcat (Fighter plane); Sakai, Saburo; Mitsubishi G4M bomber; Southerland, James J; Solomon Islands. Notes: Air & Space Smithsonian; Article; Source Information: Dec2006/Jan2007, Vol. 21 Issue 5, 34 pages; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Warships; Subject Term: Wildcat (Fighter plane); Subject Term: Sakai, Saburo; Subject Term: Mitsubishi G4M bomber; Subject Term: Southerland, James J. Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 2; Illustrations: 2 diagrams. Abstract: The article details events that transpired during the air combat between the Japanese and the U.S. forces in Guadalcanal,
Solomon Islands on August 7, 1942. Lieutenant James J. Southerland II radioed his division when he found that G4M1 Betty bombers are about to attack the 50 U.S. Navy ships. Japanese pilot Saburo Sakai found himself in front of the Wildcat flown by Southerland. Sakai realized his mistake but Southerland did not fire which prompted the former to target Wildcat’s engine instead of Southerland. ISSN: 0886-2257.


Dorr, Robert F. 2005. “Signalman Saved Lives in Guadalcanal Attack.” Navy Times. 01/24. Volume 54, Issue 17; 17, Pages 36-36. Descriptors: Marines; Offensive (Military science); United States. Coast Guard; Munro, Douglas A. Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands. Notes: Navy Times; Article; Source Information: 1/24/2005, Vol. 54 Issue 17, p36; Subject Term: Marines; Offensive (Military science); United States. Coast Guard. Abstract: Features Signalman 1st Class Douglas A. Munro, a U.S. Coast Guardsman who received the Medal of Honor in recognition of his participation at an offensive in Guadalcanal in the Solomon Islands. Historical information on the participation of the Coast Guard the offensive in 1942; Duties of Munro prior to his involvement in the Guadalcanal attack; Description of the struggle of Munro as he saves Marines at the offensive. ISSN: 0028-1697.

photographs taken during the war have now been layered over a 3-D contour map to create a CGI "model" of the battlefield. These original, high-resolution images allow the viewer to track the battle step-by-step. Individual stories of courage and heroism are placed in the exact spot where they took place. Using cutting-edge techniques, unique archive film, reenactments, and extraordinary interviews, Pacific: The Lost Evidence sheds new light on one of the most important battles of World War II. Notes: System Info: DVD. Notes: Participants: Narrator: Michael Carroll. Other Titles: Guadalcanal: Pacific, the lost evidence; Guadalcanal: the lost evidence; produced by Flashback Television for A&E Television Networks; The History Channel; producer: Taylor Downing; written and directed by Steve Baker. Film editor: Gareth Johnson. AAE-74781; A&E Television Networks. OCLC: 64574416.


Durdin, F. Tiliman. 1942. “Life on Guadalcanal.” Time. September 28. Volume 40, Pages 37. Descriptors: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943; Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal, Battle of, 1942-1943. ISSN: 0040-781X.


Edwards, Douglas. 1943. Report to the Nation. 1943-03-13. Volume: 1 sound disc (30 min.), Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945; World War, 1939-1945- United States; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, French; World War, 1939-1945- Underground movements-France; World War, 1939-1945- Ukraine; Lend-lease operations (1941-1945); World War, 1939-1945- Economic aspects; World War, 1939-1945- Manpower; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943- Personal narratives, American; Non-musical recording; LP recording; Reel-to-reel tape. Abstract: A program of dramatizations and news remotes. There are several featured stories: Doug Edwards reports on the war, in particular the situation in North Africa and guerrilla fighting in France; the devastation of the Ukrainian town of Kharkov; British opposition to amount of lend-lease aid to Russia; manpower and womanpower shortages including interviews with women who work in factories; income taxes; Britain’s Beveridge plan for social security; re-enactment of the landing at Guadalcanal including interviews. Notes: Genre/Form: Historical dramas- Radio. News- Radio. Geographic: France- History- German occupation, 1940-1945. Kharkiv (Ukraine); Notes: Title from container. Tape was auditioned. Preservation tape was formerly numbered LWO 5749, reel 1. Production level cataloging. Broadcast March 13, 1943 on CBS. Other Titles: Report to the nation (Radio program). Library of Congress: LCCN: 2003-644880. OCLC: 52324334.


Emberton, Keith D. 1996. “Operational Leadership Once Beyond the Culminating Point: Perspectives on Calculated Tactical Risk to Achieve Operational Success.” Naval War Coll Newport RI. Volume: ADA307601, Pages: 28. Descriptors: *Military Operations; *Leadership; *Tactical Warfare; Risk; Military Doctrine; Limitations; Casualties; Marine Corps Personnel; Military Commanders. Abstract: There is an extraordinary degree of risk of casualties and destruction to the attacking force associated with continuing the attack beyond the tactical culminating point. The operational commander may take a significant calculated risk at the tactical level and pass the culminating point or accept loss once beyond the culminating point, in order to achieve success at the operational level. The forces of Confederate General ‘Stonewall’ Jackson in the Shenandoah Valley in the Civil War and U.S. Marine Corps Major General Alexander Vandegrift in the Guadalcanal Operation in the Second World War passed beyond the culminating point. An analysis of the leadership of these two generals produces insight into some major characteristics of operational leadership once beyond the culminating point in light of the great tactical risk. The framework for analysis included a physical component, and the components of will, initiative, coup d’oeil, and style of communication. Operational commanders demonstrate the ability to limit their tactical objectives beyond the culminating point and seek to capitalize on temporary risk to achieve success at a higher level. Other insights relate to the significant role of strength of will and intuitive decision-making and vision. These insights are relevant to the challenges that senior commanders potentially face in present warfare as well as to further research.
Natural History of Guadalcanal

and analysis in doctrine, theory, and the operational art. Notes: Approved for public release. DTIC. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA307601


Evanston Marine Uses Machete to Kill 6 Japs on Guadalcanal. 1942. Chicago Sun; Evanston Review (ILL). December 31, 1942. Abstract: Only name given is the Marine Sergeant’s nickname, “Slats” Kerr. He was at Pearl Harbor during the first attack; he served in the heroic defense of Midway Island; and he fought on Guadalcanal. Lived in Evanston, Il. Parents were James H. and Kathryn M. (Clinton) Kerr. Notes: Photo. Availability: Library of Congress.

and 4th Marine Air Wings during World War II. After the war, he worked as a doctor and during the Vietnam War served as a volunteer surgeon. Interviewed by Mark D. Van Ells, on October 11, 1994 in Wisconsin. General Info: Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. OCLC: 56215833.


Farmer, Walton R. and Saints at War. 1942-1945. Memoir, Ca. 1942-1945. Descriptors: 1 folder (5 pages); World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Manuscript. Abstract: Photocopied Newspaper Article, Photocopied Photographs, Photocopied Military Documents. After recruiters told Farmer he was rejected for service in the Marine Corps because an injury he had sustained as a child to his little finger he paid thirty dollars to have it amputated so that he could enlist. Included is a photocopied newspaper article further explaining the story. Notes: Genre/Form: Letters. Clippings (Books, newspapers, etc.) Photographs. Notes: Bio/History: Farmer served in the U.S. Marine Corps Pacific Theater during World War II from 1942-1945 achieving the rank of a corporal. General Info: Open for research. Items were donated by Walton R. Farmer to the Saints At War Project in 2000. OCLC: 55006511.

Farr, Scott T. 2003. “The Historical Record, Strategic Decision Making, and Carrier Support to Operation Watchtower.” Volume: ADA416432, Pages: 93 Pages. Descriptors: *Military Operations; Military History; Military Strategy; Theater Level Operations; Decision Making; Military Doctrine; Theses; Aircraft Carriers; Pacific Ocean; Second World War; Battle Of Guadalcanal; Operation Watchtower. Abstract: The Battle of Guadalcanal marked the first offensive ground operations conducted in the Pacific theater during World War II. One divisive issue of the Guadalcanal campaign is the withdrawal of carrier based aviation support on 8 August 1942, by Vice Admiral Frank Jack Fletcher. The historical record is dominated by the argument that Fletcher faced very little threat and could have supported the invasion forces longer than he did. What influenced Vice Admiral Frank Jack Fletcher to withdraw carrier based aviation from direct support of the Guadalcanal invasion and was the decision valid? In order to objectively evaluate Fletcher’s decision, this paper will first review historical literature and outline how the dominate opinion of Fletcher’s decision developed. Next, it will look at Fletcher’s character, development as a leader, and record from commissioning through the Watchtower campaign. This study will also review of the orders and guidance at the strategic level and the operations of subordinate commanders within Watchtower. Finally, the metrics of 1942 and the modern strategic
military decision-making model will be applied to evaluate the validity of the decision to withdraw. The evidence clearly suggests that Fletcher’s decision was strategically valid, in addition to being characterized inaccurately by historians. Notes: Master’s thesis 5 Aug 2002-6 Jun 2003. Approved for Public Release. DTIC. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA416432


Ferguson, Robert L. “Guadalcanal Diary: November 11, 1942.” Air Power History. 2000/Winter. Volume 47, Issue 4; 4 pages. Descriptors: Autobiography; Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945; United States. Notes: Air Power History; Illustrations: 8bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 1704. Abstract: Presents the author’s personal account of the United States’ campaign at Henderson Field during the Battle of Guadalcanal Island, Solomon Islands on November 11, 1942. Description of the inefficiencies of the P-39/P-400 aircraft of the U.S. Air Force; Description of how the Japanese made several efforts to recapture the air base. ISSN: 1044-016X.


Fighter Plane Fitted to Fly--the Tail of the Plane is Hoisted Up as Mechanics Prepare to Line up the Sights of its Guns. 1943. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Military life- American-
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Flahavin, Peter. 2004. “Guadalcanal Veterans: Martin Clemens, Coastwatcher; Thayer Soule, Marine Photographic Officer; Chris Merillat, Marine Combat Correspondent; Sgt Ore Marion, L Company, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marine Rgt; Sergeant Frank Guidone, 1st Marine Raider Battalion; Sgt Fred Harris - H Company, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marine Rgt; George Bodman B Company, 1st Batl, 1st Marine Regiment; Bud De Vere, First control tower operator at Henderson Field; Sergeant Bill Mc Laughlin, Americal Division15, Guadalcanal; Bill Coggin, Headquarters Company, 2nd Batl, 1st Marine Rgt.” A series of short interviews with veterans of the fighting at Guadalcanal. See: http://guadalcanal2.homestead.com/canalvets.html


Flahavin, Peter. 1999. “Guadalcanal Diary of Sergeant George Dennis (1920 - 1998), 2nd Platoon, D Company, 1st Battalion, 1st Marine Regiment.” Abstract: “I got to know George in 1997, but sadly he died in early 1998 before I could ask him about Guadalcanal in depth. He kept a diary on loose sheets of paper in pen and ink, which his son Michael has let me transcribe. I have typed exactly what George wrote at the time. I wish I had been able to sit down with him and go through it entry by entry. Semper, Fi George!” See: http://guadalcanal2.homestead.com/Diary.html


Flynn, James J. Coates, John and Morse Institute Library (Natick, Mass.). 2000. Veterans Oral History Project. Interview with James J. Flynn, World War II Veteran. Volume: 1 videocassette (60 minutes), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Veterans- Massachusetts- Natick; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Flynn, James J., 1919-; Natick (Mass.)- Biography; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Interview discussing Mr. Flynn’s service in the Pacific,

---

15 The name is derived from a combination of American and New Caledonia, where the Yanks trained before relieving the marines on Guadalcanal in October, 1942.
Australia, New Caledonia, the Fiji Islands, and Guadalcanal. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes:
Participants: Interviewed by John Coates. Recorded at the Morse Institute Library in Natick, Mass.

Ford, John; Wead, Frank W. White, William Lindsay, et al. 2006 (Various editions and
formats). They were Expendable [Videorecording]; Title on Box Set: John Wayne/John Ford Film
Collection. United States; Burbank, CA: Turner Entertainment Co; Warner Bros. Entertainment;
Distributed by Warner Home Video. no. 76700 Warner Home Video (set); 65908 Warner Home
Video, Descriptors: World; War; II; Torpedo-boats; Drama; Fighter; planes; Philippines;
Guadalcanal; (Solomon; Islands); Feature; films; United; States; Film; adaptations; Video;
recordings; for; the; hearing; impaired; DVD-Video; discs. Abstract: Credits: Director of
photography, Joseph H. August; editor, Frank E. Hull and Douglass Biggs; music, Herbert Stothart.
Summary: Two PT-boat skippers defend the Philippines and give the U.S. war effort time to
regroup after the crippling losses at Pearl Harbor. Notes: a John Ford production; screenplay by
Frank Wead; directed by John Ford. 1 videodisc (135 min.): sd., b&w; 4 3/4 in. Language note:
English audio track with optional English, French or Spanish subtitles; closed-captioned in English.
Based on the book by William L. White. Issued as part of a boxed set of 8 films by John Ford
Not rated. ISSN/ISBN: 1419829912 (set); OCLC: 010098597.

Foster, John T. 1966. Guadalcanal General; the Story of A. A. Vandegrift, USMC. New
York: Morrow. Descriptors: 224; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands-

Foster, Preston; Nolan, Lloyd; Bendix, William; Conte, Richard, et al. 2001. Guadalcanal
min.), Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal Island; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943- Drama; Feature films; War films; Video
recordings for the hearing impaired; LC: PN1995.9.W6; Videorecording; DVD video; Videodisc.
Abstract: This strikingly realistic film follows a devoted platoon of Marines through the terrors of
System Info: DVD. Notes: From the book by Richard Tregaskis. Originally released as a motion
picture in 1943. Closed-captioned. Participants: Preston Foster, Lloyd Nolan, William Bendix,
Richard Conte, Anthony Quinn. Responsibility: Twentieth Century-Fox; screenplay by Lamar
Trotti; produced by Brian Foy; directed by Lewis Seiler. ISBN: 2002532; 20th Century Fox Home
Entertainment. OCLC: 48644230.

80+. Descriptors: Absenteeism; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943; World War,
1939-1945/Personal narratives; Absenteeism (labor); Guadalcanal, Battle of, 1942-1943; World
war, 1939-/Personal narratives. Notes: Illustration. Library of Congress. ISSN: 0028-047X.

York: Penguin. Descriptors: 800 pages; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943;
Oorlog. Notes: Includes bibliographical references (p. 651-766) and indexes. Responsibility:

Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943. Notes: Includes bibliographical references (p.
Frankel, Stanley A. “Battle of Bougainville: 37th Infantry Division’s Battle for Hill 700-Losing Hill 700 to the Japanese Meant Defeat for the American Forces on Bougainville. To the Men of the 37th Infantry Division, that was Unthinkable.” Historynet.com. no. July 2007, Abstract: The American strategic plan was clear: Move up the Solomon Island chains to open a direct route to the Philippines, take the Philippines and then move out from there on to Tokyo. In 1942, the U.S. Marines drove the Japanese out of the first Solomon Island, Guadalcanal; in 1943, painfully, bloodily, the 37th Infantry Division pushed through the equally impenetrable jungles of New Georgia, sweeping what was left of the 15,000 defending Japanese into the sea. The next and final Solomon island was Bougainville, and there the tactics were dramatically altered though the strategic concept remained the same. Notes: This article was written by Stanley A. Frankel and originally appeared in the September 1997 issue of World War II. URL: http://www.historynet.com/magazines/world_war_2/3025746.html.


Fuquea, David C. 2004. “Commanders and Command Decisions: The Impact on Naval Combat in the Solomon Islands, November 1942.” Naval War College, Newport, RI. Volume: ADA427566, Pages: 78 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Decision Making; *Naval Operations; *Military Commanders; *Second World War; Warfare; United States; Impact; Military Forces (Foreign); Naval Personnel; Navy; Attack; Japan; Wounds And Injuries; Enemy; Destroyers; Pearl Harbor; Cruisers; Guadalcanal Island. Abstract: The number of United States sailors killed approached the figures lost to the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor nearly a year before and represented nearly forty percent of the US force. Nearly a third of the 700 survivors from the sunken ships that managed to make their way to the island of Guadalcanal that morning were wounded. These numbers reflected the “barroom bawl” nature of the fight that the United States commander allowed to take place at such close ranges as to make the danger of collisions and the point-blank gunfire between ships from the two enemy forces make a shambles of any tactical formations or controls. As a result, the United States Navy was without a coherent surface strike force of cruisers and destroyers at a vital turning point in the Guadalcanal Campaign. Notes: Approved for Public Release. Final Report. DTIC. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA427566

Fuquea, D. C. 2004. “Night Fighters without Equal, Task Force 39 at Empress Augusta Bay. Final Rept.” Naval War Collection, Newport, RI. 3 May. Pages: 25. Descriptors: Naval personnel; Task forces; Night; Naval vessels Combatant; Naval warfare; Empress augusta bay; Military sciences (74); Urban and regional technology and development Emergency services and planning (91I). Abstract: On the 1st of November 1943, the ships and men of Rear Admiral ‘Tip’ Merrill’s Task Force 39 steamed off the west coast of the island of Bougainville, the last island at the northern end of the Solomon Islands chain. Their mission was to protect the landing of the 3rd Marine Division at Cape Torokina in the closing act of the United States’ first counter offensive campaign against the Japanese that had begun at Guadalcanal sixteen months earlier. Within hours, Merrill and his trusted destroyer commander, Arleigh Burke, faced the largest and most powerful Japanese surface naval force encountered since the dark and ugly initial naval defeats of the
Solomons that killed so many American sailors and littered the bottom of the waters in the Solomons with so many American ships as to earn them the name ‘Iron Bottom Sound.’ Yet, just as the Marine force going ashore at Bougainville was far better prepared that its predecessor at Guadalcanal’, so too was this U.S. Navy task force far better prepared than its predecessors that fought in the night ‘slug fests’ of a year earlier. For Task Force 39, despite being outgunned in nearly every category by the ships commanded by Rear Admiral Omori, several other factors contributed to an unquestionable victory by the United States Navy at the Battle of Empress Augusta Bay. Notes: Product reproduced from digital image. DTIC: ADA427638XSP.

Gabelman, Warren interviewee. McIntosh, James F. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 2002. Oral History Interview with Warren Gabelman, 2002. Volume: Sound recording: 2 sound cassettes (ca. 90 minutes); analog, 1 7/8 ips. Videorecording: 1 videocassette (ca. 90 min.); sd., col. 1/2 in. Master sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 90 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips., Descriptors: Veterans- Wisconsin- Madison; Sailors- Nebraska; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Guadalcanal; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Corregedor; Gabelman, Warren, 1921-; Videorecording; Cassette recording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Gabelman, a Madison, Wis. veteran, discusses his World War II service with the Navy serving aboard the USS Nicholas (DD 449) in the Pacific theater. He talks about postponing his wedding to enlist in the Navy, midshipman school at Notre Dame (Indiana), torpedo school at San Francisco (California), assignment to destroyer duty, and transfer to Noumea in the South Pacific. Assigned in 1943 to the USS Nichols as the communications officer, he comments on mine sweeping missions off Guadalcanal; destroying floating mines with rifle fire at Corregedor; and transfer to the United States to work on a newly commissioned destroyer. Gabelman mentions his marriage while in the U.S., joining the USS Glennon in Boston (Massachusetts), shakedown cruise to Guantanamo Bay (Cuba), discharge in 1946, and finishing his education at the University of Nebraska using the GI Bill. Notes: Named Corp: Glennon (Destroyer: DD-840) Nicholas (Destroyer: DD-449); Notes: Bio/History: Gabelman (b.1921) enlisted in the Navy while a student at the University of Nebraska. After serving four years, he was discharged from service and eventually settled in Madison, Wisconsin. Interviewed by James F. McIntosh on July 24, 2002 in Madison, Wisconsin. General Info: Access to videorecording is restricted: 48-hour advance notification required. Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. System Info: VHS-C format. OCLC: 58398863.


Garrett, J. R. A Marine Diary: My Experiences on Guadalcanal. J.R. Garrett. Descriptors: Battles- 20th century; Electronic publications; World War, 1939-1945; Marines; Diaries; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands). Abstract: Presents the online version of J.R. Garrett’s diary of his experiences during the Battle of Guadalcanal. Explains that Garrett was a corporal for the First Battery, Third Battalion, 11th Regiment and a charter member of the First Marine Division, which was formed in Cuba in 1940. Notes that the entries were written at the time of the battle. Offers access to diary entries from August 1942 through November 1942. OCLC: 44350568.


Gay, Kathlyn. Voices from the past. 2002. America the Beautiful [Sound Recording]: Great Voices in Patriotic Song (1905-50); Great Voices in Patriotic Song (1905-50). Newton Abbot, Devon, UK: Romophone. 87002-2 Romophone, Descriptors: Hymns, English; United; States; National; songs; Patriotic; music; with; orchestra. Abstract: Credits: Produced by Lawrence Holdridge and Mark Obert-Thorn. Contents: The star-spangled banner (Emma Eames) (2:10)- America, the beautiful (3:18)- Battle hymn of the republic (3:08) (Louise Homer)- Over there (Enrico Caruso) (2:50)- Keep the home fires burning (Rosa Ponselle) (2:48)- For your country and my country (Frances Alda) (2:48)- There’s a long, long trail (Riccardo Stracciari) (4:07)- Send me away with a smile (3:18); God be with our boys tonight (3:28); When you come back (3:07) (John McCormack)- Taps (3:28); When the boys come home (3:13) (Ernestine Schumann-Heink)- The star spangled banner (Geraldine Farrar) (3:22)- America: (My country ‘tis of Thee) (Lucy Monroe) (2:12)- My own United States (Lawrence Tibbett) (2:48)- The Americans come (Richard Crooks) (2:21)- I spoke to Jefferson at Guadalcanal (Conrad Thibault) (3:22)- The Army Air Corps (John Charles Thomas) (2:25)- Wings over the Navy (Emile Renan) (2:41)- The house I live in (Lauritz Melchior) (2:55)- God bless America (Lotte Lehman) (2:53)- America, the beautiful (3:07); Battle hymn of the republic (3:33) (Leonard Warren). Notes: 1 sound disc: digital; 4 3/4 in. Title from container. Liner notes on the performers by David Mermelstein laid in container. Selections originally released ca. 1905-1950. OCLC: 008899492.

Gee, Samuel M. 1940-1976. The MG Samuel M. Gee Papers, 1940-1976. Descriptors: 22 boxes. Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Human behavior; Gee, Samuel M.- Archives; Gee, Samuel M.- Correspondence; Fort Monroe Officers’ Open Mess- History; U.S. Army Engineer School- Curricula; United States. National Labor Relations Act. Abstract: Contains the following types of materials: correspondence, personnel documents, organizational documents, clippings, reports studies, books manuals, leaflets brochures, ephemera, field manuals, instructional guidance. Contains information pertaining to the following military units and organizations: 1st Infantry Division; the Infantry School, 25th Infantry Division, Americal Division, 16th Infantry Regiment, 7th Infantry Division, Military Psychology and Leadership Department, U.S. Military Academy. General description of the collection: The MG Samuel M. Gee papers include his personal and official correspondence; economic mobilization studies; Guadalcanal Reports (18
November 1942 - 9 February 1943; report of Replacement Board, DA (books 1-6) (1947); Virginia Division of War Veterans Claims Report (1 July 1969 - 30 June 1970); history of Fort Monroe officers’ open mess (1852-1952); historical efficiency reports and regulations (1915-1948); instruction guidance, the Engineer School, Fort Belvoir, Virginia (1946); interpretations of National Labor Relations Act (1946); and a bound research report entitled, “Human Behavior from Transactional Point of View,” edited by Franklin P. Kilpatrick. Notes: General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute, Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Other Titles: Papers of Samuel M. Gee; Gee papers. OCLC: 47103687.

Geishirt, Kenneth W. interviewee. McIntosh, James F. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 2001. Oral History Interview with Kenneth W. Geishirt 2001. Volume: Sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 60 min.): analog, 1 7/8 ips. Videorecording: 1 videocassette (ca. 60 min.): sd., col. 1/2 in. Master sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 60 min.): analog, 1 7/8 ips., Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations, American; Veterans- Wisconsin- Madison; Soldiers- Wisconsin- Watertown; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; B-17 bomber; Midway, Battle of, 1942; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Australia; Geishirt, Kenneth W., 1921-; Videorecording; Cassette recording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Kenneth Geishirt, a Watertown, Wis. native, discusses his World War II service with the 42nd Bomber Squadron, 11th Bomb Group and his service in the Pacific theater. He talks about mechanic training at Chanute Field (Illinois) and Jefferson Barracks (Missouri). While stationed in Hawaii, Geishirt describes his role as a ground crewman with B-17 bombers, pre-flight tests, and flying patrol missions. He recalls viewing the air attack on Midway Island and participating as a tail gunner during air attacks on Guadalcanal, Tulagi (Solomon Islands), and Munda (New Guinea). Stationed in Melbourne (Australia) he touches upon flying supply missions, being grounded by the flight surgeon, and being reassigned to the ground crew. After the war, Geishirt mentions duty in Guam and Hawaii and his return home to work as an electrician. Notes: Named Corp: United States. Army Air Forces. Bombardment Group (Heavy), 11th. United States. Army Air Forces. Bomb Squadron, 42nd. United States. Air Force- Equipment and supplies. Notes: Bio/History: Geishirt (b. 1921) served with the 42nd Bomber Squadron, 11th Bomb Group in the Pacific theater of World War II. He was honorably discharged in 1945 as a staff sergeant and eventually settled in Madison, Wis. Interviewed by James F. McIntosh, on October 1, 2001 in Wisconsin. General Info: Access to videorecording is restricted: 48-hour advance notification required. Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. System Info: VHS-C format. OCLC: 53018108.


Glenn, R. W. 2007. Counterinsurgency in a Test Tube. Analyzing the Success of the Regional Assistance Mission to Solomon Islands (RAMSI). Rand National Defense Research Inst., Santa Monica, CA. page(s): 184. Descriptors: Military forces Foreign; International; Culture; Law enforcement; Counterinsurgency; Peacekeeping; Ramsi Regional assistance mission to solomon islands; Solomon islands; Nation building; Interagency; Multinational forces; Behavior and society International relations; Behavior and society Social concerns; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: On July 24, 2003, a joint, multinational, interagency force landed in the Solomon Islands at the request of that nation's prime minister. Its intent was to 'reinforce and uphold the legitimate institutions and authorities in the Solomon Islands, and to ensure respect for the country's constitution and implementation of its laws.' The call for help came after years of turmoil during which the legitimacy and effectiveness of the Solomon Islands government had been undermined by social strife, corruption, intimidation, and armed groups acting with no regard for the law. Within weeks, the worst of the problems had been suppressed and national rebuilding began. This analysis considers why the Regional Assistance Mission to Solomon Islands (RAMSI) succeeded in its first weeks, months, and years, and what lessons of value its operations might offer to counterinsurgency (COIN) and reconstruction efforts in Afghanistan, Iraq, and elsewhere. ISBN: 978-0-8330-4027-5. The original document contains color images. DTIC Accession Number: ADA464099XSP.


Grant, Meg. 2001. “The Windtalkers: The Navajos who helped turn the tide of World War II with their unbreakable code.” Reader’s Digest. November 2001. Abstract: “The Navajos were assigned to Marine divisions and shipped out. [John] Brown first saw combat in Guadalcanal with the 2nd Marine Division; Japanese forces had taken a huge toll on the 1st Marine Division. During battles, code talkers traveled with regimental or battalion commanders. Says Capt. Matt Morgan, Marine Corps motion-picture liaison director, “A code talker with the regimental commander would, in Navajo code, say over the radio to three battalion code talkers something like, ‘We’re going to attack at dawn on the right.’ Those three code talkers would then write the message in English and give it to their commanders.” Because the Japanese couldn't crack the code, the Navajos became particular targets for capture.” See the site: http://www.rd.com/content/the-windtalkers/1/


ensuring United States Marine Corps aviation remains expeditionary. Options for deploying Marine aviation; Major problem of Marine aviation in any campaign; Creation of forward operating bases; Lesson from the Guadalcanal Island campaign in the Second World War. Focuses on role played by aviation combat element engineers in ensuring United States Marine Corps aviation remains expeditionary. Options for deploying Marine aviation; Major problem of Marine aviation in any campaign; Creation of forward operating bases; Lesson from the Guadalcanal Island campaign in the Second World War. ISSN: 0025-3170.


“Guadalcanal: The Naval Campaign (Joint Force Quarterly, Autumn 1993).” 1993. National Defense University, Washington, DC. Center for Counterproliferation Research. Pages: 10. Descriptors: Japan; History; Fleets Ships; Air power; Shores; Second world war; Military operations; Joint military activities; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: The Guadalcanal campaign in the lower Solomons is a paradox in the history of joint warfare. It was the first American offensive of World War II and purely Navy in design. Yet the impact of the campaign in the southwest Pacific on joint operations was far-reaching. Above all, it underscored the real interdependence of the services: the supply of forces on land relied on escorts; the cover of escort forces depended on fleet units; and the denial of enemy sustenance of their troops ashore was largely accomplished by shore-based airpower. Thus, to a surprising degree,
Japanese forces were displaced from the lower Solomons by virtue of a singularly joint effort.

Notes: The original document contains color images. DTIC Accession Number: ADA426645XSP.


Guadalcanal Journal. Descriptors: Guadalcanal; Marine Corps; First Marine Division; Battle; Island; Pacific; Pacific Theatre; War; World War II; Marines; Battle Of Guadalcanal; Japanese; Solomon Islands. Abstract: This web site contains memoirs of American WWII veterans of the 1942 campaign on Guadalcanal. Notes: Audience: General. OCLC: 54844859.


Guttman, Jon. Hiroyoshi Nishizawa: Japan’s World War II Ace of Aces- Hiroyoshi Nishizawa was Gaunt and Sickly Looking, but in the Cockpit of His Zero Fighter He Became ‘the Devil.’ HistoryNet.com. no. July 2007, Abstract: On August 7, word arrived that U.S. Marines had landed on the island of Guadalcanal, more than 500 miles away at the lower end of the Solomon Islands chain, at 5:20 that morning. Without delay, Lt. Cmdr. Nakajima led 17 Zeros to escort 27 Mitsubishi G4M bombers of the 4th Ku. in an attack on the U.S. Navy task force supporting the invasion. The Japanese were met by 18 Grumman F4F-4 Wildcat fighters and 16 Douglas SBD-3 Dauntless dive bombers from the aircraft carriers Saratoga, Enterprise and Wasp. Nishizawa was credited with six F4Fs in this first air battle between land-based Zeros and American carrier fighters. One of his victims was probably Lieutenant Herbert S. (“Pete”) Brown of VF-5, who was attacked by a Zero that made a full-deflection shot from about 1,500 feet overhead, shattering his canopy and wounding him in the hip and leg. Pete Brown reported that his opponent came alongside him, and after the two adversaries had looked each other over, the Japanese pilot grinned and waved. The skill and wildness of Brown’s antagonist both suggest Nishizawa’s style, but for neither the first nor last time, his assumption of the F4F’s demise was premature. Brown managed to make it back to his carrier, Saratoga. Other likely VF-5 victims of Nishizawa included Ensign Joseph R. Daly, who was shot down in flames and badly burned but parachuted to safety just off Guadalcanal, and Lt. j.g. William M. Holt, who was killed. Notes: This article was written by Jon Guttman and originally published in the July 1998 issue of Aviation History. URL: http://www.historynet.com/magazines/aviation_history/3037341.html
Guttman, Jon. Archie Donahue: WWII Ace Pilot- Shooting Down Five Aircraft on a Single Mission was an Impressive Accomplishment, but to do it Twice in a Combat Career Required Special Skill. Historynet.com. no. July 2007, Abstract: On November 2, 1942, the squadron arrived at its first combat assignment: Guadalcanal in the Solomons. There, the Marines and their offshore U.S. Navy support were still fighting to hold the island and its airstrip, Henderson Field, code-named “Cactus” by the Allies. Second Lieutenant Donahue’s first victory came during three days and nights of naval and aerial combat that brought the struggle for the island to its climax. On November 13, Henderson-based U.S. Navy and Marine aircraft, joined by planes from the carrier Enterprise, attacked and sank the Japanese battleship Hiei, which had been crippled in a wild naval action the night before. For the Wildcat pilots, that involved protecting their bombers from Mitsubishi A6M2 Zero fighters operating from Japanese bases in the upper Solomons. In the course of those encounters, Donahue shot down a Zero off Guadalcanal, killing Chief Petty Officer Tasuke Mukai from the carrier Zuiho’s air group. That night Japanese cruisers arrived off Lunga Point and lobbed 1,400 shells at Henderson, destroying 18 American planes and damaging 32 others. They failed to render the field inoperable, however, and when Japanese Rear Adm. Raizo Tanaka’s Destroyer Squadron 2, better known to his American adversaries as the “Tokyo Express,” escorted 11 transports to Guadalcanal, every Marine and Navy aircraft that could still fly, joined by Enterprise’s planes, attacked. They damaged the retiring cruiser Maya and sank seven of the 11 transports, although “Tenacious Tanaka” ran the four remaining ships aground to land 2,000 troops and supplies, while his destroyers rescued some 5,000 survivors. Notes: This article by Jon Guttman was originally published in the July 2007 issue of Aviation History Magazine. URL: http://www.historynet.com/magazines/aviation_history/8187967.html

Guymon, Wayne and Saints at War. 1942-2000. Memoirs, 1942-2000. Descriptors: 1 folder (11 p.) 1 newspaper clipping. 1 map. 9 photocopied photographs. World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Manuscript. Abstract: Contains several narratives written by Guymon about his military experiences on the islands of Guadalcanal, Fiji, and Espirito Santos. Includes a description of his work clearing foliage on Espirito Santos. Also contains a description of the local warriors on Fiji and their role in helping to destroy fortified Japanese artillery positions. Bulk of text relates to the wartime conditions and his combat and communications experiences on Guadalcanal, where he laid telephone lines. Also includes photocopied photographs of telephone wire crews in Espirito Santos and Guadalcanal, airfield headquarters at Guadalcanal, and Japanese casualties at Guadalcanal. Contains a map sketching Japanese and American military movements during the battle at Guadalcanal. Notes: Genre/Form: Memoirs. Photographs. Clippings (Books, newspapers, etc.); Notes: Bio/History: Served in the US Marine Corps during World War II from 1942-1945. Guymon was assigned to the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing, 1st Marine Division. He was made communications chief and received the rank of master technical sergeant. General Info: Items were donated by creator, Wayne Guymon, to the Saints At War Project in 2001. OCLC: 52119036.


Haley, J. Frederick. 1980-1996. J. Frederick Haley Papers, 1980-1986. Descriptors: Authors- United States- 20th century; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan- Okinawa Island; Saipan, Battle of, Northern Mariana Islands, 1944; Guadalcanal, Battle of Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Tarawa, Battle of, Kiribati, 1943. Abstract: The J. Frederick Haley collection contains a Haley manuscript “Lt. Ski- A Man for All Seasons”, which is a eulogy for Lt. Ski after his natural death in Colorado. Lt. Ski led the first reconnaissance mission to the Island of Tarawa before the main invasion. There are some of Haley’s articles printed in the Marine Corps Gazette, and there are some photocopies of his manuscripts on Tarawa and the Japanese mortar-fire death of General Buckner on Okinawa. There are also Haley photographs that he took during Pacific Island campaigns. These include images of Japanese dead, Amtrak landing craft, and Marines hunkered down under fire. His later correspondence with the New York Times and some small town newspapers defending the Marines is also included. Notes: 1 cubic ft. (1 box); Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps. Geographic: Tinian (Northern Mariana Islands); Notes: Bio/History: J. Frederick Haley fought in the South Pacific during World War II. Afterwards he became a lawyer, but kept strong ties to the Marine Corps and particularly fellow veterans of the Pacific island campaigns. He wrote articles about the fighting on Tarawa, Saipan and other island battlefields. He also corresponded with anyone in power who denigrated or showed ignorance about the sufferings and accomplishments of the Marines. General Info: No finding aid available in repository. OCLC: 63113286.


Most contemporary accounts claim that the remains of the Goettge patrol were never discovered. In "Guadalcanal, Starvation Island" however, Eric Hammel wrote, "A patrol discovered a leg encased in a Marine legging and boondockers protruding from the sand. Nearby, an oversized, handless arm was sticking out of the ground. Marine Gunner Bill Rust thought it was either Goettge or Ringer, both of whom had been very large men. The patrol was withdrawn before they had time to recover the remains." 

Dick Camp. Star Crossed Translator. See: http://www.military.com/NewContent/0,13190,Leatherneck_Translator_080404,00.html


Headquarters, U.S. Army Forces, Far East, and Eighth U.S. Army, Military History Section, Japanese Research Division. 1955. Japanese Night Combat, Part 3. Headquarters, U.S. Army Forces, Far East, and Eighth U.S. Army, Military History Section, Japanese Research Division. Pages: 168. Descriptors: World War; 1939-1945; World War II; WWII; Imperial Japanese Army; Japanese Armed Forces; Night fighting; Japanese fighting; Rikugun; Combat tactics; Drills; Training; China; Guadalcanal; Hong Kong; Burma; New Guinea. Abstract: Part three of three parts, this paper compiled by a number of former officers of the Imperial Japanese Army contains a supplement of twelve examples of night combat engagements of the Japanese Army. Part 1 contains general discussion of the principles and accumulated experience of the Japanese in night combat, part 2 contains five appendices consisting of appropriate excerpts from Japanese Army
Heavilin, Gale E. 1986. “War Planning Assumptions and Errors in Military Strategy.” Air War Coll Maxwell AFB, AL: March 1986. Volume: ADA177846, Pages: 120 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Military Strategy, *Military Forces(Foreign), *Military Planning, Warfare, Integrated Systems, Strategy, Terrain, Planning, Conflict, Battles, Air Power, Southeast Asia, Land Areas.Zmilitary Strategy, *Military Forces(Foreign), *Military Planning, Warfare, Integrated Systems, Strategy, Terrain, Planning, Conflict, Battles, Air Power, Southeast Asia, Land Areas. Abstract: This paper analyzes and assesses opposing strategies at Guadalcanal and at Dien Bien Phu. The analysis shows basic strategy, highlights key planning assumptions, and identifies force structures. The author concludes that battles are lost and campaigns fail because commanders make classic, but avoidable, errors in military thinking from which come the faulty planning assumptions upon which their losing strategies are based. He shows that Japan failed to hold Guadalcanal because the Imperial General HQ did not have an integrated strategy for defense of the southeast perimeter of the Greater East Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere and it chose positions in the southern Solomons that over-reached the range of land-based air power. He concludes that the French beat themselves at Dien Bien Phu because they: lost sight of any clear war aims in Indochina; underestimated the capabilities of the Viet Minh; overestimated their own capabilities while ignoring significant limitations on their own military power; did not to use advantage the terrain on which they chose to accept battle; and failed to plan adequately for retreat. Notes: Approved for Public Release; Document Partially Illegible. Database: DTIC AND NTIS.

Heavilin, G. E. 1986. “War Planning Assumptions and Errors in Military Strategy. Research Rept.” Air War Collection, Maxwell AFB, AL. Mar. Volume: AUAWC86094, Pages: 121. Descriptors: Military forces Foreign; Warfare; Battles; Southeast asia; Military planning; Military strategy; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: This paper analyzes and assesses opposing strategies at Guadalcanal and at Dien Bien Phu. The analysis shows basic strategy, highlights key planning assumptions, and identifies force structures. The author concludes that battles are lost and campaigns fail because commanders make classic, but avoidable, errors in military thinking from which come the faulty planning assumptions upon which their losing strategies are based. He shows that Japan failed to hold Guadalcanal because the Imperial General HQ did not have an integrated strategy for defense of the southeast perimeter of the Greater East Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere and it chose positions in the southern Solomons that over-reached the range of land-based air power. He concludes that the French beat themselves at Dien Bien Phu because they: lost sight of any clear war aims in Indochina; underestimated the capabilities of the Viet Minh; overestimated their own capabilities while ignoring significant limitations on their own military power; did not to use advantage the terrain on which they chose to accept battle; and failed to plan adequately for retreat. DTIC Accession Number: ADA177846. OCLC: 36251105.


Natural History of Guadalcanal

World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Area; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Heiberg, Kristen F.- Interviews; Benham (Destroyer: DD-397); United States. Navy- Electrician’s mates- Biography; Government publication; National government publication. Abstract: Kristen F. Heiberg served on six warships during World War II, including the destroyer USS Benham DD 397. The Battle of Midway, in which Benham rescued 721 survivors from the carrier Yorktown, and later rescued survivors from the destroyer Hammann after both Yorktown and Hammann were torpedoed by the Japanese submarine I-168. On 15 November 1942, when Japanese torpedo fired from a warship blew off the Benham’s bow during the Battle of Guadalcanal, he and the rest of the crew were rescued by USS Gwin DD 433. Notes: Interviewed on 6 October 2000. The Naval Historical Foundation donates the materials to the Naval Historical Center... --Oral history donation form. Other Titles: Electrician’s mate first class Kristen F. Heiberg, service on destroyers in World War II; Responsibility: oral history conducted by Phillip F. Reid. OCLC: 51522371.


“The Hell I Can’t: The Boats That Made The Landings Possible, And The Man Behind Them.” 2004. American Heritage of Invention & Technology. Summer. Volume 20, Issue 1, Pages 22-25. Descriptors: Landing; Boats; Beaches; Personnel; Vehicles; Charging; Sport utility vehicles; Diesel engines; Discharge; Off road vehicles; Shores; Marine engines; Inventions; Islands; Sicily; Ramps; Liquid crystal polymers; Coastlines; Structural steels. Abstract: During World War II Adolf Hitler called Andrew Jackson Higgins “the new Noah.” After the war Dwight Eisenhower called Higgins “the man who won the war for us.” Soldiers and Marines charged out of Higgins’s little landing boats to secure beachheads all through World War II, coming ashore in North Africa, Sicily, mainland Italy, on Omaha and Utah Beaches on the Normandy coast, and on a succession of Pacific islands that stretched to the outskirts of Japan itself, places with names like Biak, Wadke, Guadalcanal, Tarawa, and Iwo Jima. Those landings always began with Higgins boats. The GIs who rode them up onto hostile shores also knew them by their official designations, LCM (landing craft, mechanized), LCP (landing craft, personnel), LCPL (landing craft, personnel, large), and, smallest and best known, LCVP (landing craft, vehicle, personnel). The LCVP was 36 feet long and 11 feet wide, and it held a platoon of 36 fully equipped men or a dozen men and a jeep. It was built mainly of wood-mahogany, pine, and oak-and was unique in that it could run its bow up onto a beach and then quickly power back off and head for open water. No other craft could do that. The Higgins boat drew only 2 feet 2 inches at the bow and 3 feet aft; it had a steel ramp at the front that dropped down to discharge troops; it was powered by a 225-horsepower Gray diesel engine that could speed it toward a beach as fast as 12 knots. Database: CSA Technology Research Database. ISSN: 8756-7296.

“Henderson Field Rededicated.” 1995. Marine Corps Gazette. 12. Volume 79, Issue 12; Pages 3. Descriptors: Dedication services; Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Henderson, Lofton. Notes: Marine Corps Gazette; Article; Source Information: Dec95, Vol. 79 Issue 12, p3; Subject Term: Dedication services; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Henderson, Lofton; Number of Pages: 2/3p; Illustrations: 1bw; Document Type: Article. Abstract: Reports on the rededication of Henderson Field in the Solomon Islands on October 26, 1995. Field’s key role in the Guadalcanal Campaign; Capture and retention in the Pacific War; Naming of the field in honor of Major Lofton R. Henderson; Representation of the Henderson family at the rededication. Reports on the
rededication of Henderson Field in the Solomon Islands on October 26, 1995. Field’s key role in the Guadalcanal Campaign; Capture and retention in the Pacific War; Naming of the field in honor of Major Lofton R. Henderson; Representation of the Henderson family at the rededication. ISSN: 0025-3170.


Henry, James J., IV. 2000. “A Historical Review of the Development of Doctrine for Command Relationships in Amphibious Warfare.” Army Command And General Staff Coll Fort Leavenworth KS. Volume: ADA383832, Pages: 123 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Amphibious Operations; Military History; Warfare; Marine Corps; Military Doctrine; Navy; Theses; Joint Military Activities; Spain; Okinawa. Abstract: This thesis traces the development of doctrine for command relationships in amphibious warfare. The study examines the command relationships employed in landing operations through World War I, with emphasis on Santiago in the Spanish-American War and Gallipoli in World War I as the driving forces behind joint and naval doctrine development. From this background, the thesis outlines the efforts of the Joint Board and Marine Corps Schools to codify% their doctrine, primarily in the interwar years. The joint process led to Joint Action of the Army and the Navy and Joint Overseas Expeditions of 1927 and 1933, predecessors to Joint Publication 0-2, Unified Action Armed Forces. Naval doctrine begun by the Marine Corps Schools became the Navy’s Fleet Training Publication 167, Landing Operations Doctrine, US. Navy, 1938, predecessor to Joint Publication 3-02, Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations. The thesis then examines the employment of that doctrine, and the doctrinal changes and lessons that resulted, in three major amphibious operations, WATCHTOWER (Guadalcanal), ICEBERG (Okinawa), and CHROMITE (Inchon). The study concludes with a discussion of the relevance of the historical development to today’s doctrinal issues and provides recommendations for further research. Notes: Master’s thesis 6 Aug 1999-2 Jun 2000. Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC and NTIS. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA383832

Henry, Philip M. 1998. “Operational Protection of the Guadalcanal Operation Landings.” Volume: ADA348452, Pages: 22 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Military History; *Combat Support; *Naval Planning; *Military Art; Risk; Decision Making; Protection; Aircraft Carriers; Naval Logistics; Military Commanders; Carrier Based Aircraft; *Guadalcanal; Operational Logistics; *Operational Protection. Abstract: It has been argued that the operational commander’s decision to withdraw the aircraft carrier-based operational protection earlier than planned at Guadalcanal placed the operation in extremis. The operational commander’s decision as to what was necessary and possible to protect with the aircraft carriers was based on the means available and the risk involved. In view of the information he had his actions can be justified, but his overall command of the operation is subject to criticism. There were things that could have been done better, and there are lessons to be learned. In this paper I look at the issue of operational protection of the landing during the planning stage, and when the operational commander made the decision to withdraw it. Centers of gravity at all levels are considered in order to analyze the operations commander’s decision. Lastly, I consider what the operations commander could have done better, and at the need to properly plan for operational protection in a future operation maneuver from the sea. Notes: Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC and NTIS. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA348452

Natural History of Guadalcanal

Contains the following types of materials: correspondence, letters, unit histories, newspapers, magazines, books, manuals, maps, charts, ephemera. Contains information pertaining to the following war: World War II (WWII). Contains information pertaining to the following military unit: Western Pacific Base Command. General description of the collection: The Harold P. Henry papers include unit histories of 525th Quartermaster (QM) Group and subordinate logistical and support units, describing service in Guadalcanal and Solomons; miscellaneous papers including menus, programs, and information guides reflect dependents’ life on Saipan (1946); a few items from Newfoundland service (1943); ships newsletters; newspapers; and Quartermaster Corps history. Notes: General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute/ Carlisle Barracks, Carlzsle, Pa. 17013-5008. Other Titles: Papers of Harold P. Henry; Henry papers. OCLC: 47785019.

Henry, Philip; Naval War College (U.S.); Joint Military Operations Dept and Defense Technical Information Center (U.S.). 1998. Operational Protection of the Guadalcanal Operation Landings. Newport, R.I: Naval War College. Descriptors: 22 pages; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations, American; Operational art (Military science); Government publication; National government publication. Abstract: It has been argued that the operational commander’s decision to withdraw the aircraft carrier-based operational protection earlier than planned at Guadalcanal placed the operation in extremis. The operational commander’s decision as to what was necessary and possible to protect with the aircraft carriers was based on the means available and the risk involved. In view of the information he had his actions can be justified, but his overall command of the operation is subject to criticism. There were things that could have been done better, and there are lessons to be learned. In this paper I look at the issue of operational protection of the landing during the planning stage, and when the operational commander made the decision to withdraw it. Centers of gravity at all levels are considered in order to analyze the operations commander’s decision. Lastly, I consider what the operations commander could have done better, and at the need to properly plan for operational protection in a future operation maneuver from the sea. Notes: “13 February 1998.” Includes bibliographical references (p. 18-19). Reproduction: Photocopy. Ft. Belvoir, Va.: Defense Technical Information Center/ 1998. 28 cm. Report: ADA 348452; Responsibility: by Philip M. Henry. OCLC: 45519922.


Hoffman, Jon. 1994. Once a Legend: “Red Mike” Edson of the Raiders. Novato, CA: Presidio Press. xvi, 434 pages: ill., maps; 24 cm. Descriptors: Edson, Merritt. Abstract: U.S. Marines are no strangers to distributed and simultaneous operations. In World War II, they devised a multidimensional series of strikes to dislodge the Japanese defending Guadalcanal and its surrounding islands. Mixing naval gunfire with close air support, Rear Admiral Richmond Kelly Turner’s Task Force 62 conducted five separate assaults in early August 1942 that initially stunned the Japanese defenders. Lieutenant Colonel Merritt Edson’s 1st Raider Battalion conducted an assault on Tulagi, while another rifle company landed on Florida Island as a supporting attack. The 1st Marine Division then conducted the main attack on Guadalcanal. Later in the afternoon, the 1st Parachute Battalion seized Gavutu and Tanambogo. This demonstrated the versatility of well-trained and well-led Marines, in both conventional and unconventional warfare. ISBN: 0891414932.

Hoffman, Jon T. Battle for Henderson Field: Lieutenant Colonel Lewis B. Puller Commanded the 1st Battalion, 7th MarinesThe 7th Marines’ Tenacious Defense of the Hills Overlooking Henderson Field Secured Victory at Guadalcanal. no. July 2007, Abstract: Puller and his battalion had arrived on Guadalcanal with the rest of the 7th Marine Regiment on September 18. Although Chesty had trained his men well, the green unit did not get off to an auspicious start. The first night ashore, Japanese ships inflicted several casualties when they bombarded the coconut grove in which the regiment had bivouacked. During a battalion-size patrol over the next two days, Puller lost a few more men and was incensed when his battalion joined in unprovoked nighttime shooting with other men of the regiment. At the Second Battle of the Matanikau later that month, the Japanese thwarted 1st Marine Division commander Maj. Gen. Alexander A. Vandegrift’s effort to gain control of the Matanikau River. In the process, a good portion of the 1/7 (under the command of Puller’s executive officer) was trapped for a time behind enemy lines. Only Chesty’s daring efforts in commandeering a destroyer and supervising an amphibious withdrawal under fire saved the force from annihilation. Having suffered more than 10 percent casualties (including the battalion executive officer and all three company commanders) at the end of 10 days on the island, the morale of the 1/7 was at a low ebb. Notes: This article was written by Jon T. Hoffman and originally appeared in the November 2002 issue of World War II. URL: http://www.historynet.com/magazines/world_war_2/3033641.html?page=1&c=y

Hoffman, Jon T. 2002. “‘Chesty’ Puller’s Epic Stand.” World War II. 11. Volume 17, Issue 4; 4, Pages 34. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Puller, Lewis; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; Solomon Islands. Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: Nov2002, Vol. 17 Issue 4, p34; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Puller, Lewis; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 11p; Illustrations: 1 map, 1c, 10bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 7377. Abstract: Describes the Battle of Edson’s Ridge in Guadalcanal Island between U.S. and Japanese forces from September 11 to 13, 1942. Description of the military leadership fo U.S. Lieutenant Colonel Lewis B. Puller; Factors which contributed to a U.S. victory during the battle; Significance of the U.S. victory to the U.S. military campaign in the area. Describes the Battle of Edson’s Ridge...
in Guadalcanal Island between U.S. and Japanese forces from September 11 to 13, 1942.
Description of the military leadership of U.S. Lieutenant Colonel Lewis B. Puller; Factors which contributed to a U.S. victory during the battle; Significance of the U.S. victory to the U.S. military campaign in the area. ISSN: 0898-4204.


Hollway, Don. World War II: The Cactus Air Force Fought at Guadalcanal: A Small Group of Die-Hard Aviators Fended Off Japanese Invaders at Guadalcanal, Code-Named ‘Cactus.’ no. July 2007, Abstract: Believing the amphibious assault to be a temporary, diversionary raid (and seeing that they were outnumbered 3-to-1), Japanese ground forces on Guadalcanal initially withdrew into the jungle, expecting air attacks to drive the Americans off. Over the next two days, land-based Japanese navy planes, including Mitsubishi G4M bombers (Allied code name “Betty”) and Zero (“Zeke”) fighters, downed 20 percent of the U.S. Navy fighters sent against them but lost nearly half their own. The loss of four cruisers and a destroyer in the sea battle of Savo on the night of August 9, combined with the continuing threat of daylight air attack, caused the U.S. Navy to withdraw. The Marines were left on “the Canal” with what they referred to as the only unsinkable aircraft carrier in the Solomon Islands—the Guadalcanal airfield. They used captured construction equipment to finish the 2,600-foot runway, adding an extra 1,200 feet for good measure. Although bereft of taxiways, revetments, drainage and radar, the airfield--christened Henderson Field after Marine Major Lofton Henderson, who died leading a dive-bomber attack in the June 4 Battle of Midway--boasted Japanese hangars, machine shops and radio installations, a pagodalike control tower complete with a warning siren for air raids, and even an ice plant. But not until August 20 did Guadalcanal--code-named “Cactus”--take delivery of 12 Douglas SBD Dauntless dive bombers and their escort of 19 Grumman F4F-4 Wildcat fighters, the advance squadrons of Marine Air Group (MAG) 23. “I was close to tears and I was not alone,” said Maj. Gen. Archer Vandergrift, the Marine ground commander, “when the first SBD taxied up and this handsome and dashing aviator jumped to the ground. ‘Thank God you have come,’ I told him.” Within 12 hours the fledgling “Cactus Air Force” helped finish off a Japanese infantry assault. The next day, the American fliers gave an enemy bomber raid from Rabaul, New Britain, a rude welcome. In his first combat engagement, Captain John Lucien Smith, commanding Marine Fighter Squadron (VMF) 223, and four F4Fs met the fighter escort, 13 Zeros of the crack Tainan Kokutai (naval air group) led by Lieutenant Shiro Kawai, head-on. All four Wildcats survived, though two were badly damaged and one cracked up attempting a dead-stick landing. No Zeros were destroyed, but Smith thought the skirmish “did a great deal of good” by giving the Marines a better idea of the Zero’s capabilities while giving them confidence in the performance and durability of their own Wildcats. Later that week, Captain Marion Carl, who had downed a Zero at Midway, got two Bettys and another Zero. Carl and Smith were to become friendly rivals. The balance of power on Guadalcanal seesawed with the waxing and waning of fighter strength at Henderson. By the end of August the Cactus Air Force included 14 Bell P-400 Airacobra fighter-bombers (export versions of the company’s P-39) of the 67th Fighter Squadron, U.S. Army Air Forces (USAAF), and 19 F4Fs of VMF-224, under Major Robert E. Galer. Database: Historynet.com. URL: http://www.historynet.com/magazines/aviation_history/3028101.html
Descriptors: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943; United States Army-Expeditionary forces; Guadalcanal, Battle of, 1942-1943. Notes: Illustration. ISSN: 0024-3019.

Descriptors: Combat sustainability (Military science); Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Naval art & science; Naval education; United States. Navy; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands. Notes: War in History; Article; Source Information: Apr2006, Vol. 13 Issue 2, 171 pages; Subject Term: Combat sustainability (Military science); Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Naval art & science; Subject Term: Naval education; Subject Term: United States. Navy; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 29p; Illustrations: 2 diagrams; Document Type: Article. Abstract: Examinations of the US Navy’s tactical performance during the nocturnal engagements of the Guadalcanal campaign have largely ignored pre-war tactical developments, focusing instead on the details of the actions and extrapolating from their results to draw conclusions about the navy’s preparedness for war. This article adopts a different methodology, concentrating first on the pre-war preparations and then examining the night battles in light of the tactical doctrine the navy developed before the Second World War. The result is a comprehensive view of the navy’s night tactical doctrine, which provides the reasons for its successes and failures off Guadalcanal. ISSN: 0968-3445.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Horwitz, David. 1942-1943. David Horwitz Papers, 1942-1943. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan- Okinawa Island. Abstract: Diary of David Horwitz, June 25, 1942 to April 14, 1943, including descriptions of the Guadalcanal Campaign; five letters, August to October 1942, from David Horwitz to his parents, Mr. and Mrs. Solomon Horwitz. Also, one discharge certificate, May 23, 1943; photograph and five clippings; maps of Lunga area, Guadalcanal, October 1942; calendar; and poetry. Notes: 20 items; Named Corp: United States. Navy- Aerographers. United States. Marine Corps. Genre/Form: Diaries. Geographic: Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands). Notes: Bio/History: David Horwitz was an attorney in Elmira, New York with Fidelman and Horwitz. A U.S. Navy aerologist (meteorologist) assigned to the Marines in World War II, he fought at Guadalcanal in 1942 and died in 1945 from burns suffered at Okinawa. General Info: Preferred citation: David Horwitz Papers, #2759. Division of Rare and Manuscript Collections, Cornell University Library. Photocopy of this material is available at Harpur College, Binghamton, New York I3901. Photocopy of this material is available at the U.S. Marine Corps Headquarters, Oral History Unit, Historical Branch, G 3 Division, Washington, D.C. 20380. Item list. OCLC: 63939134.


“How One of the Society’s Maps Saved a Precious Cargo.” 1947. National Geographic. 06. Volume 91, Issue 6; 6, Pages 844. Descriptors: Geography- Societies, etc; MAP publishing; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands; United States. Notes: National Geographic; Article; Source Information: June 1947, Vol. 91 Issue 6, pages 843 (photo) and 844; Subject Term: Geography- Societies, etc. Subject Term: Map publishing; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Geographic Subject: United States; Number of Pages: 1p; Document Type: Article. Abstract: Focuses on role of maps published by the
U.S.-based National Geographical Society in saving the cargo going to Guadalcanal Island. Significance of the maps during wars; Features of the maps. ISSN: 0027-9358.

Howard, Ernest G. 1992. “Demand the Advantage: When is Airpower Central to a Campaign?” Maxwell Afb, Al: Air University, Maxwell Afb, Al; School of Advanced Airpower Studies. May 1992. 62 pages. Descriptors: *Joint Military Activities; *Military Planning; *Air Power; Military Operations; Military History; Warfare; Theses; Documents; Military Art; Guadalcanal Campaign; South Atlantic War of 1982. Abstract: The purpose of this study is to provide joint planners with a means to determine when airpower should be the central element of a campaign. Additionally, this study can help planners understand not only when airpower should support surface forces but also when the roles of joint forces may be expected to change as the campaign progresses. To accomplish its purpose, this study provides an analysis of two island campaigns in which air, land, and sea forces were employed; the Guadalcanal Campaign of 1942 and the South Atlantic War of 1982. This study documents and analyzes how the role of airpower evolved and changed in relative significance to other forces during course of each campaign. Finally, this study may provide a useful framework for campaign analysis, in general, or for the study of the historical practice of operational art. Future students, who wish to research the tensions and complementary effects associated with planning joint operations and employing joint forces, may capitalize on the framework used in this study to pursue their studies. Notes: Approved for Public Release. DTIC: ADA376280


Hughes, W. D., III. 1993. “Vice Admiral Frank Jack Fletcher: Scapegoat or Operational Artist?” 22 February 1993. Volume: ADA263953, Pages. Descriptors: *Naval Operations; *Decision Making; Aircraft Carriers; Beaches; Friction; Guidance; Historians; Islands; Missions;
Navy; Risk; Standards; Military Tactics; Military Strategy; Marine Corps. Abstract: This paper examines Admiral Frank Jack Fletcher’s decision to withdraw the three aircraft carriers during the early days of the Guadalcanal campaign in August 1942. Many officers, historians, and Marines to this day criticize this decision as a bad decision that resulted in the naval defeat at Savo Island on 9 August 1942 and as another example of the Navy deserting the Marines on the beach. Research into the original documents and a careful examination of the written histories provide a different insight into the roots of the decision, particularly when evaluating the decision with some principles of operational thinking as opposed to the sometimes disjointed tactical and strategic thought of 1942. By today’s standards, the decision is correct. By yesteryear’s standards, it also was the correct decision given the condition of the Navy, the strategic guidance and operational level friction, and the tactical situation. Admiral Fletcher followed orders providing the requisite tactical support while not risking the operational and strategic mission by further exposing his carriers to unnecessary risk. Notes: Final rept. 19 Dec 92-22 Feb 93; Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC AND NTIS.


“Humor in Uniform.” 1958. Reader's Digest. April 1958. Page 134. “The first part of this I know is true; perhaps the rest could never be properly checked. But when I was a Red Cross hospital worker on Guadalcanal during World War II, Navy doctors and nurses gloated over the case of a certain admiral who, bedded snugly in a Navy hospital with nothing worse than athlete's foot and non-critical complications, spent his time chasing nurses, ‘pulling rank’ on enlisted patients and harassing the overworked medical staff. This went on until the day an enterprising young seaman inmate borrowed a surgical gown, cap and face mask, swept into the admiral's room with a brisk “Good morning,” glanced at the chart, ordered the patient over on his stomach and proceeded to take his temperature. Before he could finish the job, however, the man in white
explained that he had another urgent case to attend to and left, gravely warning the grumbling seadog not to move until his return. One hour later the nurse, making her rounds, froze in consternation on the officer's doorstep. “Admiral!” she gasped. “What - what happened?” “Taking my temperature,” the admiral growled. “Anything unusual about taking an admiral's temperature?” “N-no, sir,” the startled nurse managed to reply, “but, Admiral - with a daffodil?”


Inbody, D. S. 2000. “Getting Past Guadalcanal: The Joint Force Commander’s Guidelines for the Control of Amphibious Forces. Final Rept.” Naval War Collection, Newport, RI. Joint Military Operations Dept. 19 May. Pages: 31. Descriptors: Military forces United states; Defense systems; Models; Task forces; Navy; Case studies; Tactical air support; Viability; History; Fleets Ships; Instructions; Land areas; Amphibious operations; Military commanders; Landing forces; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: The introduction of an amphibious task force into a Joint Operations Area will require the Joint Force Commander to decide how best to use the force and the proper command relations between the commanders of the amphibious task force (CATF) and landing force (CLF), and other key commanders in the Joint Task Force. Amphibious operations are fundamentally naval in nature and operate under unified command. These attributes give amphibious operations unique advantages over land defenses that must not be diluted by inadvertent or arbitrary decisions on command relations. ‘Support Command’, as an alternative to ‘OPCON Command’ is a viable command relationship between CATF and CLF as demonstrated by historical case study. Air support can be provided by commanders not under the direct command of CATF or CLF if clear and unambiguous direction is provided in an initiating directive or operations order. Fleet command and component command models are presented as methods of structuring a naval amphibious force. Notes: Product reproduced from digital image.

Order this product from NTIS: ADA381666XSP.


Jacobsen, Philip H. 2007. “Station AL - Guadalcanal: A Full Service WWII Cryptologic Unit.” Cryptologia. Jan. Volume 31, Issue 1, Pages 57-75. Descriptors: Traffic flow; Books; Personnel; Traffic engineering. Abstract: Station AL was a small but efficient intercept, direction finder, traffic analysis, cryptanalysis and reporting station that was operational during the early hectic days of World War II. It was established on Guadalcanal amidst the heavy fighting there. Many cryptologic researchers and writers are not even aware that such a facility existed and most have not included it to any degree in their books or articles. Although opportunities were lost due to lack of personnel, equipment and the support of various commands high and low, Station AL achieved many successes. ISSN: 0161-1194.

Jaffe, Sam; Bacon, Lloyd; McCall, Mary C., et al. 1942, 1995, 1998, etc. The Fighting Sullivans. Asheville, NC: Distributed by Ivy Classics Video. Volume: 1 videocassette (110 min.). Descriptors: Feature films; World War, 1939-1945- Drama; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943- Drama; Waterloo (Iowa)- Biography- Drama; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Describes the true story of the five Sullivan brothers from Waterloo, Iowa, whose togetherness becomes final as they share a watery grave off Guadalcanal when a torpedo sinks their cruiser. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Originally produced as motion picture in 1942. Participants: Brothers: Edward Ryan, John Campbell, James Cardwell, John Alvin, George


Jersey, Stanley C. Ordinary Marines: Guadalcanal’s Lonely Patrol during World War II: An Unsung Unit Patched Together from a Depleted Battalion of 2nd Division Leathernecks Cleared the Way for the Legendary Carlson’s Raiders on Guadalcanal. no. July 2007, Abstract: Having held Henderson Field, the Marines now faced the task of destroying the enemy on both sides of the island and trying to secure, once and for all, the first steppingstone in the Solomon Islands chain. While much attention was focused on Japanese positions on the western part of the island, General Vandegrift knew he would have to do something about roving bands of enemy soldiers reportedly in and around Aola. Following the series of brutal encounters with the Japanese, however, Vandegrift did not have enough men left to launch a full-scale attack in two directions. Instead, the “Old Breed” commander decided to send a small raiding party from nearby Tulagi Island to neutralize Japanese strongholds around Aola. Notes: This article was written by Stanley C. Jersey and originally appeared in the October 2006 issue of World War II magazine. URL: http://www.historynet.com/historical_conflicts/4295552.html?page=1&c=y

Jersey, Stanley C. 2006. “Ordinary Marines. (Cover Story).” World War II. 10. Volume 21, Issue 6; 6, Pages 46-51. Descriptors: Marines; Military art & science; Raids (Military science); World War, 1939-1945; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands). Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: Oct2006, Vol. 21 Issue 6, p46; Subject Term: Marines; Subject Term: Military art & science; Subject Term: Raids (Military science); Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Number of Pages: 6; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 3606. Abstract: The article highlights the exploits of the unsung unit patched together from a depleted battalion of the 2nd Division of the U.S. Marines that paved the way for the legendary Carlson’s Raiders on Guadalcanal during the World War II. To map out the attack strategy for Gurabasu, Major William K. Enright and Captain Richard T. Stafford, the commanding officer of Company C, 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines, flew from Tulagi to Guadalcanal on October 6, 1942. The article highlights the exploits of the unsung unit patched together from a depleted battalion of the 2nd Division of the U.S. Marines that paved the way for the legendary Carlson’s Raiders on Guadalcanal during the World War II. To map out the attack strategy for Gurabasu, Major William K. Enright and Captain Richard T. Stafford, the commanding officer of
Company C, 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines, flew from Tulagi to Guadalcanal on October 6, 1942. ISBN: 089842040.

Jersey, Stanley C. Three-Day Pass to Where? HistoryNet.com. no. July 2007, Abstract: May I make nit-picky corrections to your article “A Very Important Prisoner” (March 2007). In the story, author Gene Santoro states that Captain John Burden (MC, XIV Army Corps) became the first Japanese language officer in combat on Guadalcanal Island in December 1942. He was mistaken. There were three other Japanese-speaking intelligence officers on Guadalcanal before Captain Burden arrived in December. They were 2nd Lt. Ralph Corry, USMC, with the Fifth Marines, who was killed on August 12 as the translator and a member of the ill-fated Goettge patrol, and 1st Lt. Eugene Boardman, USMC, with the Second Marines. Boardman arrived on Tulagi Island on August 20 from the rear base at Espiritu Santo, New Hebrides Islands. The third officer was Captain Sherwood F. Moran, USMC, with Headquarters Company, 1st Marine Division. Also, Santoro goes overboard when he quotes Captain Burden: “Any soldier bringing in a POW got a three-day pass and ice cream.” A three-day pass to where? On Guadalcanal? Carlsbad, Calif.. Notes: Letters From Readers - June 2007 - World War II. URL: http://www.historynet.com/magazines/world_war_2/7463732.html


“John Basilone, Gunnery Sergeant, USMC.” (See Basilone, John).


Jones, James. 1998. The Thin Red Line. New York: Delta Trade Paperbacks. Descriptors: 510 pages; World War, 1939-1945- Fiction; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943-. Abstract: They are the men of C-for-Charlie Company. “Mad” 1st Sgt. Eddie Welsh, SSgt. Don Doll, Pvt. John Bell, Capt. James Stein, Cpl. Fife, and dozens more just like them, infantrymen in “this man’s army” who are about to land grim and white-faced on an atoll in the Pacific called Guadalcanal. This is their story, a shatteringly realistic walk into hell and back. In the days ahead some will earn medals; others will do anything they can dream up to get evacuated before they land in a muddy grave. But they will all discover the thin red line that divides the sane from the mad, and the living from the dead, in this unforgettable portrait that captures for all time the total experience of men at war. Notes: Genre/Form: War stories. ISBN: 9780385324083. OCLC: 38452850.


Kabutaulaka, Tarcisius Tara. “Failed State” and the War on Terror: Intervention in Solomon Islands. East-West Center. 2004-02-29. no. July 2007, Abstract: “A heightened sense of vulnerability to terror has touched every part of the world, including the Pacific Islands, and has linked small nations to large in new ways. Since the September 11 tragedy, concern has risen that so-called ‘failed states,’ losing the struggle to maintain law and order at home, could become springboards for terrorism. Australia has shed its reluctance to intervene militarily in Pacific trouble-spots—such as Solomon Islands, whose descent into chaos and violence was sparked in 1998 by civil unrest on Guadalcanal. With regional support, Australia led a mission in 2003 to restore law and order. A short-term success, the mission leaves questions about its long-term ability to achieve either well-being for Solomon Islands or security for the region. Its emphasis on shoring up a perennially weak central government, and its inattention to other pillars of Solomons society, threaten to undermine its success and create a crippling sense of dependency. For the mission to succeed, it must empower Solomon Islanders to take charge of their own destiny.” URL: http://www.eastwestcenter.org/stored/pdfs/api072.pdf


Keach, Stacy Kenner, Robert; National Geographic Society (U.S.) and National Geographic Video. 1994. La Flota Perdida De Guadalcanal. Mexico, D.F: VideoVisa. Volume: 1 videocassette
Natural History of Guadalcanal

(ca. 106 min.), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Guerra Mundial II, 1939-1945- Campañas; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: En 1942, la Segunda Guerra Mundial se desarrolló alrededor de una isla en el Pacífico sur llamada Guadalcanal. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Participants: Narrated by Stacy Keach. Responsibility: produced by the National Geographic Society; National Geographic Video. Produced and directed by Robert Kenner; written by Kage Kleiner; photographed by Robert Elfstrom; edited by Leonard Feinstein; music by Mark Adler. OCLC: 36898273.

Keach, Stacy; National Geographic Society (U.S.) and Columbia TriStar Home Video. 1993. The Lost Fleet of Guadalcanal. Burbank, CA: Distributed by Columbia TriStar Home Video. Volume: 1 videodisc (112 min.), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Video recordings for the hearing impaired; Video recordings; Videodiscs; Videorecording; Videodisc. Abstract: Fifty years after the famous battle, the brutal events are retraced as the underwater graveyard of 50 warships is explored. Includes memories of those who fought and survived. Notes: System Info: Laser disc; stereo. Notes: Closed captioned for the hearing impaired. “53316.” Participants: Narrator, Stacy Keach. Responsibility: produced by the National Geographic Society; produced and directed by Robert Kenner; written by Kage Kleiner. ISBN: 0800128664; OCLC: 29563252.


Kelly, Arthur L. Marshall, William J. Suchanek, Jeffrey. Blevins, Jon; Colonel Arthur L. Kelly American Veterans Project and University of Kentucky Oral History Program. 1985. Veterans of World War II Oral History Project. Volume: 333 interviews (1000 hours), Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Veterans; World war, 1939-1945- Personal narratives; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Prisoners and prisons; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii), Attack on, 1941; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Saipan, Battle of, Northern Mariana Islands, 1944; Ardennes, Battle of the, 1944-1945; Submarine warfare; Bataan Death March, Philippines, 1942; Palawan Massacre, Philippines, 1944; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Tarawa, Battle of, Kiribati, 1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Tunisia; Anzio Beachhead, 1944; Non-musical recording; Cassette recording (cas). Abstract: World War II veterans from Kentucky discuss campaigns in Europe, Africa, and the Pacific; the attack on Pearl Harbor; Anzio, Italy; the Battle of the Bulge; the United States Army Air Force; bombing raids; Iwo Jima, Japan; Saipan; Guam; kamikaze attacks; submarine warfare; the Bataan Death March in the Philippines; the Palawan Massacre in the Philippines; and the experience of prisoners of war. Notes: Geographic: Guam. Notes: Principal interviewers: Arthur L. Kelly, William J. Marshall, Jeffrey Suchanek, Jon Blevins. Interviews were collected beginning in 1985 and continue. General Info: Collection is available by contacting the program. Written permission from the interviewee is required for some interviews. All rights to interviews, including but not restricted to legal title, copyrights and literary property rights, have been transferred to the University of Kentucky. Interviews may not be reproduced without permission. User copies available for 30 day loan. OCLC: 61161222.


Kimball, William H. 1994. “Command & Control Little Beavers Style: Arleigh Burke in the Solomon Islands Campaign.” Naval War College, Newport, RI. Dept of Operations. 17 June 1994. Volume: ADA283486, Pages: 44. Descriptors: Burke Arleigh; Solomon Islands Campaign. Abstract: World War II command and control systems were more rudimentary than those we have today. Additionally, operational naval commanders as late as 1943 based their doctrine on prewar perceptions of war at sea. The result was a series of defeats in the waters around Guadalcanal and in the Slot. As commanders tried to reassess their tactics and operations, attempting to shift the tide of battle in the Solomon Islands, Commodore Arleigh A. Burke assumed his first wartime command. As a commander of destroyer divisions and squadrons, Burke developed and implemented an aggressive fighting doctrine that changed the operational employment of destroyers in battle. Stressing unity of command, surprise, and delegation of authority, Burke’s doctrine lead to significant successes in surface engagements in the South Command and control, Little Beavers style, Arleigh burke in the Solomon Islands campaign Pacific. Arleigh Burke is not only a great historical sea story, but provides an example of successful command and control in combat situations while utilizing minimal technological systems. Notes: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited. Database: DTIC AND NTIS: ADA283486.


Kitson, J. D. Cook 3rd Class William Pinckney. no. July 2007, Abstract: Ship’s Name Will Honor Heroism of One Shipmate Who Saved Another. The explosion that rocked the ammunition handling room of the aircraft carrier Enterprise killed four men immediately. Outside the hull, the Battle of Santa Cruz Islands raged on, part of the fierce Guadalcanal campaign of 1942. Inside, flames and suffocating smoke threatened the lives of William Pinckney, an officers’ cook from South Carolina, and the other surviving sailor, a boatswain’s mate. They tried to get out through a hatch to the hangar deck, but gasoline fumes knocked out the boatswain’s mate. Summoning his strength, Beaufort native Pinckney carried his shipmate to safety. For his heroism, he was
eventually awarded the Navy Cross -- the second African American to receive the honor. He will
soon receive a new, posthumous honor: becoming the namesake for the Navy’s newest guided-
missile destroyer. In February 2000, then-Navy Secretary Richard Danzig said the 41st Arleigh
Burke-class guided-missile destroyer will be christened the USS Pinckney (DDG 91). The ship,
under construction by Ingalls Shipbuilding of Pascagoula, Miss., is scheduled to be commissioned
in 2003. URL:
http://www.military.com/Recruiting/Content/0,13898,diversity_williampinckney,,0,0.html

[Video
c

p.); World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Knaak, Stanley Roy, 1921-1993;
Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History, Military; Manuscript. Abstract: Papers concern Stanley
Roy Knaak, who served during World War II in the US Navy aboard USS South Dakota as a
Machinist Mate, 2nd Class. Contains a history, written by Betty Knack, of Knaak’s service aboard
the USS South Dakota and his participation in the Battle of Guadalcanal, 1942. Briefly mentions
his service in the Atlantic and conversion to the LDS Church after the war. Also includes
biography of Stanley written by his second wife, Arrellia Knaak. Includes photocopied
photographs, genealogy and certificates. Notes: Genre/Form: Biographies. Photographs.
Certificates. Notes: Bio/History: First wife of Stanley Roy Knaak. General Info: Items were
donated by both Betty Knaak (former wife of Stanley), and Arrellia Knaak (wife at time of death)
OCLC: 51602191.

Knibbs, Stanley G. C. 1929. The Savage-Solomons as they were & are, a Record of a
Headhunting People Gradually Emerging from a Life of Savage Cruelty & Bloody Customs, with a
Description of their Manners & Ways & of the Beauties & potentialities of the Islands.

videodisc (ca. 91 min.). Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945; Color photography- Films; World
War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii), Attack on, 1941; Coral Sea,
Battle of the, 1942; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945-
Japanese Americans; World War, 1939-1945- Forced repatriation; Documentary films;
Documentary; United States- History- 1933-1945; Videorecording; DVD video; Videodisc.
Abstract: On December 7, 1941, Japan launched its attack on Pearl Harbor. The result was that the
United States was thrust full force into World War II - turning it into a truly global conflict.
American Marines and many of the great filmmakers of the day captured footage of the events as
they unfolded - in color. Battles such as the Coral Sea in flames; Guadalcanal littered with corpses;
only rarely seen images of the deportation of U.S. citizens of Japanese descent and much more. Notes:

Kwa’ioloa, Michael and Burt, Ben. 2007. “The Chiefs’ Country: A Malaitan View of the Conflict in Solomon Islands.” Oceania. March 2007. Volume 77, Issue 1, Pages 111. Abstract: The recent conflict in Solomon Islands between the peoples of Malaita and Guadalcanal has been documented in news bulletins, internet commentaries and investigative reports, enabling the main political and economic developments to be summarised in two books (Fraenkel 2004, Moore 2004). But while such publications reflect the experience of both Solomon Islands and foreign professionals, they do not necessarily convey the views of the ordinary Islanders whose circumstances led to the conflict and who found themselves most closely involved. Michael Kwa’ioloa, a Kwara’ae brought up in rural Malaita, speaks here from long experience of the Malaitan village communities of Honiara, the Solomon Islands capital on Guadalcanal. He has dealt personally with grievances between Honiara’s diverse ethnic groups, before and during the crisis, not as a professional politician, administrator or academic, but as a local community activist for the Kwara’ae chiefs and as a front-line officer in the Royal Solomon Islands Police. As such his views on the historical causes and the necessary resolution of the conflict reflect a local understanding which has yet to be fully appreciated by the national and international policymakers who have such influence on the future of Solomon Islands. In explaining the background to the conflict, Kwa’ioloa emphasizes the inherited relationships with Guadalcanal landholders that legitimate the land claims of Malaitan settlers, the authority which clan leaders hold as chiefs to resolve disputes between communities, the importance of political consensus and economic cooperation rather than the competition of winners and losers, and the necessity for conciliation in resolving conflict. In recounting the course of events, he stresses the attempts of the Malaita chiefs to avert the crisis, the defensive origins of the Malaita Eagle Force and the efforts of the Special Constables to contain the violence. This local perspective is Kwa ‘ioloa’s own, while my task as long-term research partner and co-author has been to communicate it to those it might not otherwise reach. Kwa ‘ioloa proposed the present account as part of a sequel to his autobiography, Living Tradition (Kwa’ioloa & Burt 1997) but we present it here for its topical importance. In the aftermath of the events recounted here, he sent me writings and recordings of reflections and recollections which I edited to clarify his argument and narrative, then supplemented with further recordings in conversation with him on a visit to Solomon Islands in 2004. Kwa’ioloa’s underlying theme is his faith in the values of local tradition, in particular the need to involve local chiefs in the government of Solomon Islands and the resolution of the crisis, and a deep but ambivalent resentment of the individualistic values of capitalist economic development, which are blamed for the corruption of the political elite. While he confirms that the tensions between Guadalcanal and Malaita were exploited by politicians and militia leaders for personal gain, bringing militias and police into disrepute, he shows the values of tradition to be deeper-rooted than the exploitative compensation claims emphasized by Fraenkel (2004) as ‘the manipulation of custom’. Kwa’ioloa’s concept of tradition (translating Kwara’ae falafala, colonial custom and Pijin kastom) has a long history as an ideological focus for Malaitan and other political movements seeking to recover local self-determination under values founded in particular interpretations of ancestral heritage (see Burt 1994). As Akin explains (2005 and forthcoming) and Kwa’ioloa demonstrates here, this ideology has long resisted attempts” by colonial and state authorities to co-opt it for their own purposes, as it
will survive abuses by lawless militants. Far from merely reinventing tradition as the political symbol described by Keesing (1982) and others, Kwa’ioloa and his fellow chiefs treat their cultural heritage as a source of moral values which they mediate as clan leaders in a network of local communities in Honiara and ‘home’ in Malaita. Kwa’ioloa speaks as a man from the Malaitan culture of male seniority about events which affected women and other islanders at least as much, but his themes are also of general concern. Many of these concerns will be shared by the local people of Guadalcanal, who no doubt recognise the predicament of Malaitans seeking employment and land, just as Kwa ‘ioloa acknowledges the grievances of Guadalcanal caused by Malaitan immigration. In fact, the underlying concerns leading to the conflict, for appropriate economic development, locally controlled according to local values, are shared by many people throughout Solomon Islands. It is in their interpretations of the historical development of the conflict that they differ, and Kwa ‘ioloa’s Malaitan account deserves to be compared with other local views, which we hope will also be published. Solomon Islanders know as well as anyone that histories are contested, but if governing elites and policymakers are to mediate such contests they need to understand the perspectives of the parties concerned. Unfortunately, as Kwa ‘ioloa’s account suggests, the dialogue between government and governed in Solomon Islands itself seems in need of mediation. His personal experience of the Malaita-Guadalcanal conflict is offered as a contribution to the national and international debate which is essential to avoid recent history repeating itself. Database: History Resource Center.

Kwallek, J. A. 1988. “U.S. Marine Aviation in World War II: VMF 124 in the Solomons. Student Rept.” Air Command and Staff Coll., Maxwell AFB, AL. Apr. Volume: ACSC881515, page(s): 79. Descriptors: Fighter aircraft; Firepower; Islands; Military tactics; Pacific ocean; Pilots; Squadrons; Warfare; Pacific ocean islands; Melanesia; History; Aerial warfare; Marine corps aviation; Solomon Islands; World War 2; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: Marine Fighter Squadron (VMF) 124 was formed in 1942 to fly the new F4U Corsair in combat against the Japanese Zero to win air superiority in the Pacific air war. VMF 124 was highly successful in combat against the Japanese and attained decisive air superiority. The pilots of VMF 124 were, for the most part, very young and inexperienced with the Corsair. Their tactics and the superior performance and firepower of the Corsair spearheaded the critical Allied drive up through the Solomon Islands chain. This paper examines the combat history of VMF 124 during the Solomons campaign to identify factors for the squadron's success against the enemy and to identify lessons learned for consideration today. We base our doctrine, and to some degree, our strategy and tactics on the results of those who have gone before us. This paper looks at some winning warriors of World War II who turned the tide in a critical air war, and shows that they did it. DTIC: ADA1925197XSP.

LaBarbera, D. A. 1997. “BUNA: MacArthur’s Lieutenants in an Immature Theater. Final Rept.” Naval War Collection, Newport, RI. 19 May. Pages: 27. Descriptors: Military forces United states; Military operations; Logistics support; Military personnel; Strategic analysis; Military forces Foreign; Battlefields; Operational effectiveness; Japan; Aerial warfare; Pacific Ocean; Military planning; Tactical warfare; Reinforcing materials; Philippines; New Guinea; Military history; Theater level operations; Leadership; Military commanders; Guadalcanal battle Second world war; Eichelberger; Robert L; Kenney, George C; New Guinea/Papuan campaign; Buna battle Second world war; Behavior and society Education law and humanities; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: The Battle for Buna which occurred in late 1942 is a
forgotten episode in U.S. military history. Events happening simultaneously on Guadalcanal
dominated the headlines and is historically remembered as one of the rallying points of the Pacific
war. The Battle for Buna had many parallels to Guadalcanal. Both were emotional struggles within
larger campaigns and their outcomes impacted the overall strategic planning for both the Allies and
Japan. Buna like Guadalcanal tested American will and resolve. Buna was like no other battle
fought in U.S. history. The terrain, specifically the dense, disease-infected jungle sapped the
strength from all three forces involved, the Americans, Australians and Japanese. The conditions
were possibly the worst for U.S. forces in the entire war. U.S. military leadership had to find
solutions in a theater that was not developed to support military operations. This paper discusses
two of the innovators who understood the principles of war, operational art and the dynamics of
combat and turned the battlefield in the Allies favor. The leadership of Army Air Corps General
George Kenney and Army General Robert Eichelberger were two pivotal characters that worked
for Douglas MacArthur and in essence saved the day at Buna and, from a strategic standpoint, the
New Guinea Campaign. They reversed the fortunes of MacArthur and his staff by reinforcing
sound principles. The lessons learned at Buna were applied strategically in future campaigns
against Japanese forces in the Pacific. Notes: Product reproduced from digital image. NTIS:
ADA3281193XSP.

Laidman, Hugh. 1942. At the Edge of Henderson Field. Descriptors: Dauntless (Dive bomber)- Pictorial works; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- Pictorial works; Artwork reproduction. Abstract: Image is reproduction of Laidman watercolor done on the scene during the second World War. It shows an SBD Dauntless at the airfield Henderson Field on Guadalcanal during World War II. The airfield was completed in August of 1942 and was important throughout the remainder of the war, as both a point of attack for the Japanese and as a base for American operations in the Pacific Theater. Notes: 1 art print; Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps- History- 20th century- Pictorial works. Notes: Paper. Image area measured in frame. Bio/History: Hugh Laidman was a combat artist for the Marine Corps in World War II. He was later commissioned by the National Gallery of Art to do work for NASA. After the war, Laidman became a cartoonist, teacher, and writer, authoring several books on illustration. Responsibility: Hugh Laidman. OCLC: 70080678.


Laing, William H. 1998. The Unspoken Bond: Stories about the Naval Hospital Corpsmen and the Marines they Served with and the Battles they Fought in the Pacific during the Second

“Landing at Guadalcanal to be Reenacted.” Naval History. 1999/07//Jul/Aug99. Volume 13, Issue 4; 4, Pages 59. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Historical reenactments; Maryland; United States; Solomons (Md.). Notes: Naval History; Article; Source Information: Jul/Aug99, Vol. 13 Issue 4, page 59; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Historical reenactments; Geographic Subject: Maryland; Geographic Subject: United States; Geographic Subject: Solomons (Md.); Number of Pages: 2p; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 191. Abstract: Focuses on the reenactment of the Guadalcanal Island landing at the Calvert Marine Museum in Solomons, Maryland. Planning stages of the event; Contact information. Focuses on the reenactment of the Guadalcanal Island landing at the Calvert Marine Museum in Solomons, Maryland. Planning stages of the event; Contact information. ISSN: 1042-1920.

Lane, D. A. 1997. “Hospital Ship Doctrine in the United States Navy: The Halsey Effect on Scoop-and-Sail Tactics.” Military Medicine. 1997 June. Volume 162, Issue 6, Pages 388-95. Abstract: Although hospital ships have a long history, naval strategists have paid little attention to their tactical employment in naval and amphibious warfare. Often employed as floating ambulances, operational doctrine for hospital ships did not permit their use as floating combat surgical hospitals until the final amphibious campaigns of World War II. Based on operational archives-ships’ logs, war diaries, battle plans, and other official records-this essay traces the evolution of tactical doctrine on hospital ships from Guadalcanal to Inchon. Early in World War II, there were insufficient hospital ships to permit much flexibility in their employment. By the Philippine campaign in 1944, the increased availability of afloat medical assets prompted Third Fleet Commander Vice Admiral William F. Halsey to propose that the ships be used as acute surgical hospitals at the amphibious landing sites rather than as sea-going ambulances. Facing the prospect of a growing number of casualties for the major assaults being planned, Halsey needed to maximize medical and surgical efficacy and return-to-duty rates to conserve the fighting strength of his invasion forces. Admiral Chester A. Nimitz approved Halsey’s proposal, and the battle plan at Iwo Jima combined the careful triage of casualties at the waterfront with early, forward employment of hospital ships. Despite more than 21,000 casualties at Iwo Jima, they were handled better than at any previous operation in the Pacific theater. The tactical doctrine for hospital ships suggested by Halsey has since been employed in every major amphibious operation, including Okinawa and Inchon, and has also been used in modern-era contingency and humanitarian missions. Availability: NLM. ISSN: 0026-4075.

Lane, Kerry. 2004. Guadalcanal Marine. Jackson: University Press of Mississippi. Pages: 358. Descriptors: Lane,; Kerry; United; States. Marine; Corps. Marines,; 1st; Corps; Noncommissioned; officers; Biography; World; War,; 1939-1945; Regimental; histories; States;
Personal; narratives.; American; Campaigns; Pacific; Area. Notes: Kerry L. Lane. Includes bibliographical references (p. 345-351) and index. Other Titles: Willie Morris books in memoir and biography. ISBN: 1578066646. OCLC: 009472304.


Larsch, Don E. 2004. World War II PFC Don E. Larsch, USMC, Sixth Joint Assault Signal Company, Sixth Marine Division. Aurora, Col.: C.M. Brandt. Volume: 1 sound cassette (80 min.), Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Area; Marines- United States- Biography; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943- Personal narratives; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan- Okinawa Island; Non-musical recording; Cassette recording. Abstract: In this audio interview, Larsch describes his life as a Marine in the Pacific Theater as his unit operated on Guadalcanal, Guam, Okinawa, and Iwo Jima. His main emphasis is not on the actual combat of the division but on his unit’s operations, which included a non-signal function of reconnaissance for combat troops. Larsch gives a very through commentary on the adverse conditions he and others endured while operating on the Pacific islands. Notes: Named Person: Larsch, Don E.- Interviews. Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps. Marine Division, 6th. Joint Assault Signal Company, 6th. Genre/Form: Audio tapes. Other Titles: Don E. Larsch, PFC, US Marine Corps, Sixth Marine Division, Sixth Joint Assault Signal Company. OCLC: 55530305.

Larsen, Ronald F. and Saint at War. 1943-2001. World War II Experiences, 1943-2001. Descriptors: 1 folder (9 p.) + 3 photographs. Mormon Church- Maryland; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; New Caledonia (Colony); Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History, Military; Maryland- History; Manuscript. Abstract: Discusses his training; his assignments and experiences in California, New Caledonia and Guadalcanal. Mentions the weather & varieties of native people on New Caledonia and his experiences with other LDS Church members in Maryland. Includes 3 photocopied photographs of Larsen, his army comrades, and natives of New Caledonia. Notes: Genre/Form: Memoirs. Photographs. Notes: Bio/History: Served in the US Army during World War II from 1942-1945. Larsen was assigned to the Counter Intelligence Corps and
achieved the rank of second lieutenant. General Info: Items were donated by creator, Ronald F. Larsen, to the Saints At War Project in 2001. OCLC: 51804233.


Lawrence, James F. 2003. “My First Taste of Combat.” Marine Corps Gazette. 09. Volume 87, Issue 9; 9, Pages 95-96. Descriptors: Soldiers; War; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands. Notes: Marine Corps Gazette; Article; Source Information: Sep2003, Vol. 87 Issue 9, p95; Subject Term: Soldiers; Subject Term: War; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 2p; Illustrations: 3bw; Document Type: Article. Abstract: Details the experience of a U.S. Marine lieutenant during the battle in Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands in 1942. Responsibilities of the lieutenant; Extent of opposition encountered by the U.S. forces; Level of atrocities. Details the experience of a U.S. Marine lieutenant during the battle in Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands in 1942. Responsibilities of the lieutenant; Extent of opposition encountered by the U.S. forces; Level of atrocities. ISSN: 0025-3170.

Natural History of Guadalcanal


Lee, Larry; Rhay, Gary; Reed, Dale; Dastar Corp; Marathon Music & Video and Entertainment Distributing. 2001. Guadalcanal. Parts 1-2. United States; Eugene, OR: Dastar Corp.Marathon Music & Video; Distributed by Entertainment Distributing. Volume: 2 videocassettes (ca. 124 min.), Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; Savo
Natural History of Guadalcanal

Island, Battle of; Solomon Islands, 1942; Guadalcanal, Battle of; Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Documentary videos; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Join the 1st Marine Division as it launches the first American offensive of World War II and witness the opening moves in what will become a six month struggle to wrest control of the island from the Empire of Japan. Pt. 1: Converging courses; First offensive; Battle of Savo Island; First days ashore; Battle of the Tenaru; The Kawaguchi Brigade; Battle of Edson’s Ridge- Pt. 2: Actions along the Matanikau; Battle for Henderson Field; Actions at Point Cruz & Koli Point; Naval battle of Guadalcanal; Second naval battle of Guadalcanal; The final push. Notes: Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps- History- World War, 1939-1945. System Info: VHS, Dolby. Notes: Originally released in 2000. Participants: Narrator, Dale Reed. Responsibility: Dastar presents an MM & V production; producer, Larry Lee; writer, Gary Rhay. Music, Larry Rosen; editor, Gayle Lutz. OCLC: 50872980.


Lince, George. 1997. Too Young the Heroes: A World War II Marine’s Account of Facing a Veteran Enemy at Guadalcanal, the Solomons and Okinawa. Jefferson, N.C.: McFarland & Co. Pages: 201. Descriptors: Lince.; George.; 1926-; United; States. Marine; Corps; Biography; World; War,.; 1939-1945; Campaigns; Pacific; Area; Personal; narratives.; American; Marines; States. Notes: by George Lince. Includes bibliographical references (p. 193) and index. ISBN: 0786403306; OCLC: 7481136.

Lippman, David H. 1997. “Turning Point in the Pacific.” World War II. 11. Volume 12, Issue 4; Pages 48. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; SEA control; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American. Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: Nov97, Vol. 12 Issue 4, p48; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: SEA control; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Number of Pages: 8p; Illustrations: 1 diagram, 1c, 7bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 5129. Abstract: Details on how the Second Naval Battle of Guadalcanal spelled the difference between victory and defeat for the United States in the Pacific War. Japanese offensive move against the U.S. Navy on November 12, 1942; Command of USS South Dakota and USS Washington battleships; Edge of the U.S. in the battle. Details on how the Second Naval Battle of Guadalcanal spelled the difference between victory and defeat for the
United States in the Pacific War. Japanese offensive move against the U.S. Navy on November 12, 1942; Command of USS South Dakota and USS Washington battleships; Edge of the U.S. in the battle. ISSN: 0898-4204.

Lippman, David H. 1997. “First Naval Battle of Guadalcanal.” World War II. 01. Volume 11, Issue 5; Pages 54. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943. Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: January 1997, Vol. 11 Issue 5, p54; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Number of Pages: 9p; Illustrations: 2c, 6bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 7061. Abstract: Focuses on the battle between the United States and Japanese naval forces in the seas off Guadalcanal Bay in October of 1942 during World War II. Chronology of events; Status of the forces at the time; Description of the ships that took part in the battle. INSET: The five Sullivan brothers perished with the..., by D.H.L. Focuses on the battle between the United States and Japanese naval forces in the seas off Guadalcanal Bay in October of 1942 during World War II. Chronology of events; Status of the forces at the time; Description of the ships that took part in the battle. ISSN: 0898-4204.

Lippman, David H. Battle of Guadalcanal: First Naval Battle in the Ironbottom Sound: Like Weary Boxers, the Opposing Forces Slugged it Out with One another in Ironbottom Sound. Abstract: By October 1942, Japan and the United States had worn each other down in the South Pacific. United States Marines held Guadalcanal’s vital Henderson Field but were ringed in by Japanese soldiers. Both armies were devastated by malaria and supply shortages. At sea, the picture was equally grim. Japan had just lost 74 planes at Santa Cruz, but the United States had lost the aircraft carrier Hornet, and her sole remaining flattop, Enterprise, was badly damaged. American planes ruled “The Slot” and Ironbottom Sound off Guadalcanal by day, but Japanese ships dominated them by night. Both sides were stalemated, gasping for breath. In his spartan sea cabin aboard the super battleship Musashi at Guam, Japan’s Admiral Isoroku Yamamoto, commander of the Combined Fleet, spewed out a stream of orders intended to allow the fleet to regain the initiative with typical daring. Notes: This article was written by David H. Lippman and originally appeared in the November ‘97 issue of World War II magazine. URL: http://www.historynet.com/historical_conflicts/3026026.html

Lippman, David H. Second Naval Battle of Guadalcanal: Turning Point in the Pacific War- the Second Naval Battle of Guadalcanal Spelled the Difference between Victory and Defeat for the United States in the Pacific War. no. July 2007, Abstract: At dawn on Friday, November 13, 1942, burning, wrecked ships littered the waters of Guadalcanal. At a cost of five ships and thousands of lives, the U.S. Navy had blunted Japan’s drive to break the Guadalcanal stalemate. Notes: This article was written by David H. Lippman and originally appeared in the November 1997 issue of World War II. URL: http://www.historynet.com/historical_conflicts/3026056.html

Loughran, Amy; Lowe, Areena; Nicula, Gail; Orr, Carolyn and Oswitt, Jane. 1989. “Campaigns and Operations: Selected Bibliographies.” Norfolk, VA: Armed Forces Staff Coll Norfolk Va. Apr 1989. Volume: ADA208093, Pages: 139. Descriptors: *Military Operations; *Warfare; *Battles; Middle East; Bibliographies; France; Italy; Korea; Pacific Ocean; Africa; North Atlantic Ocean; China; North Africa; Falkland Islands; Okinawa; Pacific Ocean Islands; Burma; New Guinea; Sicily. Abstract: This bibliography provides selected citations to major military operations, primarily in World War II. They include: Battle of Britain, Battle of the Atlantic, Central Pacific (General), China-Burma-India Theatre, Coral Sea, France (Includes Anvil & Dragoon), Guadalcanal, Italy (includes Anzio, Cassino), Kursk (Emphasis on July 1943), Leyte, Midway, New Guinea, North Africa, Okinawa, Operations, Barbarossa (Initial Offensive, June 1941-Winter 1941), Garden, Market, Torch, Ploesti, Rabaul, Remagen, Schweinfurt, Sicily (Operation Husky), Stalingrad, and Tokyo bombing raids. Also covered are: The 1973 Arab-Israeli war; Falkland Islands, Gallipoli, and Tannenberg in WWI, Korean War, Pacific regions pre-WWII, and Campaign scenarios for the Horn of Africa and the Angolan-Cuban connection, the Northwest Pacific area, and the Syria-Israel tinderbox. (edc). Notes: Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC AND NTIS.

Louie, William. 2007? Battle of Guadalcanal. PowerPoint Presentation on the physical geography and on amphibious assault vehicles (AAVs) for the graduate level course, Military Geology 342, given at the University of Missouri-Rolla. See: http://web.umr.edu/~rogersda/umrcourses/ge342/Miltary%20Geo%20Presentations/Bill%20Louie/Guadalcanal/Battle%20of%20Guadalcanal.ppt#256,1, Battle of Guadalcanal


Lundstrom, John B. 2006. Black Shoe Carrier Admiral: Frank Jack Fletcher at Coral Sea, Midway, and Guadalcanal. Annapolis, Md.: Naval Institute Press. Pages: 638. Descriptors: Fletcher,; Frank; Jack; World; War,; 1939-1945; Campaigns; Pacific; Ocean; Naval; operations,; American; Aerial; Aircraft; carriers; United; States; History; 20th; century. Notes: John B. Lundstrom. Includes bibliographical references (p. 607-618) and index. ISBN: 1591144752; 9781591144755. OCLC: 010084493.


Lynch, George A. 1898-1962. George A. Lynch Papers, 1898-1962. Descriptors: 3 boxes. Jeep automobile; Lynch, George A.- Archives; Lynch, George A.- Correspondence; Chynoweth, Bradford G., 1890-- Correspondence; United States. Army. Infantry Regiment, 15th; United States. National Recovery Administration; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands). Abstract: Contains the following types of materials: letters, documents, reports, speeches, clippings. Contains information pertaining to the following wars and time periods: 1930s; United States (U.S.)- Great Depression; World War II (WWII)- U.S.-- Pacific; Cold War. Contains information pertaining to the following military units: War Department General Staff; administrative officer, National Recovery Administration; commander, U.S troops in China, 15th Infantry Regiment; chief of infantry (see George E. Lynch papers). General description of the collection: The George A. Lynch papers include general officer’s papers covering days as commander of 15th Infantry Regiment in China, detached duty with New Deal’s National Recovery Administration (NRA); responsibilities as chief of infantry with lectures, speeches, and final report; 1945 report on Guadalcanal; correspondence and legal documents on origin of Jeep; and family letters primarily from wife’s brother, General B.G. Chynoweth. Notes: General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute, Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Other Titles: Papers of George A. Lynch; Lynch papers. OCLC: 49801769.


Malick, Terrence; Jones, James; Thin red line and Briarpatch Film Corporation. 1992. The Thin Red Line: Revised First Draft Screenplay. Descriptors: 3, 296 leaves; World War, 1939-1945-Fiction; War in motion pictures; Guadalcanal, Battle of; Fiction; Manuscript. Responsibility: by Terrence Malick; based on the novel by James Jones. OCLC: 41553599.

Maljack Productions, Inc and MPI Home Video. 1987. Famous Marine Battles Guadalcanal & the Shores of Iwo Jima. MPI Home Video. Volume: 1 videocassette (60 min.), Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; LC: D767.9; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: The war in the Pacific was fought against a relentless enemy who believed that death or victory were the only outcomes of war. When the Japanese met the U.S. Marines on the battlefield, they found not victory but death and destruction. To the shores of Iwo Jima (U.S. Government Office of War Information)- This is Guadalcanal (narrated by Donald L. Dickson). Notes: System Info: VHS format. Responsibility: Maljack Productions, Inc. OCLC: 18171327.


Manson, David. Bott, Gavin. Carruthers, Bob. Russell, Gary and Cromwell Productions. 2001. Guadalcanal. England: Cromwell Productions. Volume: 1 videocassette (120 min.), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: “The attack on Pearl Harbor was supposed to obviate the need for the grinding attritional battle that was the hallmark for the bloody fighting of Guadalcanal. The capture of this strategically crucial
island in the Solomans - during which more than 25,000 Japanese lost their lives - was the key to the US victory in the Philippines and paved the way for the horrors of Hiroshima and Nagasaki and the final defeat of Japan.”--History-Zone.com. Notes: System Info: VHS format. Notes: Participants: Narrator, Tim Pigott-Smith. Responsibility: written by David Manson. Producer, Gavin Bott; Executive producers, Bob Carruthers, Gary Russell. OCLC: 48086827.


Marlow, Gordon V. interviewee. Van Ells, Mark D. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 1995. Oral History Interview with Gordon V. Marlow 1995. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Veterans- Wisconsin- Madison; Soldiers- Wisconsin- Madison; University of Wisconsin--Madison- History; World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Casualties; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Food supply- United States; V-E Day, 1945; V-J Day, 1945; Dive bomber; Veterans- Education- Wisconsin- Madison; Cassette recording. Abstract: Gordon V. Marlow, a Madison Wis. native, discusses his World War II service with the United States Navy as a dive bomber with the first Flying Badger Unit, and later war service at the Naval Air Station at Pensacola (Florida). Marlow joined the Navy before the war began and tells of the Pensacola base reaction to the Japanese attack of Pearl Harbor and reactions in Madison to a uniformed serviceman. He talks about carrier training at Coronado (California) and the high casualty rate there, dive bomber training, and escort of boats to Guadalcanal. He describes his first encounter with the Japanese while flying cover when the Cruiser Chicago sank. He touches upon equipment problems, Army-Navy rivalry, effectiveness of the Japanese Army, daily life, interactions with natives, and dive bombing on Guadalcanal. Marlow was wounded and returned to the United States. He became the assistant operations officer at the Pensacola base. While in Florida, he mentions rationing, race relations, V-E Day, and V-J Day. At the war’s end, Marlow returned to Madison and tells of the effects of WWII on the University of Wisconsin-Madison campus including courses and housing. Notes: Sound recording 7/8 ips; Named Person: Marlow, Gordon V., 1920-; Named Corp: United States. Navy- Aviation. Naval Air Station Pensacola (Fla.) United States. Navy- Military life. Notes: Bio/History: Marlow (January 27, 1920) served as a dive bomber with the Navy in the Pacific theater during World War II. He achieved the rank of Lieutenant and was honorably discharged in 1945. Interviewed by Mark D. Van Ells, on June 7, 1995 in Wisconsin. General Info: Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. OCLC: 56518377.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


McCool, Thomas. 2002. “Battle of Savo Island - Lessons Learned and Future Implications.” Army War Coll Carlisle Barracks PA. Volume: ADA404261, Pages: 41. Descriptors: *Lessons Learned; *Battles, Warfare; Decision Making; Leadership; Japan; Decision Theory; History; Fleets(Ships); Military Modernization; Military Planning; Mental Ability; Pearl Harbor; *Savo Island Battle; Strategy Research Project; Guadalcanal Campaign; Imperial Japanese Fleet. Abstract: As the United States enters into the 21st century, it will face new and different challenges that will be more complex than those encountered in the past. Evolutions in doctrine, training, and equipment modernization, influenced by informational and technological advances, will enhance U.S. ability to accomplish national objectives. Valuable lessons learned can be realized by studying past operations that failed to understand the threat and capitalize on friendly capabilities. The Battle of Savo Island in August 1942 is one such event. This short but violent naval engagement, a daring Japanese night surface attack conducted at the beginning of the Guadalcanal campaign on 9 August 1942, was a significant tactical victory for the Imperial Japanese Fleet and has been called the worst blue water defeat in the U.S. Navy’s history. This paper will address the shortcomings at Savo Island, particularly in terms of intelligence, command and control, training, force protection, and leadership and discuss these concepts as they apply to current and future operations in the 21st century. Notes: Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA404261


McFadden, Brian S. 1999. “Marine Close Air Support in World War II.” Army Command and General Staff Coll Fort Leavenworth KS. Volume: ADA369287, Pages: 85 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Military History; *Marine Corps; *Close Support; *Tactical Air Support; *Marine Corps Personnel; *Second World War; Weapons; Military Forces (United States); Military
The study examines how the Marines started developing their doctrine in the 1930s and adapted their (CAS) system based on the outcome of battles on Guadalcanal, Tarawa, Iwo Jima, and Okinawa, as well as during operations in support of the U.S. Army in the Philippines. Particular emphasis is placed on the development of Marine CAS doctrine, liaison organizational structures, aircraft, and air-to-ground weapons. This study is pertinent because it describes how the Marines developed a very effective weapon that greatly increased the potency of its amphibious operations. Additionally, this was initially accomplished during a period of very limited financial resources (before the start of World War II) and then limited time resources (during the war crisis). This study also shows how the Marines worked to support the forces on the ground with the best CAS system possible despite the opposition.

Notes: Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC AND NTIS. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA369287


McGee, William L. 2000. Amphibious Operations in the South Pacific in World War II. Santa Barbara, Calif.: BMC Publications. Descriptors: United; States. Navy; History; World; War.; 1939-1945; Marine; Corps; Amphibious; operations; Campaigns; Solomon; Islands; Landing; craft; States; 20th; century. Abstract: Incomplete contents: v. 1. The amphibians are coming: emergence of the Gator Navy and its revolutionary WWII landing craft- v. 2. The Solomons campaigns, 1942-1943, from Guadalcanal to Bougainville, Pacific War turning point. Notes: William L. McGee. v.: ill., maps; 23 cm. Includes bibliographical references and indexes. ISSN/ISBN: 0970167865 (v. 1); 0970167873 (v. 2); 097016789X.


McKearney, T. J. 1985. “Solomons Naval Campaign: A Paradigm for Surface Warships in Maritime Strategy. Master's Thesis.” Naval Postgraduate School, Monterey, CA. Sep. page(s): 277. Descriptors: Military commanders; Military forces United states; Naval vessels Combatant; Cruisers; Failure; Navy; Ocean environments; Strategy; Task forces; Theses; History; Battles; Naval warfare; Military strategy; Naval operations; World War 2; Solomon islands; Military sciences Operations strategy and tactics; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: This thesis examines the naval campaign in the Solomons during World War II with an emphasis on the relationship between the campaign strategy and the tactics employed. The strategic background is reviewed within the context of the War in early 1942. A central theme developed is that in the Solomons campaign both sides employed cruisers and DD's as principal naval forces in place of the fully integrated 'battle fleets' envisioned as part of pre-war strategy. The role of war gaming in American preparations for the war is shown to explain in part the failure of American commanders to modify existing doctrine in a timely manner during the campaign. Data from the naval battles fought in the Solomons is compiled in an original way and analyzed to explain the factors which consistently influenced the outcome of the eleven battles. Conclusions reached address the nature of modern campaigns undertaken to widen a conflict ('horizontal escalation') and the forces that may be required to pursue such campaigns. The parallels between the use of surface combatant task forces in World War II and their projected employment today are noted and discussed. DTIC: ADA1614734XSP.


Mellor, D.P. 1958. Official Histories – Second World War Volume V – The Role of Science and Industry (1st edition, 1958). Canberra: Australian War Memorial. Abstract: “Early in 1942 an urgent need arose for geographical information about New Guinea and the Solomons. At this stage the framework for all topographical reports consisted of a series of rather indifferent maps compiled from government surveys and traverses by patrolling officers of the Civil Administrations, exploratory surveys by oil search companies, and sketches by missionaries. Hydrographic charts were also used but were in general quite faulty both as to depiction of land masses and offshore information. In addition there were available many useful reports of a geological and anthropological nature. No attempt had been made by military intelligence to collect this information, which was widely scattered throughout Australia in repositories of every conceivable nature. It was evident that the hard pressed intelligence staff was not in a position personally to search for it.” Australian War Memorial.


Merillat, H. C. L. 1944. The Island, a History of the First Marine Division on Guadalcanal, August 7-December 9, 1942. Boston: Houghton Mifflin company. Pages: 283. Descriptors: United; States. Marine; Corps. Division.; 1st; World; War.; 1939-1945; Solomon; Islands; Regimental; histories; States; Division. Notes: by Captain Herbert L. Merillat. Various editions and publishers. Accession Number: 006032076.


Miller, Donald L. 2005 D-Days in the Pacific. New York: Simon & Schuster Paperbacks. 426 pages. Abstract: In a six-month Pacific blitzkrieg that began with the surprise attack on Pearl Harbor, the Japanese conquered an empire that stretched 10,000 miles across the Pacific -- the most
expansive ocean empire in history. To roll back that perimeter, the U.S. settled on a two-pronged offensive strategy led by General Douglas MacArthur and Admiral Chester Nimitz. MacArthur attacked across the western Pacific toward the Philippines, and Nimitz advanced across the vast central Pacific. Along the way, the Army and Marines faced scores of D-Days. Of these, Miller concentrates on a handful of the most violent and decisive: Guadalcanal, Tarawa, Saipan, Peleliu, Leyte, Iwo Jima, and Okinawa -- battles that rivaled the great confrontations in the European theater in everything but the popular imagination. ISBN 0-7432-6929-2.


Morgan, William L. Snapshot Albums, Ca. 1930s-1940s. Descriptors: Motorcycling; Monterey Peninsula (Calif.)- History- Photographs; Pelicans- Photographs. Abstract: The albums are a miscellaneous assembly that contains black and white photographs and contact prints of such subjects as Monterey Peninsula views, the Del Monte Hotel swimming pool, military maneuvers at the Presidio of Monterey, motorcycles on Monterey Beach and a hill climbing competition, San Diego views, Mission Santa Barbara, Huntington Beach oil derricks, Santa Monica beach gymnastics, San Francisco Bay (the Golden Gate and Bay bridges and the Golden Gate International Exposition of 1939-40 at Treasure island) and aerial and ground views of the Southwest. There are also photographs at the military bases where Morgan served in the army during World War II: Kingman (Arizona) Army Air Field and the South Pacific islands of Guadalcanal and New Caledonia. Notes: 1 photographic album, 19 x 13 cm; Named Conf: Golden Gate International Exposition, (1939-1940: San Francisco, Calif.); Genre/Form: Albums Black-and-white photographs; Geographic: Monterey Peninsula (Calif.)- Views- Photographs. Arizona- Description and travel- Photographs. California- History- Photographs. Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- Photographs. Notes: Bio/History: See other William Morgan collection(s); General Info: Access restricted; By appointment only; contact Archivist. Reproduction by Archivist or designated staff; may be restricted due to condition of material. Forms part of: William L. Morgan photograph collection. Organization: Arranged mostly chronologically. Preferred citation: Snapshot albums of William L. Morgan, ca. 1930s and early 1940s, California History Room Archives, Monterey Public Library, Monterey, California. OCLC: 123081894.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Morison, Samuel Eliot. 1911-1969. Papers, 1911-1969. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Atlantic Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Africa, North; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Alaska; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Italy; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- France- Normandy; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, Japanese; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii), Attack on, 1941; Midway, Battle of, 1942; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Philippine Sea, Battle of the, 1944 (June 19-21); Naval convoys; Naval historians- United States; Internet resource. Abstract: Rear Admiral Samuel E. Morison and his staff accumulated these records during the writing of the fifteen volume History of United States Naval Operations in World War II. Included are administrative correspondence on this project, drafts of several volumes, and some of the research materials. A subject card index is available, but is not complete. Most of these records are filed under the specific volume of the series to which they refer. There are some miscellaneous subject files. Notes: 100 cubic ft; Named Person: Morison, Samuel Eliot, 1887-1976- Archives. Morison, Samuel Eliot, 1887-1976- Correspondence. Morison, Samuel Eliot, 1887-1976. History of United States naval operations in World War II. Named Corp: United States. Navy- History- World War, 1939-1945- Sources.


Mortensen, D. R. 2003. “Air Expeditionary Force in Perspective. Technical Paper.” Air Univ., Maxwell AFB, AL. Airpower Research Inst. Volume: RP200301, Pages: 55. Descriptors: Iraq; Decision making; Leadership; Middle east; Japan; Joint military activities; Spain; Norway; Judgement Psychology; Turkey; China; Philippines; North africa; Mexico; Strategic bombing; Aleutian islands; East africa; Ethiopia; United kingdom; First world war; Second world war; Civil
war United states; Military operations; Military history; Lessons learned; Guadalcanal; Spanish civil war; Pancho villa; Battle of kut; Gallipoli campaign; Palestine; Eef Egyptian expeditionary force; Roman expeditionary legions; Napoleonic expeditionary legions; Boxer rebellion; Expeditions before airpower; Expeditionary operations; Air expeditionary forces; Military sciences Military operations strategy and tactics. Abstract: The military has conducted expeditionary operations for centuries; airmen began to participate in expeditions from the very early days of flight. Descriptions of expeditions, with and without air components, evoke suggestive lessons for current expeditionary operations. Frequently the identification of lessons from past events provides planners and commanders the background, wisdom, and the equally important element of context that facilitate better judgment in the imperfect decision-making process. This collection begins with a short description of Air Force leadership promoting the idea of expeditionary air operations. This is followed by a review of the 1995-1996 Aerospace Expeditionary Force I-III deployments to the Middle East. The anthology then continues in reverse chronological order to describe various expeditionary operations throughout history, beginning with examples from World War II. The latter include the British and German expeditions to Norway; the pre-war American buildup in the Philippines; the first American operation in the Pacific--Guadalcanal; Rommel in North Africa; Japan’s venture in the Aleutians; the first major European campaign for the United States--the Twelfth Air Force’s invasion of Northwest Africa; and finally, the buildup of the Eighth Air Force in England for the Strategic Bombing Campaign. The interwar years are marked by the Italian-Ethiopian War and the Spanish Civil War, described here from the Italian, German, and Soviet perspectives. The World War I era includes the American expedition against Pancho Villa and four British expeditions in Africa and the Middle East. Finally, a number of famous campaigns illustrate the timelessness of expeditionary campaigns, particularly the campaigns of the Romans and Napoleon. In addition, parts of the American Civil War depict expeditionary efforts, as do American operations in China at the turn of the 20th century--the Boxer Rebellion. (30 figures). Notes: Product reproduced from digital image. General Info: Approved for Public Release. DTIC Accession Number: ADA416626XSP; OCLC: 74251329.


Mueller, Joseph N. 2002. “‘Not a Name, but an Emotion’.” Sea Power. 08. Volume 45, Issue 8; Pages: 52. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Military history; Travel; Military Historical Tours (Company). Notes: Sea Power; Article; Source Information: August 2002, Vol. 45 Issue 8, p52; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Military history; Subject Term: Travel; Subject Term: Military Historical Tours (Company); Number of Pages: 3p; Illustrations: 1 map, 3c, 1bw; Document Type: Article. Abstract: Reports on a tour group organized by Military Historical Tours to travel to Guadalcanal in the Solomon Islands. Mission of the tour; Members of the tour group;
Historical events that have happened in Guadalcanal in 1942. Reports on a tour group organized by Military Historical Tours to travel to Guadalcanal in the Solomon Islands. Mission of the tour; Members of the tour group; Historical events that have happened in Guadalcanal in 1942. ISSN: 0199-1337.

Mueller, Joseph N. “Not a Name, but an Emotion”: A Return to “the Ridge”; Guadalcanal Plus Sixty: First Division Marines Storm Ashore Across Guadalcanal’s Beaches on 7 August 1942. The Invaders were Surprised at the Lack of Initial Enemy Opposition. Navy League of the United States. August 2002. Volume: 2007, Abstract: The story of the Battle for Guadalcanal unfolds amidst the somber atmosphere of the marble monuments located on the top of “Skyline.” Each phase of the campaign is recounted on the huge tablets. A bronze relief map in the northwest corner of the ridge gives perspective to the panoramic view of the entire western region of the island. From this key terrain feature, one can easily see the Matanikau River Valley, site of some of the bloodiest fighting of the Guadalcanal campaign... Leaving the monuments, the tour group headed east for Alligator Creek--named by the Marines for its crocodile population. It was at this stagnant stream that the first major Japanese attempt to recapture Guadalcanal was repulsed. Like the Battle of Bunker Hill—which was, in point of fact, fought on Breed’s Hill—the so-called Battle for the Tenaru River was actually fought at Alligator Creek. The reason for the confusion was the inaccuracy of the Marine Corps’ maps, which confused the eastern complex of the Tenaru with Alligator Creek. URL: http://www.navyleague.org/sea_power/aug_02_14.php


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Mustard, Harry Stoll. 1944-1945. Battalion Surgeon with the Marines: Letters from a Doctor with an Infantry Regiment in the Pacific, in World War II: 1944 Jan. 10-1945 Oct. 23. [Typescript]; Descriptors: iv, 136; Soldiers- South Carolina; Marines- United States; World War, 1939-1945- Medical care- United States; Medicine, Military- United States- History- 20th century; Iwo Jima, Battle of, 1945- Personal narratives, American; Marines- United States- Biography; Mustard, Harry Stoll, 1913-1963- Correspondence; Mustard, Harry Stoll, 1889-1966- Correspondence; Mustard, Ariel Elizabeth Williams- Correspondence; United States. Marines- Medical personnel; United States. Marine Corps- Biography; Guam- History- Japanese occupation, 1941-1944- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History; Manuscript. Abstract: Seventy-four transcribed and annotated letters sent by H.S. Mustard to his parents describing life as a military physician in the Pacific theater. Topics addressed include accounts of training in U.S. descriptions of deployments to Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Guam, Iwo Jima, and elsewhere; and observations on progress of the war, local conditions, and his fellow soldiers, including reports of meeting fellow South Carolinians stationed in the South Pacific. Letters were transcribed by Mustard’s father, ca. 1963, in months following death of H.S. Mustard, Jr., the veteran of World War II; collection includes introduction and epilogue written by Mustard, Sr., and letter, 3 Apr. 2000, written by Harry S. Mustard, III. Notes: Bio/History: Military physician of the First Battalion of the Twenty-first Infantry Regiment of the Third Marine Division, serving in Pacific theatre during World War II; born in Charleston, S.C. completed three years of undergraduate work at Johns Hopkins University, 1932-1935; raised cotton in Boykin, S.C., 1935-1937; attended University of South Carolina; graduated from Medical School of Duke University, 1943; son of Harry S. Mustard (1889-1966). Reproduction: Photocopy. General Info: Preferred citation: Harry Stoll Mustard (1913-1963), Battalion Surgeon with the Marines: Letters from a Doctor with an Infantry Regiment in the Pacific, in World War II, 10 Jan. 1944-23 Oct. 1945, South Caroliniana Library, University of South Carolina. OCLC: 45309047.

Mustard, Harry Stoll. 1944-1945. Harry Stoll Mustard (1913-1963) Papers, 1944 Jan. 10-1945 Oct. 23. Descriptors: 88 items. World War, 1939-1945- Medical care- United States; Medicine, Military- United States- History- 20th century; Soldiers- South Carolina- Correspondence; Marines- United States- Correspondence; Iwo Jima, Battle of, 1945- Personal narratives, American; Mustard, Harry Stoll, 1913-1963- Correspondence; Mustard family; United States. Marines- Medical personnel; United States. Marine Corps- Biography; Charleston (S.C.)- Biography; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History; Guam- History- Japanese occupation, 1941-1944- Personal narratives, American; Manuscript. Abstract: Letters with enclosures sent by Harry S. Mustard chiefly to his parents, Dr. and Mrs. Harry S. Mustard, New York, N.Y., describing life as a military physician in the Pacific theater; topics addressed include accounts of training in U.S. descriptions of deployments to Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Guam, Iwo Jima, and elsewhere; and observations on progress of the war, local conditions, and his fellow soldiers, including reports of meeting fellow South Carolinians stationed in the South Pacific. Correspondence begins at time of Mustard’s training at Camp LeJeune, New River, N.C., and ends with beginning of his journey home from the Pacific; Mustard served with infantry battalions in combat on both Guam and Iwo Jima. Assigned to several different units, Mustard was promoted to full lieutenant, and also made battalion surgeon; he was awarded a Purple Heart in Aug. 1945 for a shrapnel wound received in Mar. 1945; other letters were written by Mustard from Camp Elliott, Ca., aboard the troop transport ship en route to the Pacific, and at New Caledonia. Transcribed and annotated version of letters,
"Battalion surgeon with the Marines: letters from a doctor with an infantry regiment in the Pacific, in World War II," also available in Manuscripts Division, South Caroliniana Library, University of South Carolina. Notes: References: University South Caroliniana Society Program, 2002.; pp. 54-56; Notes: Bio/History: Military physician, First Battalion, Twenty-first Infantry Regiment, Third Marine Division, serving in Pacific theatre during World War II; native of Charleston, S.C. undergraduate study at Johns Hopkins University, 1932-1935; raised cotton in Boykin, S.C., 1935-1937; attended University of South Carolina; graduated from Medical School of Duke University, 1943; practiced pediatric medicine in Longmeadow, Mass., following World War II. General Info: Preferred citation: Harry Stoll Mustard (1913-1963) Papers, South Caroliniana Library, University of South Carolina. OCLC: 48386986.

Nakamura, Kan and Campbell, Frank Nelson. 1942-1943. Diary, 1942-1943. Descriptors: Soldiers- Japan; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943- Personal narratives, Japanese. Abstract: Typewritten transcript of a World War II diary (Sept. 19, 1942-Jan. 6, 1943), written by Kan Nakamura, a Japanese soldier who served as a Probational Officer of the Sano Group, Sohji Butai, Takizaura Butai, Matsumaga Tai, and was involved in the Battle of Guadalcanal. The diary records illnesses and deaths among fellow soldiers, daily air raids by enemy bombers, camp life and conditions, difficulties in finding supplies and getting provisions to the soldiers. The end of the diary lists personnel movements and equipment used. Notes on the transcript indicate the diary was most likely translated by the U.S. Office of Naval Intelligence in 1943. Notes: 0.1 linear ft. (1 folder); Named Person: Nakamura, Kan. Notes: Mss 2, F7 (6-1-1). Previously known as SC0051, TR0557, and A96.43. OCLC: 51091476.


National Geographic Society (U.S.). 1994. Ghosts of the Deep: History’s Greatest Shipwrecks. Washington, D.C.: National Geographic Society. Volume: 4 videocassettes (ca 298 min.), Descriptors: Shipwrecks- History- 20th century; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943; Films for the hearing impaired; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Last voyage of the Lusitania, 62 min. Lost fleet of Guadalcanal, 106 min. Search for Battleship Bismarck, 60 min. Secrets of the Titanic, 70 min. Notes: Named Corp: Lusitania (Steamship) Bismarck (Battleship) Titanic (Steamship); System Info: VHS. Notes: Closed captioned for the hearing impaired. Other Titles: History’s greatest shipwrecks; At head of title; National Geographic presents, ghosts of the deep. ISBN: 08001377728 (set); 079222650X (Lusitania); 0800127269 (Guadalcanal); 9780800127268 (Guadalcanal); 0792214730 (Bismarck); 0780618599 (Titanic). OCLC: 81665006.


Nelson, Glenn Walter. “Duties on Guadalcanal.” Glenn Nelson, a product of the plains of Wyoming and Nebraska, made an unusual career choice when he joined the Navy in the early days of World War II; he attended the service’s Japanese Language School. His duties were to translate captured documents and interrogate the rare captured Japanese soldier. On Okinawa, he took the difficult assignment of trying to persuade surviving soldiers and civilians to come out from the island’s many caves. He was in Pearl Harbor for the surrender, but by that point Nelson had become so fascinated with the Japanese that he spent 20 years after the war in Japan with the Central Intelligence Agency. Veteran’s History Project. Library of Congress. http://lcweb2.loc.gov/diglib/vhp-stories/loc.natlib.afc2001001.10653/


Nielsen, Leslie; Stabler Productions and Video Communication. 1974. Guadalcanal Odyssey. Stabler Productions; Video Communication. Volume: 1 videocassette (96 min.). Abstract: “Leslie Nelson takes us on a tour of the island of Guadalcanal in the Coral Sea, which was the site of one of the most brutal battles of World War II”--Container. Descriptors: Marine ecology-Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Coral reef ecology- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal-; Underwater exploration- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)-
Description and travel; Videorecording; Videocassette. Notes: System Info: VHS format.


The regiment participated in several campaigns in the war in the Pacific, including Guadalcanal.


“One Man’s War.” 2004. World War II. 09. Volume 19, Issue 5; Pages 18-80. Descriptors: Military art & science; Invasion; Mallonee, Gordon Lee; Angaur Island (Palau); Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Palau; Solomon Islands; United States. Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: Sep2004, Vol. 19 Issue 5, p18; Subject Term: Military art & science; Subject Term: Invasion; Subject Term: Mallonee, Gordon Lee; Geographic Subject: Angaur Island (Palau); Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: PALAU; Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Geographic Subject: United States; Number of Pages: 5p; Illustrations: 1bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 2811. Abstract: Relates the experience of Lieutenant Gordon Lee Mallonee in leading Operation Stalemate II, the U.S. invasion of the Palau Islands. Information on the job of Mallonee’s task group; Observation on Guadalcanal; Reaction of the troops when the commanding officer announced that the attack on Angaur was scheduled to take place on September 16, 1944. Relates the experience of Lieutenant Gordon Lee Mallonee in leading Operation Stalemate II, the U.S. invasion of the Palau Islands. Information on the job of Mallonee’s task group; Observation on Guadalcanal; Reaction of the troops when the commanding officer announced that the attack on Angaur was scheduled to take place on September 16, 1944. ISSN: 0898-4204.

O’Neal, Michael F. 1999. “Expeditionary Air Forces’ Roots in the Past: Cactus Air Force.” Air Univ Maxwell AFB AL. Volume: ADA397327, Pages: 39 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Military Strategy; *Air Logistics Support; Military History; Lessons Learned; Flight Training; Theses; Military Capabilities; Supplies; Air Power; Pacific Ocean Islands; Second World War; Guadalcanal; Cactus Air Force. Abstract: This paper is primarily a description of the state of aircrew training and the maintenance and logistics practices employed by an early example of an Expeditionary Air Force: the Cactus Air Force on Guadalcanal in 1942. Secondarily it compares the training, maintenance and logistical problems dealt with by Cactus personnel with the modern AEF now in development. Information for WWII-era Cactus Air Force issues was obtained by literature review and archive research. Current AEF information is from open sources and is widely available. Problems faced and solved by Cactus Air Force are lessons learned that we may be able to use to save time, money, and lives as we develop AEF concepts. The paper examines and enumerates Cactus problem areas and some of their solutions. The lack of training for the crews who arrived on Guadalcanal, codenamed Cactus, on 20 and 22 August 42 caused a number of pilots to lose their lives. The lack of preparation for the conditions they would be working and living
under dramatically affected how the maintenance was handled. Enemy activity prevented the initial supply stocks from disembarking, and subsequent sustainment operations were chronically threatened. The greatest assets the Cactus Air Force people had were a diehard attitude and a will to win. The technological leap forward from World War II to This paper is primarily a description of the state of aircrew training and the maintenance and logistics practices employed by an early example of an Expeditionary Air Force: the Cactus Air Force on Guadalcanal in 1942. Secondarily it compares the training, maintenance and logistical problems dealt with by Cactus personnel with the modern AEF now in development. Notes: Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC and NTIS. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA397327

“Operations of the 25th Infantry Division on Guadalcanal.” 1994. Infantry Div (Light) (25th) Schofield Barracks HI. Volume:, Pages: 233 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Infantry Personnel; *Division Level Organizations; Warfare; Defense Systems; Leadership; Enlisted Personnel; High Density; Enemy; Jungles; Males; Maneuvers; Power; Tropical Regions. Notes: Approved for Public Release. DTIC: ADA288405.

“Operations of the 25th Infantry Division in the Central Solomons.” Pages: 157. Descriptors: 25th Infantry Division; Regimental histories; Solomon Islands; Guadalcanal; New Georgia campaign; World War; 1939-1945; World War II; WWII; Military operations; Jungle warfare; 35th Infantry; 161st Infantry; 27th Infantry; Field artillery; Combat engineers; Military intelligence; Combat service supply. Abstract: Covers the time period 16 August 1943 to 12 October 1943 in the specified islands of New Georgia, Arundel, and Vella Lavella. Includes records of various operations and plans of all divisions and services, photos, maps, and 25th ID officer roster. Notes: Genre/Form: Textual- Illustrations- Photographs- Maps. System Info: PDF; Adobe Acrobat required. Notes: Combined Arms Research Library Digital Library. General Info: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited. N 2133-B. OCLC: 78920092.

Ossad, Steven L. 2004. “Fighting Admiral of Guadalcanal.” World War II. 05. Volume 19, Issue 2; 2, Pages 50-56. Descriptors: Naval art & science; Naval battles; United States. Navy-History- World War, 1939-1945; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations; Callaghan, Daniel Judson; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Pacific Ocean. Notes: World War II; Article; Source Information: May2004, Vol. 19 Issue 2, pages 50; Subject Term: Naval art & science; Subject Term: Naval battles; Subject Term: United States. Navy- History- World War, 1939-1945; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations; Subject Term: Callaghan, Daniel Judson; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Pacific Ocean; Number of Pages: 7p; Illustrations: 1 map, 1c, 9bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 4134. Abstract: Focuses on the leadership of U.S. Navy Rear Admiral Daniel Judson Callaghan in the naval battle off Guadalcanal in the Pacific Ocean against Japanese naval forces during World War II. Tactical errors committed by both forces; U.S. Naval ships that were sunk or damaged; Lead officer of the Japanese naval forces; Information on the ships that participated in the battle; Significance of the battle; Career background of Callaghan; Casualties sustained by both forces. Focusing on the leadership of U.S. Navy Rear Admiral Daniel Judson Callaghan in the naval battle off Guadalcanal in the Pacific Ocean against Japanese naval forces during World War II. Tactical errors committed by both forces; U.S. Naval ships that were sunk or damaged; Lead officer of the Japanese naval forces; Information on the ships that participated in the battle; Significance of the battle; Career background of Callaghan; Casualties sustained by both forces. ISSN: 0898-4204.

Natural History of Guadalcanal


Oxford, Edward. “Guadalcanal.” American History Illustrated. Jan/Feb93. Volume 27, Issue 6; Pages 26. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Amphibious operations. Notes: American History Illustrated; Article; Source Information: Jan/Feb93, Vol. 27 Issue 6, p26; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945- Amphibious operations; Number of Pages: 18p; Illustrations: 1 illustration, 12bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 10775. Abstract: Discusses the events surrounding the 1942-43 Battle for Guadalcanal, where the United States forces met and turned back the tide of Japanese aggression, marking the end of the beginning of the Pacific War. Japanese efforts to retake the airfield; Hard-fought and costly naval and air actions; After six months United States forces commanded the air, the seas, and the ground itself. INSET: Holding the line at Guadalcanal. Discusses the events surrounding the 1942-43 Battle for Guadalcanal, where the United States forces met and turned back the tide of Japanese aggression, marking the end of the beginning of the Pacific War. Japanese efforts to retake the airfield; Hard-fought and costly naval and air actions; After six months United States forces commanded the air, the seas, and the ground itself. INSET: Holding the line at Guadalcanal. ISSN: 0002-8770.


“Pacific Counterblow: The 11th Bombardment Group and the 67th Fighter Squadron in the Battle for Guadalcanal. an Interim Report.” 1992. Washington, DC: Air Force History Support Office Bolling Afb Dc. 63 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Military History; *Aerial Warfare; *Air Force Operations; *Army Aviation; *Bombing; *South Pacific Ocean; *Second World War; Fighter Aircraft; Air Force; Military Forces (Foreign); Military Commanders; Australia; Shipping; Bomber Aircraft; Pacific Ocean Islands; New Zealand; *Army Air Force; *Guadalcanal; B-17 Aircraft; P-39 Aircraft; P-400 Aircraft; B-26 Aircraft; Tulagi; Solomon Islands; Millard F Harmon; Laverne G Saunders; 67th Fighter Squadron; 11th Bombardment Group. Abstract: “Pacific Counterblow” tells the story of the Battle for Guadalcanal (1942), focusing on the operations of the 11th Bombardment Group and the 67th Fighter Squadron. Months after the devastation of Pearl Harbor, U.S. forces had crushed the Japanese fleet at Midway and then moved to seize the initiative. Army Air Force commanders in the Pacific sought to prevent the enemy from severing Australia’s supply lines. So
the B-17s of the 11th Bomb Group and the P-39s and P-400s of the 67th Fighter Squadron, flying from makeshift bases at Espiritu Santo and Henderson Field, began grueling attacks on Japanese shipping between Rabaul, New Britain and the Solomon Islands. After several months of bitter fighting, American forces gained control of Guadalcanal, positioning them to swing forward beyond Rabaul to New Guinea. Notes: Wings at War Series, No. 3. Approved for Public Release; Distribution Unlimited. DTIC: ADA433341.


Parker, N. Bruce; Wood, Ardis L. Parker and Semper Fidelis, Inc. (Minneapolis, Minn.). 1942-1974. Semper Fidelis Papers, 1942-1944, 1974. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Women; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943. Abstract: Articles, clippings, and correspondence of publicity chairwoman Ardis L. Parker, documenting the members and activities of this organization of female relatives of men serving in the U.S. Marine Corps during World War II. Includes a few letters of N. Bruce Parker, Ardis’ brother, during his service with the Marines in the Southwest Pacific. Notes: 38 items in 1 folder; Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps. General Info: An inventory that provides additional information about these materials is available in the repository; filed as P1219. Other Titles: Leatherneck. OCLC: 122508112.


Parshall, Gerald S. interviewee. McIntosh, James F. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 2001. Oral History Interview with Gerald S. Parshall 2001. Volume: Sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 40 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips. Videorecording: 1 videocassette (ca. 40 min.); sd., col. 1/2 in. Master sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 40 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips., Descriptors: Veterans- Wisconsin- Milwaukee; Soldiers- California- Hollywood; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Combat; Soldiers- Suicidal behavior- Japan; Saipan, Battle of, Northern Marina Islands, 1944; Tarawa, Battle of, Kiribati, 1943; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Merchant mariners; World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Combat; World War, 1939-1945- Equipment and supplies; Parshall, Gerald S., 1924-; Jaekel, Robert; Videorecording; Cassette recording Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Gerald Parshalle, a Milwaukee, Wis. veteran, discusses his World War II service with the Merchant Marines. He talks about training at Coyote Falls (California) and transporting Sea Bees to construct an airstrip during the battle of Tarawa. Parshalle mentions carrying supplies to soldiers at Guadalcanal, nightly bombing by a Japanese airplane while near Guadalcanal, and seeing actor Robert Jaekel while on Guam. He touches upon transfer to a “liberty” ship that carried ammunition.

“Patch of Destiny.” 1942. Time. November 2. Volume 40, Pages 28-32. Descriptors: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon islands, Battle of, 1942; Vandegrift, Alexander Archer; Guadalcanal. Notes: Illustration; Map. ISSN: 0040-781X.

Patterson, Russell G. 1935-1943. 1935-1943. Papers. Descriptors: 34 cubic ft. (168 items). Voyages and travels; World War, 1939-1945- Battlefields- Photographs; Montgomery of Alamein, Bernard Law Montgomery, Viscount, 1887-1976; Eisenhower, Dwight D. (Dwight David), 1890-1969; Davis, Benjamin O. (Benjamin Oliver), 1912--; Roosevelt, Franklin D. (Franklin Delano), 1882-1945; George VI, King of Great Britain, 1895-1952; Roosevelt, Eleanor, 1884-1962; Pagan Moon (Schooner); Casablanca Conference (1943)- Photographs; Pensacola (Fla.- Description and travel; Havana (Cuba)- Description and travel; New York (New York)- Description and travel; Asmara (Eritrea)- Description and travel; Africa- Photographs; Arabian Peninsula- Photographs; Aden- Photographs; Eritrea- Photographs; Kenya- Photographs; Uganda- Photographs; Ethiopia- Photographs; Egypt- Photographs; Algiers (Algeria); Dunkerque (France); Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Pensacola Bay Bridge (Fla.); Manuscript. Abstract: Papers consisting of a travel log or chronicle of the Pagan Moon, a 37 foot schooner on a cruise from Pensacola to Havana, Cuba, and return (1935); a travel log of a trip, New York to Asmara, East Africa (1942); and photograph albums of trips to Africa and Arabia including scenes of Aden, Eritrea, Kenya, Uganda, Abyssinia, and Egypt. A second group of photographs covers the Casablanca Conference and World War II battle scenes. Subjects include generals Montgomery, Eisenhower, and B.O. Davis, Franklin Delano Roosevelt, Algiers, New Guinea, King George VI, Dunkirk, Eleanor Roosevelt, Guadalcanal, and the Pensacola Bay Bridge. Notes: Genre/Form: Travelers’ writings, American. Logs (records). Photographs. Notes: This entry replaces NUCMC MS 76-1721. Library of Congress LCCN: 98-800757. OCLC: 70957129.

Peabody, Hitch. 2004. “Paramount Interest: Command Relationships in Amphibious Warfare.” Naval War Coll Newport Ri Joint Military Operations Dept. Volume: ADA425987, Pages: 28 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Amphibious Operations; *Joint Military Activities; Military Forces (United States); Warfare; Theater Level Operations; Military Doctrine; Command And Control Systems; Marine Corps Personnel; Military Commanders; Doctrine; Landing Forces; Second World War. Abstract: In 2001, U.S. amphibious forces abandoned sixty years of established command and control doctrine, replacing the traditional senior-subordinate relationship between Navy and Marine commanders with coequal command. Why did it change? This paper examines the development of amphibious doctrine during World War II, when command relationships were worked out under fire. There were differences between the Pacific and European theaters, reflecting the service traditions of the landing forces, as well as British command traditions. Comparing U.S. experience with command models at Guadalcanal and Tarawa with that used at Salerno highlights contrasts between the two approaches. There have been many changes both in technology and practice in amphibious warfare since World War II. An overview of these developments shows why the old doctrine needed to change and how new practices made change possible. Modern amphibious practice works well in the slightly hazy uncertainty of coequal command, which provides flexibility to the joint task force commander.
Strike Group concept develops, the advantages of coequal command should not be forgotten. Notes: Approved for Public Release. The original document contains color images. DTIC URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA425987


People First! News Page. Descriptors: Solomon Islands news; South Pacific; News; Polynesian; Melanesian; Rennell; Bellona; Malaita; Ulawa; Choiseul; Marovo; Gizo; Honiara; Guadalcanal; Makira; Temotu; development; communications. Abstract: Run by the People First Network, this web site contains detailed information about current events in the Solomon Islands. OCLC: 54844523.

People First Network. Descriptors: Solomon Islands; South Pacific; News; Polynesian; Melanesian; Rennell; Bellona; Malaita; Ulawa; Choiseul; Marovo; Gizo; Honiara; Guadalcanal; Makira; Temotu; development; communications. Abstract: People First Network is part of the Rural Development Volunteers Association and is thereby affiliated to the Rural Development Division of the Ministry of Provincial Government and Rural Development. Their web-site provides a wealth of documentation including archives about development projects across the country. OCLC: 54843480.

Perrin, James R., Perrin, Richard. 1942-1999. Papers and Photographs, 1942-1999. Descriptors: Veterans- Wisconsin- West Bend; Soldiers- Wisconsin- West Bend; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Guadalcanal; World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Area. Abstract: Photographs, certificates, and personal military papers related to the World War II service of Perrin, a West Bend, Wis. native, who served with the Navy as a chief gunners mate in the Pacific Ocean. The collection includes honorable discharge certificates and separation papers. There is also a sketch of Perrin drawn by a fellow sailor, a letter from the Japanese Embassy inquiring about Japanese teeth Perrin collected at Guadalcanal, and a 1940 edition of The Bluejackets’ Manual which includes inscriptions from soldiers and sailors whom Perrin met while in service. A certificate commemorating Perrin’s crossing of the equator and signatures of people he served with is also found. Photographs show James Perrin in uniform and several casual photos taken in the South Pacific. There is also a photo of Perrin and his wife Olga and a photo of Olga and her sons James R. Jr. and Richard Perrin, Richard is wearing a child’s sailor uniform. Notes: Papers 0.2 linear ft. (1 archives box and 1 oversized folder) and. Photographs 0.1 linear ft. (1 folder); Named Person: Perrin, James R., 1905-1972. Perrin family. Genre/Form: Photographs. Notes: 2-4-3, Ph5, F20 (27-1-1), Ov6, F5 (4-1-2). Previously known as TR0131, A94.081, and V1994.69. Other Titles: Bluejackets Manual. OCLC: 53936498.

Perry, Roger E. 1943-1946. Papers, 1943-1946. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Horse racing- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Internet resource. Abstract: The collection of Commander Roger Perry contains materials relating to his position as Commanding Officer of USS Jerauld in 1944-1945 and includes correspondence and printed material relating to Jerauld. Supplemental information reflects his interest in horse racing and includes racing information on the Guadalcanal Turf Club. Notes: 0.25 cubic ft; Named Person: Perry, Roger E.- Archives. Perry, Roger E.-


“Pieces Of History... Guadalcanal Record of Events The journal of a Marine unit bears its own scars from the World War II island campaign.” 2007. Prologue: National Archives Trust Fund Board. Volume 39; Number 2, pages 76-76. ISSN: 0033-1031.


Pollard, George Francis Pollard, Grace and Elrick, George S. 1944-1945. Papers, 1944-1945. Descriptors: Soldiers- Wisconsin- Madison; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Popular music- United States; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal. Abstract: Scattered papers of George F. Pollard relating largely to the battle of Guadalcanal. Collection contains two roughly copied battlefield maps of Guadalcanal Island showing the position of Japanese units as well as the locations of several naval and land battles. A booklet titled “Story of the Solomons” by Sgt. George S. Elrick provided soldiers with background information on the region, its natives, and its wildlife. Another booklet, “The Guadalcanal Campaign,” was printed soon after the war and recounts the basic chronology of events in the campaign. Pollard’s separation record reveals the details of his service. Soldiers returning to the U.S. could learn the procedure for a typical 45 day rest period from a sheet titled, “Your 45 days at home.” There are also the lyrics to several popular homefront songs that Pollard cut out of an unidentified periodical. Notes: 0.2 linear ft. (1 archives box); Named Person: Pollard, George Francis, 1920-1992. Genre/Form: Battlefield maps. Geographic: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- Description and travel. Notes: 2-4-5/ Accessioned as TR1138. OCLC: 63134879.

Poor, Henry V. Battle of Santa Cruz Islands; 1993. Mustin, Henry A., et al. 1994. The Battles of Cape Esperance, 11 October 1942 and Santa Cruz Islands, 26 October 1942 Uniform Title: Battle of Cape Esperance. 1943, 1993, 1994. Washington D.C.: Naval Historical Center, Dept. of the Navy. Descriptors: 80 pages; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Esperance, Cape; Esperance, Cape (Solomon Islands)- History, Military. Notes: Henry V. Poor authored the account of the Battle of Cape Esperance while the Battle of the Santa Cruz Islands was written by Henry V. Poor, Henry A. Mustin, and Colin G. Jameson; both were published together without attribution by the Office of
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Probasco, Michael T. 1994. “Joint Force Air Component Commander or Coordinator?” Air War Coll Maxwell AFB AL. APR 1994. Volume: ADA281143, Pages: 28. Descriptors: World War 2; Guadalcanal; Cactus Air Force; Interservice Conflict; Joint Doctrine; Concentration Of Forces; Goldwater Nichols Act; Jfacc (Joint Force Air Component Commander); Jfccp (Joint Force Commander’s Campaign Plan); Desert Storm Operation. Abstract: The 20 August to 15 November campaign in the Pacific was overwhelmingly an air campaign. It all centered around a single airfield, on Guadalcanal, where the air power of a truly joint force decisively turned back the final assault. The Japanese empire was doomed. This author found very little evidence that suggested an fresh inter-service (joint) reexamination of the paradigm of the joint use of air power in support of the Joint Force Commander’s (JFC) campaign plan. Notes: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited. Database: DTIC AND NTIS.
Profile: Battle of Guadalcanal. 2002. Washington, DC: National Public Radio. August 7, 2002. (10:00-11:00 AM). Volume: Radio Broadcast transcript, Abstract: Today marks 60 years since the start of the first American offensive of the Second World War, the battle of Guadalcanal. On this date in 1942, thousands of US Marines splashed ashore on the then obscure island in the Southwest Pacific and dug in for six months of desperate struggle against not only the Japanese but against heat, jungle rain, disease and hunger. Before Guadalcanal, the Japanese initiated every move in the Pacific War. Afterwards, the United States and its allies decided where and when to fight. In the second of our two part National Geographic Radio Expedition, NPR’s Neal Conan reports from Guadalcanal.

NEAL CONAN reporting: It was all about the airfield. (Soundbite of airplane) CONAN: These days, Henderson International Airport is the home of Solomon Air and its tiny fleet of small island hoppers. Jets from Fiji and to Australia stop by a couple of times a week. This island is so remote it’s hard to imagine why anyone wanted it badly enough to fight for it. But if you look at a map of the Southwest Pacific and think about how far planes could fly in 1942, you can see it. From here, Japanese aircraft could threaten Australia’s supply lines to the United States. The Japanese started this airfield in May 1942. It was almost finished when the Marines took it away from them. They completed construction and quickly added an auxiliary strip nearby called Fighter One. Marine pilot Jeff DeBlanc remembers choking dust when it was dry and mud when it wasn’t. Notes: Morning Edition. Database: History Resource Center.

Profile: Aid for US Marines during Battle of Guadalcanal by Natives of the Solomon Islands. 2002. August 6, 2002. (10:00-11:00 AM). Volume: Radio Broadcast transcript, Abstract: This is MORNING EDITION from NPR News. I’m Renee Montagne. Sixty years ago, United States Marines waded ashore on the then-obscure island of Guadalcanal. The battle that followed lasted six months and changed the tide of the Second World War in the Pacific. Some veterans of the battle already are gathered on Guadalcanal to mark the anniversary. Martin Clemens was one of the heroes of that battle. Though he expected to be there, he had to stay home in Australia on doctor’s orders. But when the Marines first arrived on Guadalcanal, Martin Clemens was there waiting for them. In our latest National Geographic Radio Expedition, NPR’s Neal Conan reports from Guadalcanal. Notes: Morning Edition.

Quantock, David E. 2002. “Disaster at Savo Island, 1942.” Army War College, Carlisle Barracks, PA. Volume: ADA401647, 43 Pages(s). Descriptors: *Lessons Learned; *Naval Warfare; *Second World War; Military Forces (United States); Military History; Military Forces(Foreign); Military Commanders; Battles; Savo Island; Guadalcanal. Abstract: This paper examines the naval battle of Savo Island from a historical perspective and extracts the lessons learned from a strategic, operational and tactical perspective. The Battle of Savo Island occurred early in the morning on 9 August in 1942 when the Japanese 8th Fleet surprised the Allied Task Force shortly after the landing at Guadalcanal. In approximately 37 minutes, the Japanese Navy destroyed four heavy cruisers and killed more than 1000 American and Australian sailors handing the U.S. Navy the worst defeat in its history. There were many reasons for this debacle, however the one common thread through the entire disaster was the poorly framed command and control relationships. This article examines the command and control breakdowns along with the various contributing causes such as personality conflicts between various commanders of the allied force, communication and equipment shortfalls, common prejudices, and the superior night fighting ability of the Japanese force that caused this decisive defeat. Notes: Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC and NTIS: ADA401647. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA401647


Reed, Dale. Andersen, Norm. Lee, Lanny. Lutz, Gayle. Rhay, Gary and Marathon Music & Video. 1999. Guadalcanal the Island of Death. Eugene, OR: Dastar Corp. Marathon Music & Video; Produced & distributed by Entertainment Distributing. Volume: 3 videocassettes (ca. 60 min. each), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: “In the summer of 1942, America was still reeling from the attack on Pearl Harbor and the humiliating victories of the


Reed, Dale Lee, Lanny and Marathon Music & Video. 1999. Code Name, Cactus. Eugene, OR: Produced and distributed by Entertainment Distributing. Volume: 1 videocassette (ca. 60 min.), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; Videorecording; Videocassette. Abstract: “Cactus was the American
code name for Guadalcanal... In this volume, we join the Marines in the invasion of the Solomon Islands and the capture of Henderson Field”--Container. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Consists of a combination of interviews and archival footage. Title from container and cassette holder. Participants: Host, Dale Reed. Responsibility: An MM & V Production; producer, Lanny Lee. Written by Gayle Lutz & Gary Rhay; editor, Gayle Lutz; music, Larry Rosen; camera, Gabe Cooley. OCLC: 46729746.

Reed, Dale Lee, Lanny and Marathon Music & Video. 1999. Operation Watchtower. Eugene, OR: Produced and distributed by Entertainment Distributing. Volume: 1 videocassette (ca. 60 min.), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: “The origin of Operation Watchtower... begins with a review of the Japanese attack at Pearl Harbor and early successes that underline the desperate situation in which the Americans found themselves. However, in May of 1942, the tide began to turn at the battle of the Coral Sea, before the shattering American victory at Midway opened the way for the United States to strike back. The question in June of 1942 was where, and the answer was an obscure Solomon Island named Guadalcanal”--Container. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Consists of a combination of interviews and archival footage. Title from container and cassette holder. Participants: Host, Dale Reed. Responsibility: An MM & V Production; producer, Lanny Lee. Written by Gayle Lutz & Gary Rhay; editor, Gayle Lutz; music, Larry Rosen; camera, Gabe Cooley. OCLC: 46729745.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Reminiscences of World War II Soldiers, 1940-1945, 1993-1995. 1940-1995. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives; World War, 1939-1945- Anecdotes; World War, 1939-1945- Veterans; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Philippines; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Italy; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- France; World War, 1939-1945- Prisoners and prisons, Japanese; Atomic bomb- History. Abstract: Reminiscences, diaries and reports from soldiers who served in Europe, Africa or the Pacific. Some include an account of their basic training. Many give stories about the people they are serving with or people that they meet in different countries including Germany during the occupation. There are descriptions of people, places and experiences in New York City, Scotland, England, Italy, France, Denmark and Germany. Accounts of battle in Italy, France, Manila, Guadalcanal, Tarawa, Tokyo and Tamaroa. An account of the bombing and sinking of the U.S.S. Perry. An Air Force gunner writes about the difference between life while on a mission and between missions, and life in France after his plane is shot down. The other side of Armageddon; Gordon Bent Report of military service during WWII, Glenn Brady The second world war: Facts; Hans Brem Prelude to war; Thomas L. Cochran My eight round trips across the Atlantic through the Panama Canal; Thomas L. Cochran Italy diary, 1944-1945; Willard P. Evans WWII memories; Imery V. Gifford Manila prisoner of war diary; Lonnie R. Hinds Experiences of Raymond Knight, U.S. Marine Corps A bit of Coast Guard history; Ed Kohlrus The sinking of the U.S. Perry; Fred W. Morton February 16, 1945, a day to remember; William Morton Army service questionnaire; Eugene L. Osman Finschhafen-Manila highlights; Orville E. Pyle Manila to Tamaroa; Orville E. Pyle I lied to live; Kevin Steinkamp How the most serious problem in the atomic bomb project was overcome; Frederick J. Worden. Notes: 21 linear feet (1/2 box); Named Corp: Jireh Perry (Ship); Notes: Bio/History: In 1993 the Illinois Historical Society placed articles in newspapers around the state asking for oral histories of soldiers and civilians who had experienced WWII. The respondents included veterans from the United States Army, Air Force, Navy, Marines and Coast Guard. Also from an International Harvester employee who, with his family in Manila, was held prisoner for three years and a man who had worked at a factory in Decatur, Ill. where barriers used for the atomic bomb were made. General Info: Organization: Arranged alphabetically. Preferred citation: Reminiscences of World War II Soldiers, Illinois State Historical Library. OCLC: 52007135.

[Report on Invasion of Tulagi and Guadalcanal Islands]. 1942. Volume: sound discs, Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Tulaghi Island; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Non-musical recording; LP recording; Reel-to-reel tape. Abstract: An unidentified military commander describes the invasions of Tulagi and Guadalcanal Islands as they are
happening. He talks about troop movements, air and sea support, various weapons and equipment used, the Japanese opposition, and casualties sustained. Notes: Title supplied by cataloger. Cataloged from recording engineer’s notes. Preserved as part of the miscellaneous recordings collections. Library of Congress LCCN: 2004-653180; OCLC: 55124232.

Reynolds, Leah Reynolds, Lena. 1941-1977. The Leah and Lena Reynolds Papers, 1941-1977, Bulk 1941-1945. Descriptors: 1 box. Soldiers- United States- Correspondence; Morale; Soldiers- Attitudes; World War, 1939-1945- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Nurses- Philippines-Manila- Correspondence; Reynolds, Leah- Archives; Reynolds, Lena- Archives; Reynolds, Leah- Correspondence; Reynolds, Lena- Correspondence; United States. Army- Military life. Abstract: Contains the following types of materials: letters, v-mail, obituaries. Contains information pertaining to the following wars and time periods: World War II- United States- Pacific,- Western Hemisphere; 1970s. Contains information pertaining to the following military units and organizations: 472nd Engineer Maintenance Company; various other Army units including Army Air Corps; American Red Cross; 2nd Battalion, 17th Field Artillery Regiment, 2nd Infantry Division. General description of the collection: The Leah and Lena Reynolds papers include letters sent to two sisters and their mother from Ellicottsville, New York; servicemen training in U.S. and serving in Europe, South Pacific, India, Philippines, Brazil (1941-1945); most from cousin at Guadalcanal; few to Red Cross nurse in Manila; and data on morale, living conditions, and attitudes. Also, letters from lieutenant stationed in Korea (1976-1977). Notes: General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute/Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Other Titles: Papers of Lena Reynolds; Papers of Leah Reynolds; Reynolds papers; OCLC: 49776474.


Goettge, senior officer of D-2 Intelligence, set out from Kukum at 6 p.m. in a Tank Lighter craft, somewhat bigger than a Higgins boat, with twenty five officers, scouts and infantry men. Most of these men were from the Intelligence sections of the Division and Fifth Marines. A Regimental surgeon, Dr. Pratt, also accompanied the party. Colonel Goettge's ultimate aim was to achieve a possible victory for the Division and bring land operations on Guadalcanal to an end by giving the enemy the opportunity to surrender. He brought Lt. Ralph Corry, who was proficient in Japanese, with him. He had worked in government service in Japan prior to the war and would be an ideal man in this situation if the Japanese soldiers offered to lay down their arms. A Japanese naval warrant officer, who had been taken prisoner, indicated that there were many men who would surrender if they had the chance. They were wandering aimlessly in the jungle without food. There were also wounded men needing medical attention. Another prisoner gave a very similar story. A report also came from the Marines from the Matanikau line that they believed they saw a white flag flying inland from Point Cruz. There had also been Korean laborers who had come through the lines and surrendered. Colonel Goettge felt these indications were sufficient evidence to warrant immediate action. No time should be wasted in capitalizing on this situation. If a surrender did not eventuate then a plan outlined by First Sergeant Steven Custer would be followed. A patrol would make a reconnaissance of the Matanikau region, starting near the mouth of the river. When this was accomplished they would begin to move southward. A one night bivouac at a vantage point in the hills overlooking the river would be secured. The next day the patrol would continue following the Matanikau upstream, then move eastward toward the Lungga in the afternoon. They would bring in any prisoners who surrendered, as well as determine the strength and disposition of the enemy in this entire sector. The patrol planned to enter the Marine perimeter before dusk on the 13th. …Just before the patrol departed from the 5th Marine Regiment Command Post, Colonel Whaling, the 5th's executive officer, warned Goettge and Captain Ringer to stay clear of the ground between the Matanikau and Point Cruz. The Japanese were defending this particular section very aggressively. A landing west of Point Cruz was recommended… As they approached the shore it was extremely dark. There was no moon out. When the darkening shadows of the trees came into view Colonel Goettge instructed the coxswain to beach the craft. Before reaching shore, they ran aground on a sandbar protruding from the delta of the river. The coxswain shifted the engine into reverse gear and gunned the motor Marines got out and pushed and rocked the boat and finally she was free. This episode would have alerted any enemy in the area. Just on the west side of the Matanikau's estuary they went ashore. It was shortly before 10 p.m. This was the very place of which Colonel Whaling had warned them to stay clear Two hundred yards from the shore was an elevated rise in the terrain of approximately two hundred feet. It was a rugged coral ridge named Vayaya. The Japanese shore patrol heard the landing craft and immediately informed their command. Infantry men and their weapons were positioned near the base of the ridge and ready. Colonel Goettge gave instruction to his men to establish a defense cordon at the beach while he, Captain Ringer and First Sergeant Custer set off to find a bivouac for the night on the ridge. Goettge led the way. Shortly after the three men left the beach area, Goettge was cut down by one rifle shot; then machine gun fire cut loose. Custer was seriously wounded. Ringer helped the First Sergeant reach a protective position back on the beach. Not knowing if Colonel Goettge was dead or alive, Platoon Sergeant Few, Corporal Spaulding and Sergeant Arndt volunteered to go and bring him in. Upon reaching the Colonel, Few saw that he had been hit in the head and killed instantly. Removing his heavy wristwatch and insignia so that the enemy would not know his rank, they began to make their way back to the high water point at the edge of the beach.” ISBN: 9780961169633; LCCN: 92-61189. See: http://www.gnt.com/~jrube/goettge.htm
Natural History of Guadalcanal


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Saltsman Jr., Ralph H. “The 67th Fighter Squadron ‘Fighting Cocks’ at Guadalcanal.” Air Power History. 2000/Winter. Volume 47, Issue 4; Page 46. Descriptors: Autobiography; Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945; United States. Notes: Air Power History; Source Information: Winter 2000, Vol. 47 Issue 4, page 46; Subject Term: Autobiography; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945; Geographic Subject: United States; Number of Pages: 4p; Illustrations: 4bw; Document Type: Article; Full Text Word Count: 2284. Abstract: Recounts the author’s experience of defending Henderson Field, an enemy air base capture by the United States, during the Battle of Guadalcanal Island, Solomon Islands on September 14, 1942 in World War II. Description of how the 67th Fighter Squadron ‘Fighting Cocks’ defended the Henderson Field at Bloody Ridge from Japanese efforts to recapture the air base. Recounts the author’s experience of defending Henderson Field, an enemy air base capture by the United States, during the Battle of Guadalcanal Island, Solomon Islands on September 14, 1942 in World War II. Description of how the 67th Fighter Squadron ‘Fighting Cocks’ defended the Henderson Field at Bloody Ridge from Japanese efforts to recapture the air base. ISSN: 1044-016X.


Satterfield, John R. 1995. We Band of Brothers: The Sullivans and World War II. Parkersburg, Iowa: Mid-Prairie Books. Descriptors: 237 pages; World War, 1939-1945- Search and rescue operations; Shipwrecks- Oceania; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Sullivan Brothers; Juneau (Antiaircraft cruiser); Waterloo (Iowa)- History. Notes: Includes bibliographical references (p. 231-237). Other Titles: Sullivans and World War II; Sullivans and World War two; Responsibility: John R. Satterfield. OCLC: 32139012.


Schmidt, Ralph, interviewee. Buchholz; interviewer. Arendt, Laurie and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 2003. Oral History Interview with Ralph Schmidt 2003. Volume: Sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 50 min.): analog, 1 7/8 ips. Master sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 50 min.): analog, 1 7/8 ips., Descriptors: Veterans- Wisconsin- Belgium; Soldiers-Wisconsin- Belgium; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Soloman Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Villa Verde; World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Area; Combat; World War, 1939-1945- Bouganvilla;
Biography; Non-musical recording; Cassette recording. Abstract: Schmidt, a Belgium, Wis. native, discusses his World War II service as a paratrooper with the 1st Marine Parachute Regiment serving on various islands in the Pacific theater. He talks about his service deferment because he worked on a farm, enlisting in the Marines as soon as his brother was old enough to help on the family farm, and Marine training in California. Sent to New Caledonia, he was assigned to the 1st Marine Parachute Regiment and comments on the impracticality of parachute training in a jungle, injuries Marines sustained on practice jumps, and the decision to use parachute troops and raider battalions as regular infantrymen. He touches upon reinforcing the Marines on Guadalcanal, providing air strip security at Villa Verde, and landing from an LST on Bouganvilla. After a furlough, he was reassigned to the heavy weapons company of the 28th Regiment, 5th Division. Schmidt talks about training for the Iwo Jima landing, long wait aboard a landing craft, and traveling from island to island picking up Marines. He provides a detailed account of the Iwo Jima landing including shore bombardment, landing near Mt. Suribachi, conditions on the beach, digging fox holes, and instructions to hold fire so the Japanese would not know their positions. He describes seeing roads built on the beach, seeing the flag raising on Mt. Suribachi, helping to take a Japanese airstrip, and clearing Japanese equipment from caves. He mentions American rations of canned mutton and Japanese rations of rice and fish. Schmidt touches upon occupation duty in Japan, volunteering for the inactive Reserves, and call to duty for the Korean War which he was excused from. Schmidt received a Bronze Star for helping to evacuate wounded Marines, but does not discuss this incident during the interview. Notes: Named Person: Schmidt, Ralph. Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps. Division, 5th. Notes: Interviewed by Allen Buchholtz on March 8, 2003 in Belgium, Wisconsin. Bio/History: Schmidt enlisted in the Marine Corps on December 7, 1942. He served Pacific theater where he participated in several major Marine landings and “island-hopping” combat. General Info: Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Ozaukee County Veterans Book Project, Laurie Arendt, Project Coordinator. Other Titles: Schmidt, Volker. 1978. Midway und Guadalcanal. Zur Wende im Japanisch - Amerikanischen Seekrieg 1942/1943. Translated title: “To the Turn in the Japanese-American Naval Warfare” 154 pages. OCLC: 54777333. 


Seleo, Nicholas. 1944. “I Fought Japs in the Jungle.” Science Digest. July. Volume 16, Pages 75-80. Descriptors: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945/Personal narratives; Guadalcanal, Battle of, 1942-1943; World War, 1939- Personal narratives. ISSN: 0036-8296.


Shaw, James C., Rear Admiral. 1900s. Papers 1935-1979. Descriptors: 9 lin. ft. Savo Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942; The Hague, International Court of Justice; World War, 1939-1945, Naval Operations-Pacific Ocean; Burke, Arleigh A., 1901-1998; Magalhães, Fernão de, d. 1521; Perkins, Van Ostrand, 1913-1944; Shaw, James C., 1913-1988; Shaw, Jane; Bunker Hill (Ship); Connecticut Humane Society; Holch Brothers Corporation; United States Naval Academy; Naval War College (U.S.); Waldron (Ship); Cape Esperance, Battle of; Guadalcanal, Battle of, 1942; Santa Cruz, Battle of; Tassafaronga, Battle of. Abstract: Correspondence and writings, 1935-1979. The bulk of the collection consists of personal and official correspondence regarding his naval career. There are a complete of his naval orders, 1938-1957. Much of the collection contains his published and unpublished articles, short stories and novels, including drafts. Shaw was a consultant to the motion picture industry for “The Caine Mutiny” and “Midway” and there are film scripts for these. There is an unpublished story of his life and marriage entitled “Cross Swords Forever” by his wife Elisabeth Shaw. Photographs and Miscellany complete the papers. Notes: Bio/History: James C. Shaw, U.S. Naval officer, was born on June 21, 1913 and graduated from the U.S. Naval Academy in 1936. He served in the Navy until his retirement in 1958. Shaw died on December 4, 1988. General Info: Card catalog. Organization: Organized into six series. I. Biographical materials II. Correspondence III. Naval Orders IV. Speeches V. Writings VI. Miscellany chronological order. OCLC: 46368300.


Shaw, Paul; Williams, Charles and Weston Military History Group. 2000. Guadalcanal. Weston, MA: Weston Military History Group. Volume: 1 videocassette, Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: “Guadalcanal, the longest battle that the U.S. fought during WWII, was one in which both sides displayed questionable strategic command decisions and heroic bravery on the field. Professor Charles Williams, a navy veteran of WWII, and Marine Lieutenant Paul Shaw describe the role that their respective service branches played in the conflict.”-- Container. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Participants: Charles Williams, Paul Shaw. Lecture
originally presented on December 7, 2000. Responsibility: [a presentation of the Weston Military History Group in conjunction with the Weston Public Library]. OCLC: 47096074.


Shumway, R. Phil. 1981. Autobiography, 1981. Descriptors: 1 v. (152 leaves); World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Air pilots’ writings, American; Mormon Church-Bishops; Mormon Church- Stake presidents; Burton, Theodore M., 1907-1989; Brigham Young University- Faculty; Taylor (Ariz.); Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History, Military; Vanuatu; Orem (Utah); Manuscript. Abstract: Recalls his early life in Taylor, Arizona; service in the U.S. Army Air Corps, 1942-1945, in Guadalcanal and elsewhere, including descriptions of ocean landing near New Hebrides in April 1944 and experiences prior to his rescue nine days later; education and professional activities; family life; community service, including on the Alpine School Board; and church service, especially in Orem, Utah. Includes details of his release as stake president in meetings presided over by Elder Theodore M. Burton in October 1977. Notes: Genre/Form: Autobiographies. Notes: Bio/History: Professor of animal science at Brigham Young University, 1949-1985. Bishop and stake president in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, serving in Orem, Utah. OCLC: 82311683.

Sidoti, S. J. and RAAF Air Power Studies Centre. 1999. A History of Attacks on Airbases. Fairbairn RAAF Base: Air Power Studies Centre. Pages: 48. Descriptors: Air; bases; Security; measures; Case; studies; World; War, 1939-1945; Aerial; operations. Abstract: Contents: The early days, World War I- Airbase attacks during World War II: Poland; Netherlands, Belgium & Norway; German air attacks on France; Battle of Britain; British ground attacks on Axis airbases - North Africa 1940-43; Malta; Pearl Harbor; Solomons and Guadalcanal; Iwo Jima; Milne Bay; Poltava; Meiktila, Burma; Conclusions- Korea: Availability of airstrips for UN jet aircraft; UN counter air operations against the North Korean Air Force; Conclusions- The Arab-Israeli Wars: 1956, Sinai Campaign, the Suez Affair; 1967, the Six Day War; 1973, the October War (Ramadan or Yom Kippur War); Summary; Contents: Vietnam: Vulnerability of US airbases to North


Snyder, Anita Christine. 2005. Understanding and Writing the Historical Novella. Descriptors: 102 leaves; Historical fiction- Authorship; Historical fiction- Technique; Historical fiction; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943- Fiction; World War, 1939-1945-- Campaigns--Solomon Islands- Fiction; Thesis/dissertation; Manuscript. Abstract: “The first section is a scholarly discussion of historical fiction and the novella, particularly the issues and challenges facing the writer of such works. The second half of [the] thesis is an original novella that reflects the theories and issues that are discussed...in the first portion.” Notes: Includes bibliographical
Natural History of Guadalcanal

references (leaves 101-102). Department of English, Indiana University-Purdue University Indianapolis (IUPUI); Responsibility: Anita Christine Snyder. OCLC: 65547473.


“Solomon Islands Campaign: VI. Battle of Guadalcanal, 11-15 November 1942.” 1944. Volume: ADB298572, Descriptors: *Battles; Land Warfare; Military Forces (Foreign); Japan; History; Naval Operations; Officer Personnel; Army Operations; Military Commanders; Antiship Warfare; Naval Intelligence; Acific Ocean Islands; South Pacific Ocean. Notes: Approved for public release. Database: DTIC.

“Solomon Islands Campaign: VII. Battle of Tassafaronga, 30 November 1942. VIII. Japanese Evacuation of Guadalcanal, 29 January - 8 February 1943.” 1944. Volume: ADC070942, Descriptors: *Combat Effectiveness; *Air Land Battles; Land Warfare; Military Forces (Foreign); Japan; Fleets (Ships); Naval Operations; Naval Intelligence; Bombardment (Attack); Destroyers;
Natural History of Guadalcanal

Pacific Ocean Islands; South Pacific Ocean; Second World War. Notes: Unclassified. Database: DTIC.

“Solomon Islands Campaign: X. Operations in the New Georgia Area, 21 June - 5 August 1943.” Descriptors: *Military Operations; *Melanesia; *Second World War; Military Personnel; Military Facilities; Military Strategy; Coastal Regions; Camouflage; Japan; Military Planning; Battles; Airports; Runways; Channels; Islands. Notes: Approved for public release. DTIC ADB298778.

“Solomon Islands Campaign: IX. Bombardments of Munda and Vila-Stanmore. January-may 1943.” 1944. Jan 1944. Volume: ADB298503, Descriptors: *Battles; *Second World War; Military History; Navy; Naval Warfare; Officer Personnel; Military Publications; Bombardment (Attack); Pacific Ocean Islands. Database: DTIC.

“Solomon Islands Campaign: XI. Kolombangara and Vella Lavella, 6 August - 7 October 1943.” 1944. Volume: ADB299411, Descriptors: *Military History; *Second World War; Lessons Learned; Naval Operations; Pacific Ocean; Melanesia. Database: DTIC.


Stapleton, Mel, interviewee. McIntosh, James F. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 2002. Oral History Interview with Mel Stapleton 2000. Volume: Sound recording: 2 sound cassettes (ca. 75 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips. Videorecording: 1 videocassette (ca. 75 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips. Master sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 75 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips., Descriptors: Veterans-Wisconsin- Madison; Airmen- Wisconsin- North Lake; Stapleton, Mel; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii), Attack on, 1941; World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Area; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Midway, Battle of, 1942; World War, 1939-1945- Aerial operations, American; Combat; Cold War; Civil Defense- Wisconsin; Fall out shelters- Wisconsin- Design and construction; Nuclear bombshelters- Wisconsin- Design and construction; Videorecording; Cassette recording Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: The North Lake, Wis. native discusses his World War II service as a member of the Army Air Corps. He was stationed at Hickham Field (Hawaii) during the attack on Pearl Harbor. Stapleton talks about enlisting in the Air Corps because
his family had no money for college, receiving a letter from General “Hap” Armstrong permitting him to serve despite his poor eyesight, training at Chanute Field (Illinois), and attending radio school. Transferred to Hickam Field in 1940, he provides a detailed account of the Pearl Harbor attack. He describes hearing an explosion while walking to breakfast, looking outside, and seeing Japanese aircraft flying toward the airfield; running toward airplanes to get machine guns; and running to the armory for additional weapons. Stapleton recalls being knocked down by a bomb blast, taking cover in a bomb crater, and being wounded by shrapnel. He mentions being taken to an airplane hanger with the other wounded and the high number of casualties caused by the strafing. Transferred to the 431st Bomb Squadron as a radio operator in the Pacific theater, he comments on searching for the Japanese fleet in the Pacific. He talks about being on Midway Island when the Japanese attacked, transfer to the British Fiji Islands, and working with Australian troops. Stationed at Guadalcanal, Stapleton comments on helping to defend Bougainville, flying on several missions while under heavy Japanese fire, and the reaction of his unit’s chaplain to seeing bare breasted women on the Solomon Islands. He touches upon rest and relaxation in New Zealand, returning to the United States in 1943, gambling on the way home, and marriage while on leave. Reassigned to stateside duty, he touches upon his work on search and rescue of training planes in Scott’s Bluff (Nebraska), becoming a radio instructor, retiring after 25 years in the service, and working for the State of Wisconsin during the Cold War showing civilians how to build bomb shelters. Notes: Named Corp: United States. Army Air Forces. Bomb Squadron, 431st. Notes: Bio/History: Stapleton (1919- ) served with the Army Air Corps during World War II. While at Pearl Harbor, he was a member of the 50th Reconnaissance Squadron and joined the 431st Bomb Squadron in the Pacific. He retired from the Air Force after 25 years. Interviewed by James F. McIntosh on October 30, 2000 in Madison, Wisconsin. General Info: Access to videorecording is restricted: 48-hours advance notification required. Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. System Info: VHS-C format. OCLC: 60780539.

State Department Required to Report on the use of Child Soldiers. Center for Defense Information. April 10, 2003. no. July 2007, Abstract: Solomon Islands - In 2000, Amnesty International reported that Guadalcanalese militants included a number of child soldiers. UN human rights officials confirmed the use of child soldiers by both Guadalcanalese and Malaitan militants. Several hundred children (generally boys) under the age of 18 were active combatants or assisted in militants’ camps. With the decrease in fighting, dozens of these underage militants remained in quasi-criminal gangs affiliated with their former militant commanders. URL: http://www.cdi.org/document/search/displaydoc.cfm?DocumentID=898&StartRow=11&ListRows=10&appendURL=&Orderby=Enabled&Program=&Date_From=&Date_To=01/21/2005&Keywords=guadalcanal&ContentType=&Author=../../friendlyversion/printversion.cfm?documentID=898


1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands. Notes: American Heritage; Article; Source Information: Oct/Nov85, Vol. 36 Issue 6, p49; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: Marines; Subject Term: Military art & science; Subject Term: New Zealand- History- 1918-1945; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Ocean; Subject Term: World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations, American; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 7 pages; Illustrations: 1 map, 3bw; Document Type: Article. Abstract: Presents recollections from a former Marine of the grim defense of Guadalcanal in 1942. How for four months, his battalion was on the front line- one of the longest stretches without relief in any modern war; Why the American arrival was so important to the New Zealanders. ISSN: 0002-8738.


Stewart, Lyle G. and Saints at War. 1939-1999. Papers, Ca. 1939-1999. Descriptors: 1 folder (3 p.); World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Philippines; World War, 1939-1945- Religious aspects- Mormon Church; Manuscript. Abstract: Handwritten Memoir, Original Church Meeting Program, Photocopied Military Documents. A short handwritten memoir and a letter written on the back of a program from a church meeting tell some of the experiences and feelings of Stewart as he served in the Army. He speaks of being in a mine clearing role in his company, and of his involvement campaigns on the Philippines, Guadalcanal, and in being on shore guard after the bombings at Pearl Harbor. Also included are a couple of military documents. Notes: Genre/Form: Memoirs. Photographs. Notes: Bio/History: Stewart served as a Private First Class in the 213th Field Artillery Battalion of the U.S. Army Pacific Theater of World War II. General Info: Open for research. Items were donated by Lyle G. Stewart to the Saints At War Project in 1999. OCLC: 55632704.

Stroup, Leora Belle. 1944-1948. Leora Belle Stroup Photograph Collection. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Japan- Iwo Jima- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Guam- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Philippines- Manilla- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Philippines- Los African Americans- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Philippines- Corregidor Island- Photographs; Nurses- Korea- Photographs; Plants- Islands of the Pacific- Photographs; Animals- Islands of the Pacific- Photographs; Photograph; Picture. Abstract: Contains the following types of materials: photographs. Covers the following war: World War II (WWII). Contains photographs of the following military unit: Army Nurse Corps. General description of the collection: The Leora Belle Stroup photograph collection was donated by Olive Hay, whose relationship is unknown. There are many Signal Corps and U.S. Marine Corps stock photographs for WWII, showing Iwo Jima, Guam, Okinawa, the Philippines, especially Manilla, Los Negros; Marcus Islands, Guadalcanal, Corregidor, and Japan; also photos she took or received from other nurses of those sites. A collection of photos of her service while stationed at Pusan, Korea, following the war. She was especially interested in the flora and farms of the regions where she served as well as the natives and their culture. There are many photos showing those aspects of the islands and of Pusan and Inchon, Korea. Photos of nurses and their activities from doing laundry, the huts/barracks, hospital duties, social life and sightseeing. It is a very interesting collection showing the female side of
Army life during and just after WWII. Notes: 1 box (841 photographs); Named Person: Stroup, Leora Belle- Photograph collections. Named Corp: United States. Army Nurse Corps- Photographs. United States. Army- Military life- Photographs. United States. Army- Nurses- Photographs. Notes: Bio/History: Leora Belle Stroup was a United States (U.S.) Army nurse who served in the Pacific Islands near the end of WWII. General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute/ Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Collection is not organized or cataloged at the item level. It is cursorily organized by places as was noted on the envelopes as we received them. Unfortunately most of the photos are not annotated. There are no card indices nor is there an index to the box. Other Titles: Photograph collection of Leon Belle Stroup; Stroup photograph collection; Leora Belle Stroup collection; Stroup collection; OCLC: 48227088.


Sweeney, John B. 2004. “Battle of Bloody Ridge.” Marine Corps Gazette. 09. Volume 88, Issue 9; Pages 93-96. Descriptors: Armed Forces; Military art & science; War; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Solomon Islands; United States. Notes: Marine Corps Gazette; Article; Source Information: September 2004, Vol. 88 Issue 9, p93; Subject Term: Armed Forces; Subject Term: Military art & science; Subject Term: WAR; Geographic Subject: Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Geographic Subject: United States; Number of Pages: 4 pages; Illustrations: 3 color; Document Type: Article. Abstract: Focuses on the U.S. Armed Forces’ defense of Henderson Field on Guadalcanal in Solomon Islands during the summer and autumn of 1942. Importance of the victory for the U.S. in establishing a foothold on the island; Defensive strategies; Number of casualties. Focuses on the U.S. Armed Forces’ defense of Henderson Field on Guadalcanal in Solomon Islands during the summer and autumn of 1942. Importance of the victory for the U.S. in establishing a foothold on the island; Defensive strategies; Number of casualties. ISSN: 0025-3170.

Tell it to the Marines: A Proposal to Rename Guadalcanal’s Airport Doesn’t Fly. (History Now) 2003. American Heritage. Oct 2003. Volume 54, Issue 5, Pages 11. Abstract: Times Aetough in the Solomon Islands. With few natural resources, the islands depend on tourism, but their remoteness, often antiquated facilities, and inhospitable environment can make them a tough sell. The government hopes its renovation and expansion of the airport at Honiara (the nation’s capital, on the island of Guadalcanal) will attract more tourists, and earlier this year a Japanese consulting firm supervising the improvement had a helpful suggestion: Give the airport, which has been called Henderson Field since U.S. Marines captured it from Japan in 1942, a more Japanese-friendly name: Chrysanthemum Field. The idea must have seemed reasonable at the time. The Japanese paid most of the tab for improving the airport, so why shouldn’t they rename it? In Japan the chrysanthemum symbolizes health and happiness. What could be wrong with that? Plenty. Never mind that Emperor Hirohito occupied what is known as the Chrysanthemum Throne or that a massed Kamikaze attack in World War II was known as a kikusui, or “floating chrysanthemum.” The idea that Maj. Lofton Henderson, the first American pilot to die in the Battle of Midway, might have his name removed from the field to attract a few more Japanese tourists did not sit well at all with Henderson’s fellow Marines—or even with the residents of Honiara. The idea was quickly withdrawn, and the Solomons government learned a lesson about what happens when you listen to consultants. Beyond that, it also learned the importance of choosing one’s enemies: If you have to fight someone, try not to make it the U.S. Marines. While we’re on the subject of Guadalcanal, this is as good a time as any to correct an article that American Heritage published in 1993. In that piece, Thomas Fleming quoted from a booklet titled Walks on Guadalcanal, whose cheerful tone mixed uneasily with its long and detailed cautions about the island’s potential dangers (scorpions, crocodiles, sudden cliffs, and hostile locals, to name but a few). Fleming imagined the booklet’s author, J. L. O. Tedder, as a struggling freelancer who had accepted the assignment for want of other work and was determined to make the best of it. We have since learned that Tedder was a longtime British official in the Solomons as well as a distinguished naturalist. Since his retirement, he has been active in environmental organizations and as a farmer in his native Australia. We can only wish him more success in these pursuits than he had in attracting hikers to Guadalcanal.

Database: History Resource Center.

Thacker, James R. and Saints at War. 1997. Memoir, 1997 February 16. Descriptors: 1 folder (8 p.); World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of; Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii), Attack on, 1941; World War, 1939-1945- Engineering and construction; Manuscript. Abstract: Thacker enlisted in the Army in 1941, choosing to be stationed in Hawaii, and was there the day Pearl Harbor was bombed. He operated a bulldozer throughout the Pacific, bulldozing roads for the infantry and graves for the enemy dead. He was present at Pearl Harbor and Guadalcanal during combat, and was around smaller skirmishes several other times. His experiences are interesting and he includes various pictures in this computer generated memoir. Notes: Genre/Form: Memoirs. Photographs. Notes: Bio/History:
Thacker served as a heavy equipment operator in the 65th Engineers Battalion of U.S. Army Pacific Theater during World War II from 1941-1945 achieving the rank of Sergeant. General Info: Open for research. Items donated were kept by creator until donation to “Saints at War.” OCLC: 55632707.


Natural History of Guadalcanal

Drama; Medal of Honor- Drama; Vietnam War, 1961-1975- Drama; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943- Drama; Jones, James, 1921-1977- Film and video adaptations; War films; Motion picture film collections; Film adaptations; Video recordings for the hearing impaired; Feature films; Videorecording; DVD video; Videodisc. Abstract: A determined young man becomes the first African American to become a United States Navy master diver; a lieutenant is assigned to review the background of a woman captain who is posthumously nominated for a medal of honor; a group of young soldiers training for war in Vietnam begin to question authority and their own involvement in combat; an army platoon attempts to capture the Japanese-controlled island of Guadalcanal in the Pacific Ocean during World War II. Men of honor (2000), produced by Bill Badalato, Robert Teitel; directed by George Tillman Jr. written by Scott Marshall Smith-Courage under fire (1996), produced by John Davis, David T. Friendly, Joseph Singer; directed by Edward Zwick; written by Patrick Sheane Duncan- Tigerland (2000), produced by Beau Flynn, Steven Haft, Arnon Milchan; directed by Joel Schumacher; written by Ross Klavan, Michael McGruther- The thin red line (1998), produced by Robert Michael Geisler, Grant Hill, John Roberdeau; written and directed by Terrence Malick. Notes: System Info: DVDs. Notes: The thin red line based on the novel by James Jones. Participants: Various. Audience: MPAA rating: Not rated. General Info: For private home use only. Other Titles: Soldiers stories. ISBN: 2234344; OCLC: 123094925.

Time in Hell Guadalcanal and Bougainville. 1992. National Archives. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Area- Pictorial works; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943- Pictorial works; Picture. Abstract: Maps, photographs, and documents from the United States National Archives pertaining to the battles of Guadalcanal and Bougainville during World War II. Notes: 1 poster; Geographic: Bougainville Island (Papua New Guinea), Battle of, 1943- Pictorial works. OCLC: 32271388.


Tourtellot, Arthur Bemon; Bush, Jack; Van Voorhis, Westbrook; Time and Madacy Entertainment Group. 1998. Crusade in the Pacific. 3, Guadalcanal, America’s First Offensive; War in the North, the Aleutians. St. Laurent, Quebec: Distributed by Madacy Entertainment Group. Volume: 1 videocassette (ca. 30 min.), Descriptors: Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Alaska- Aleutian Islands; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns-Pacific Area; Documentary films; Historical films; Aleutian Islands (Alaska)- History; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: This documentary covers the saga of World War II in the Pacific theatre, utilizing film footage shot by cameramen on both sides of the War. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Tape 3 of 10. Length on container: [ca. 1 hr.]. Videocassette release of the 1951 “March of time” television series by Time, inc. Film sources: U.S. Department of Defense, Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps, Coast Guard, Australian Government


Tristram, John. Wilson, I. James. Amadio, Nadine; Juniper Films; Special Broadcasting Service (Australia); Discovery Channel; Dandelion Distribution and Films for the Humanities. 1995. John Frum and the Big Death WWII and the Pacific Islanders. Princeton, NJ: Films for the Humanities & Sciences. Volume: 1 videocassette (28 min.), Descriptors: Cargo cults; World War, 1939-1945- Oceania; Tanna Island (Vanuatu); Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Oceania- Legends; LC: DU760; Dewey: 299.9; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Tells of some of the effects of World War II on Pacific island people and environment: the creation of the John Frum cult after a pilot visited Tanna Island and was mistaken for a god, a legend begun after the crash of a B-17 off Guadalcanal, and military equipment left to rust on the islands and in the sea. Notes: System Info: VHS. Responsibility: produced by Juniper Films for SBS TV in association with the Discovery Channel and Dandelion Distribution Limited; produced & directed, John Tristram, I. James Wilson; scriptwriter, Nadine Amadio. Cinematographers, Michael Dillon, Garry Maurder, Joel Peterson; composer, Ian Laurence; narrators, Guy Blackmore, Peter Caroll, Vic Rooney, Derani Scarr, Lopeti Vulaono, Hugh Wade, Veitinia Waquabaca; editors, Bill Aiers, Imelda Cooney, James Wilson. OCLC: 33115020; 57487229.


Turnbull, Jane. 2002. “Solomon Islands: Blending Traditional Power and Modern Structures in the State.” Public Administration and Development. Wiley InterScience: 8 May 2002. Volume 22, Issue 2, Pages 191 - 201. Abstract: By mid-2001, the Solomon Islands government was on the edge of bankruptcy after two years of unrest on Guadalcanal. Solomon Islanders’ hopes that the national government can improve their living standards have been dashed, only 23 years after British colonial rule ended on these South-West Pacific islands. The reasons for the state’s limited capacity to facilitate development extend much further than the financial crisis, as a comparison between power relations typically institutionalized in Western liberal democratic states and those
institutionalized in the Solomons state shows. The Solomons state is a syncretism of traditional political practices and modern structures. Many of these traditional practices are impeding development. Recent neo-liberal reforms championed by the previous government, the Asian Development Bank and other aid agencies did little to address these practices and were terminated in the unrest in 2000. If the state is to improve the living standards of ordinary Solomon Islanders, changes in structure, such as the state governments being established following the Townsville Peace Agreement, are not the sole answer. There also need to be changes in the political practices of both officials and politicians at national and local level.


Natural History of Guadalcanal

1945- Naval operations, Japanese; World War, 1939-1945- Naval operations- Submarine; World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Ocean; Japan. Kaigun; Japan- History, Military- 20th century; Government publication; National government publication. OCLC: 12758089.


United States. Army. Services of Supply. Army Orientation Course; United States; Bureau of Naval Personnel and Educational Services Section.. 1942. “Newsmap. Monday October 26, 1942: Week of October 16 to October 23.” Pentagon Bldg., Washington, D.C; Washington, D.C: The Course; Navy distribution by Educational Services Section, BuPers, Navy Dept. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Maps; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands-Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; War posters, American; Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands). Notes: Description: 4 maps on 1 sheet; some col.; sheet 90 x 120 cm. Notes: Maps: Military activities across the globe during the week; Southwest Pacific; Stalingrad. Inset maps: Guadalcanal Island. War fronts: Solomons, New Guinea, Aleutians, Russia, Mediterranean, Yugoslavia, Western Europe. Photographs: Airport on Guadalcanal Island; Somewhere in India; Freight cars with wings; Supplies for Russia. On verso: Fox holes are life...


Natural History of Guadalcanal

Lunga Point: 30 November, 1942; Responsibility: Preliminary Design Section, Bureau of Ships, Navy Department. OCLC: 82909315.


United States. Office of Naval Intelligence. Publications Branch. 1943. Battle of Cape Esperance, 11 October 1942; Battle of Santa Cruz Islands 26 October 1942: Solomon Islands Campaign IV and V. [Washington, D.C.]: Publications Branch, Office of Naval Intelligence, United States Navy. Monograph v, 66 pages: ill., maps (some folded); 25 cm. Descriptors: Combat narratives; Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943.; World War, 1939-1945 - Campaigns - Solomon Islands - Guadalcanal Island.; World War, 1939-1945 - Naval operations,

http://www.awm.gov.au


United States; Army and American Division. 1940-1988. Infantry - American Division Papers, 1940-1988. Descriptors: 10 boxes. World War, 1939-1945- Veterans- Correspondence; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; My Lai Massacre, Vietnam, 1968; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- New Caledonia; United States. Army. American Division- Archives; United States. Army. American Division- Insignia; United States. Army. American Division- History. Abstract: Contains the following types of materials: correspondence, memoirs, unit histories, texts of speeches, clippings, newspapers, magazines, reports, studies, bookss, manuals, leaflets, brochures, diary, journal, maps, charts, oral histories, briefings, and ephemera. Contains information pertaining to the following wars and time periods: World War II (WWII), Vietnam War. Contains information pertaining to the following military units and organizations: 21st Reconnaissance Troop; 101st Quartermaster Regiment; 132nd Infantry Regiment; Americal Division; Task Force 6814. General description of the collection: The Infantry - Americal Division papers include papers dealing with the American Division from WWII through Vietnam and between veterans following both wars. The bulk of the papers is the personal correspondence soldiers of WWII and material relating to the My Lai incident during the Vietnam War. One box contains drawings of the distinctive insignia of each unit of the division and a brief history of each unit. Notes: General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute, Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Other Titles: Papers of the Americal Division. OCLC: 47202384.


United States; Congress; House and Committee on Naval Affairs. 1943. Report of Subcommittee of House Naval Affairs Committee Appointed to Investigate the Alleged Misconduct of Merchant Seamen at Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. Washington: U.S. G.P.O. Descriptors: 197-203; Merchant mariners- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal Island; Military discipline- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal Island; Government publication; National government publication; Microfiche (mfc). Abstract: Committee Serial No. 30. Notes: References: Indexed in CIS US Congressional Committee Hearings Index Part IV; Notes: “[pub. 1943.]” Microfiche Note: Committee Print begins on microfiche No. 3 of 13. Record is based on bibliographic data in CIS US Congressional Committee Hearings Index. Reuse except for individual research requires license from Congressional Information Service, Inc. Reproduction: Microfiche. [Westport, Conn.]:


United States; Marine Corps and Photographic Section. 1943. Guadalcanal 1942. Big Picture National Film and Video. Volume: 1 videocassette (40 min.); sound, b&w; 1/2 in., Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Documentary films; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: A documentary of U.S. Marine campaigns in the South Pacific during World War II. Notes: System Info: VHS format; Responsibility: Photographed by the Marine Corps Photographic Section. OCLC: 35590749.


United States and Navy Dept. 1994. To the Shores of Iwo Jima-Guadalcanal. St.-Laurent, Quebec, Canada: Madacy Music Group. Volume: 2 videocassettes (ca. 90 min.), Descriptors: Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Tarawa, Battle of, Kiribati, 1943; Dewey: 940.54; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Title from cassettes label. First work originally produced as motion picture in 1945 by U.S. Navy Dept. Other Titles: Marines at Tarawa, return to Guam. OCLC: 40233417.

United States and Navy Dept. 1994. To the Shores of Iwo Jima. Guadalcanal. St.-Laurent, Quebec, Canada: Madacy Music Group. Volume: 1 videocassette (ca. 51 min.), Descriptors: Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; LC: D767.99I9; Videorecording; Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Presents a dramatic documentary account of the American invasion of Iwo Jima. Shows ship bombardment, rocket fire, air bombing, the use of flamethrowers, and scenes of individuals and groups in combat. Notes: System Info: VHS. Notes: Title from cassette label. First work originally produced as motion picture in 1945 by U.S. Navy Dept. Other Titles: Guadalcanal; Second work also released as; This is Guadalcanal. OCLC: 36212234.


Valenzi, Kathleen. D. 1995. “Scouting Guadalcanal: A 19 Year Old from New York Joined the Marines to See the World- What he saw was a small Pacific Island Under Fire that would Quickly Test His Mettle.” Military History. August 1995. Pages 54-60. Abstract: An interview with Michael C. Capraro. “When we went ashore at Guadalcanal, it was like going back to school. All we had by way of maps were barely legible aerial photographs taken from a vertical angle. The fields showed up as white, and the jungle showed up as black. But you had no feeling of topography- the third dimension. Being from an industrial town, I had no background in dense, jungle terrain, but suddenly I had to move in the forest quietly, read the stars and other signs to find my location. I remember one time, we’d been patrolling all day, and every once in a while, we’d stop and take a cigarette break around the smoking lamp. It was getting dark, and the company commander pulled me aside and said, “Cappy, where the Hell are we?” I took the map and said, “Right here, sir.” “How the Hell do you know that?” he asked. I bent over and picked up one of the cigarette butts we’d left on the ground earlier that day. It was as simple as that. I had followed the cigarette butts back.” ISSN: 0889-7328.


Veltman, Ronald H.,enlisted sailor. 1900s. Papers 1942-1995. Descriptors: 10 items. Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945--Naval Operations; Doolittle, James, 1896-; Veltman, Ronald; Hornet (Ship). Abstract: Subject files on
USS Hornet (CV-8), including a ship’s history, list of ship’s company, Air Group 8, Commander’s Report, October 26, 1942, during the Battle of Santa Cruz; Citations; Photograph of General James Doolittle; Newspaper Clippings, April 22-23 1943; Tape recording, 1942-1995. Notes: Bio/History: Ronald H. Veltman was a pharmacist’s mate in USS Hornet (CV-8) during World War II. General Info: Card catalog. OCLC: 46467759.


Voigt, Dean S. interviewee. Van Ells, Mark D. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 1995. Oral History Interview Dean S. Voight 1995. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Veterans- Wisconsin- Medford; Soldiers- Illinois- Chicago; Combat; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Midway, Battle of, 1942; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; World War, 1939-1945- Battle casualties; War- Psychological aspects; Cassette recording. Abstract: Voight, a Medford, Wis. veteran, discusses his World War II service with Carlton’s Raiders, the 2nd Marine Raider Battalion, in the Pacific theater. He talks about enlisting in anger over the attack on Pearl Harbor, decision to join the Marine Corps, boot camp at San Diego, and joining Carlton’s Raiders. Voight describes the role of Raider battalions, learning hand to hand combat techniques, and deployment overseas. He describes the major campaigns in which he was involved including the Makin Island Raid, Guadalcanal, Midway, and Iwo Jima. Voight touches upon drinking while in the service including the different ways soldiers made their own alcoholic beverages with items they found at bases. He provides an interesting discussion on the family-like connection between men in the Raider Battalion and the way this relationship was continued after the war. He evaluates the change in this once the Raider Battalions were disbanded and the members joined Marine Divisions. Voight details the battle of Iwo Jima where he served as a platoon sergeant. His account includes the problems landing on the beach, being wounded and returning to combat, and being evacuated to Guam after receiving a second wound. He talks about depression related to his wound, difficulty finding work after the war, attempts to get a higher disability payment, and receiving help from the AmVets to get a thirty percent disability payment. Notes: Sound recording 7/8 ips; Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps. Marine Raider Battalion, 2nd. United States. Marine Corps- Military life. United States. Marine Corps. Division, 5th. Notes: Bio/History: Voight (b. June 19, 1922) served in the Pacific theater of operations with the Marine Raiders and the 5th Marine Division. He was wounded in the fighting for Iwo Jima, and discharged from service in 1946 after achieving the rank of sergeant. Interviewed by Mark D. Van Ells on October 30, 1995 in Wisconsin. General Info: Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. OCLC: 56883361.


Wall, Henry. 1973. Henry Wall Oral History Interview. Volume: 2 sound cassettes (180 min.). Descriptors: Crime- Texas, West; Cowboys- New Mexico; Dowsing; Depressions- 1929; Livestock- Texas, West; Rodeos; World War, 1914-1918- France; Guadalcanal Island (Soloman Islands), Battle of, 1942-1948; Cattle- Government policy- United States; Law enforcement- Texas, West; Train robberies- Texas- Temple; Cowboys- Texas, West; Non-musical recording; Cassette

Wallace, Walton M., interviewee. McIntosh, James F. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 1999. Oral History Interview with Walton M. Wallace 1999. Volume: Sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 45 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips. Videorecording: 1 videocassette (ca. 45 min.); sd., col. 1/2 in. Master sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 45 min.); analog, 1 7/8 ips., Descriptors: Veterans- Madison; Soldiers- Wisconsin- Madison; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Battle casualties; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Japan- Okinawa; Combat; Wallace, Walton M., 1922-; Videorecording; Cassette recording Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: Wallace, a Madison, Wis. native, discusses his World War II service with the Marines in the Pacific. He talks about enlisting in the Marines, boot camp at Camp Elliott (California), training to fire a “pack howitzer,” and transfer to Pago Pago Island (America Samoa) as a defense battalion for the island. Wallace describes the fighting at Guadalcanal Island, night raids by a plane nicknamed “Washing Wachine Charlie,” being hit with shrapnel and evacuated to New Hebrides Island, and returning to his unit at Saipan. After being reassigned to the 5th Marine Division, he details the landing at Iwo Jima, problems with the beach terrain, lack of cover for troops on the island, and feeling when they received hot food at the front. Wallace talks about rest and relaxation in Hawaii including working as a bartender at the officer’s club, giving radio reports, and the food in Hawaii. Volunteering to fight on Okinawa, Wallace comments on seeing people he served with at Guadalcanal, reassignment to artillery, brief stay at Sasebo (Japan), and boat ride home. He touches upon use of the GI Bill and membership in the Disabled American Veterans. Notes: Named Corp: United States. Marine Corps. Division, 5th. United States. Marine Corps- Military life. Notes: Bio/History: Wallace (1922- ) served with the 2nd and 5th Marines in the Pacific theater of World War II. He participated in several island invasions and returned to Madison after the war. Interviewed by James F. McIntosh on October 13, 1999 in Madison, Wis. General Info: Access to videorecording is restricted: 48-hours advance notification required. Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. System Info: VHS-C format. OCLC: 61154799.

Walsh, Louis A. 1942-1961. Louis A. Walsh, Jr. Photograph Collection. Descriptors: World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Area- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Equipment and supply-Photographs; M5 light tank- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands-Guadalcanal- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Fiji- Photographs; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- New Caledonia; Photograph; Picture. Abstract: Contains the following types of materials: photographs, artwork. Covers the following war: World War II (WWII). General description of the collection: The Louis A. Walsh, Jr. photograph collection mostly represent general Walsh’s WWII service in the Pacific Islands. A large album contains the bulk of the images. They show mule harness and pack for carrying the ligh machine guns and equipments; various views of the M-5 light tank; New Caledonia Island and scenery, equipment and an airfield thereon; sites on the Fiji Islands; Guadalcanal and gun emplacements, dugouts, captured Japanese material and scenery and captured Japanese weapons. The remainder of the photographs deal with his tenure at the U.S. Army Infantry Center, Fort Benning, Georgia, and the construction of the large “follow me” infantryman monument. Notes: 1 box (394 photographs, 22 watercolor
renderings of airborne shoulder patches and distinctive insignia); Named Person: Walsh, Louis A., 1911-- Photograph collections. Named Corp: United States. Army- Transportation- Photographs. Geographic: Japan- Armed Forces- Equipment- Photographs. Notes: Bio/History: Louis A. Walsh, Jr. was born in 1911. He graduated from the United States (U.S.) Military Academy in 1934 and received his commission in the infantry. He attended Parachute School in 1941 and held a number of parachute command and staff assignments. He took part in the battle of Guadalcanal. After this, he activated and commanded the 517th Parachute Infantry Regiment of the 17th Airborne Division. Near the end of the war, he jumped in the Tagaytay Ridge operations in the Philippines. From 1959-1961 he served as deputy commanding general and then assistant commandant of the Infantry School at Fort Benning, Georgia; he served with the Central Intelligence Agency (162-1966). General Walsh retired from the military service in 1966. Report: RG559; General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute, Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Collection is not organized or cataloged at the item level. There are no card indices nor is there an inventory to the box. Other Titles: Photograph collection of Louis A. Walsh, Jr; Walsh photograph collection; Louis A. Walsh, Jr. collection; Walsh collection. OCLC: 48224848.


Natural History of Guadalcanal


Weaver, Charles W., Newspaper reporter. 1900s. Papers 1942-1971. Descriptors: 5 items 1/2 box. World War, 1939-1945-Campaigns-Pacific Ocean; Ghormley, Robert L., 1883-1958;
Turner, Richard K., 1885-1961; Guadalcanal Island (Solomon Islands) Battle of, 1942-43.


Wetterhahn, Ralph. 2007. “Mystery on Guadalcanal.” Air & Space Smithsonian. Volume 21, Issue 5; Pages 32-37. Descriptors: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; WILDCAT (Fighter plane); Southerland, James J; TAYLAN, Justin; Solomon Islands. Notes: Air & Space Smithsonian; Article; Source Information: December 2006/January 2007, Vol. 21 Issue 5, p32; Subject Term: Guadalcanal Island, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; Subject Term: WILDCAT (Fighter plane); Subject Term: Southerland, James J. Subject Term: Taylan, Justin; Geographic Subject: Solomon Islands; Number of Pages: 6 pages; Illustrations: 9 color; Document Type: Article. Abstract: The article focuses on the discovery of the wreckage of the Grumman F4F Wildcat aircraft flown by Lieutenant James J. Southerland II by preservationist Justin Taylan in Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands. The Wildcat is believed to be the first U.S. Navy aircraft to shoot down an enemy in the Battle of Guadalcanal in August 1942. The section of the aircraft’s linkage belt was attached and the shell case had been dented indicating that it had not been fired. ISSN: 0886-2257.


Wiens, Harry. 1992. My Own Little Corner-- of the War: A Look Back-- After 50 Years, to Guadalcanal. California: H. Wiens. Descriptors: 157 leaves, 8 leaves of plates; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands), Battle of, 1942-1943- Personal narratives, American; World War, 1939-1945-
Biography; Soldiers- United States- Biography; Wiens, Harry; United States. Army- Biography; North Dakota- Biography; Biography. Notes: Other Titles: Look back-- after 50 years, to Guadalcanal; Responsibility: Harry Wiens. OCLC: 36960442; 37543546


Natural History of Guadalcanal

Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Barton (Destroyer: DD-599). Notes: Cover title. Includes bibliographical references. Other Titles: USS Barton (DD-599) in World War Two; United States Ship Barton (DD-599); Responsibility: E. Andrew Wilde, Jr., editor. OCLC: 52570678.


Wilhite, Billy Junior and Saints at War. 1995. Memoir, Ca. 1995. Descriptors: 1 folder (42 p.) + 2 photocopied photographs. World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Tweed, George R; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)- History, Military; Guam- History- Japanese occupation, 1941-1944; Pearl Harbor (Hawaii); New Zealand; Kodiak Island (Alaska); Manuscript. Abstract: Includes highly detailed description of Wilhite’s naval training and service; the service record and history of the USS McCall; purposes and functions of destroyer vessels; the aftermath of the attack on Pearl Harbor; the rescue of navy radioman George Ray Tweed from Guam; Wilhite’s marriage, family and LDS religious beliefs; naval combat1
Natural History of Guadalcanal

including participation at Guadalcanal and the bombardment of Iwo Jima; duty in Kodiak, Alaska; and liberty in New Zealand. Includes two photocopied photographs of Wilhite during World War II. Notes: Genre/Form: Memoirs. Notes: Bio/History: Served in the US Navy during World War II from 1940-1946 aboard the destroyer USS McCall DD-400. Wilhite was assigned as an electricians mate and achieved the rank of Chief Electricians Mate. General Info: Items were donated by creator, Billy Junior Wilhite, to the Saints At War Project in 2001. OCLC: 51605763.


Doctrine; *Military Tactics; *Artillery; Military Personnel; Students; Theses; Targets; Control Centers; Case Studies; Army; Military Commanders; Fire Control Systems; Corps Level Organizations; Doctrine. Abstract: This thesis examines the evolution of artillery tactics in World War II using General J. Lawton Collins US VII Corps as a case study. This study first reviews artillery doctrine and tactics during World War I and during the 1920s and 1930s, in which time future leaders like General Collins were military students. In 1943, General Collins commanded an infantry division on Guadalcanal where he was one of the first American generals to implement the Army’s new doctrine of fire direction centers (FDCs) and massed fires using time on targets (TOTs). Collins then was selected to command the US VII Corps for the invasion of Normandy and the subsequent breakout during OPERATION COBRA. From Normandy to the end of the war, Collins continued to hone his use of artillery based on his experience during the eleven month campaign in Northwest Europe, contributing to his reputation as the best corps commander in World War II. This study looks at Army doctrine in 1944 to judge Collins artillery tactics and concludes that he used established doctrine and that his tactics are the foundation for today’s artillery tactics. Notes: Master’s thesis, 2 Aug 95-7 Jun 96; Approved for Public Release. Database: DTIC and NTIS. URL: http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA312682

Wilson, David Kirkpatrick; Pyle, Cabot Pollard and Roberts, Kenneth L. 2006. Oral History Interview with David K. Wilson, 2006 September 13, Excerpt 02. Nashville, Tn.: Nashville Public Library. Descriptors: Wilson; David Kirkpatrick; 1919--; Interviews; United States. Navy. Supply Corps; Business; Enterprise; Military History; World War II; Businesspeople; Tennessee; Nashville; Civic leaders; Veterans; World War; 1939-1945; Intrenchments; Management; Guadalcanal; Battle of; Solomon Islands; 1942-1943; Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands); Description and travel. Abstract: An excerpt from an oral history interview with Nashville business and civic leader David Kirkpatrick “Pat” Wilson, conducted on 13 September 2006 by Cabot Pyle and Kenneth L. Roberts as part of the Nashville Public Library’s Nashville Business Leaders Oral History Project: The Turner Interviews. Wilson discusses his service in the U.S. Navy Supply Corps during World War II and the management lessons he learned while in the service. He also discusses what it was like being at Guadalcanal, including having to spend the evenings in foxholes. The complete interview, as well as an index, is available in the repository. Notes: Genre/Form: Sound- Oral histories. General Info: U.S. and international copyright laws protect this digital content, which is provided for educational purposes only and may not be downloaded, reproduced, or distributed for any other purpose without written permission. Please contact the Special Collections Division of the Nashville Public Library, 615 Church Street, Nashville, Tennessee, 37219. Source of Data: Excerpted from: NBLWilsonD digital recording converted from wav to mp3 format in 2006. OCLC: 82539294.

Wilson, Steven. September 11, 2006. “Long Lance.” Military.com. Abstract: In 1942 few Americans had ever heard of Guadalcanal, The Slot, the Solomon Islands, or one unassuming island called Savo that found itself squeezed between the aforementioned Guadalcanal (off the shoulder of Cape Esperance), and Florida Island. The only real asset these steaming jungle-bound lumps of earth offered was either their strategic position or the fact that airfields could be, or had been, carved from their inhospitable surface. Where there is land, of course, there are Marines and Soldiers, but where there are islands, there must naturally come sailors and ships. It was all very simple; the Japanese held the Solomons and the Americans wanted them, starting with the Canal. See the site, accessed July 5, 2007: http://www.military.com/features/0,15240,113172,00.html

cassette (ca. 45 min.): analog, 1 7/8 ips. Videorecording: 1 videocassette (ca. 45 min.): sd., col. 1/2 in. Master sound recording: 1 sound cassette (ca. 45 min.): analog, 1 7/8 ips., Descriptors: Veterans- Wisconsin- Madison; Soldiers- Wisconsin- Milwaukee; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Pacific Area; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands; Iwo Jima, Battle of, Japan, 1945; Winner, Robert W., 1922-; Videorecording; Cassette recording Videocassette; VHS tape. Abstract: The Marshfield, Wis. native discusses his World War II service as a paratrooper and mortarman with the 5th Marine Division and his experiences with the Army and Navy Reserves. Winner relates joining the Marine Raiders of the 2nd Regiment, 2nd Division and staging for the Guadalcanal campaign. He details preparation for the Bougainville Campaign and his unit’s raid on Choiseul Island. He describes his reassignment to the mortar section including training in Hawaii and Saipan, preparing for the Iwo Jima campaign, landing on Iwo Jima, and attacking the middle airstrip on Mt. Surabachi. He touches upon his hospitalization in Hawaii, occupation duty at Sasebo (Japan), and visiting Nagasaki after the atomic bomb. He comments on his return home and his involvement with both the Army and Navy Reserves.


Edson, Lieutenant Colonel Evans F. Carlson, Lt Col James Roosevelt and Lt Col Harry B. Liversedge, men who became legends in their time. The units: the 1st, 2d, 3d and 4th battalions of the Marine Raiders. These were the Marines who wore the red-and-blue patches with white skulls and the stars of the Southern Cross lighting their way. Their exploits were burned into America's memory in 1942 and 1943. Notes: Leatherneck; military.com. URL: http://www.military.com/forums/0,15240,81201,00.html

World War II Miscellaneous Coll. - AHA Section [Collection], 1942-1944. Descriptors: 1 box. Soldiers’ bodies, Disposition of- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Italy- Sicily; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; American Historical Association- Archives. Abstract: Contains the following types of materials: correspondence, clippings, reports, studies, books/manuals, poetry. Contains information pertaining to the following war: World War II. Contains information pertaining to the following military units and organizations: 35th Infantry, 25th Infantry Division, 157th Infantry, 45th Infantry Division, 9th General Hospital. General description of the collection: The American Historical Association Section collection papers include report of Japanese graves search in Guadalcanal by the 35th Infantry, a memoir of the Sicilian Campaign with the 45th Infantry Division, poem and miscellaneous papers of a soldier in the 9th General Hospital on Good Enough Island. Notes: General Info: Available on site only. Original or duplicate materials: U.S. Army Military History Institute, Carlisle Barracks, Carlisle, Pa. 17013-5008. Other Titles: World War II miscellaneous collection. AHA Section collection. American Historical Association Section collection. OCLC: 46961677.

WWII PT Boat Tossed Up from Ocean Floor. 2007. Associated Press. April 28, 2007. Abstract: Wellington, New Zealand - Wreckage from a World War II torpedo boat was tossed up from the sea in the Solomon Islands after a powerful 8.1 earthquake hit the area in early April, an official said Friday. Jay Waura of the National Disaster Management Office said the explosive-laden boat was exposed when reefs were pushed up three meters (10 feet) above sea level by the April 2 quake, which caused a devastating tsunami in the western Solomon Islands that killed 52 people... Waura said people on Rannonga Island showed his team the wreckage sitting on dry ground. “We were amazed by this finding, as previously this wreckage had long been sitting under the sea and rusting in peace without anyone knowing about it,” New Zealand Press Association quoted Waura as saying. Only the boat’s hull with its deadly cargo of explosives remained intact, he said. Waura said a Solomon Islands Police Force bomb disposal unit would be sent to the island to safely detonate the explosives. URL: http://www.military.com/NewsContent/0,13319,133903,00.html?wh=news

Wright, Carleton. 1912-1974. Carleton Wright Papers, 1912-1974. Descriptors: Naval battles- Pacific Ocean; World War, 1939-1945- Pacific Area; Guadalcanal, Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943. Abstract: The Carleton Wright papers contains correspondence between Japanese Navy Officers and United States Navy officers regarding their recollections of the Battle of Tassofaronga (1954); comments by Commander Winslow on the struggle for Guadalcanal (1962); certificates (1912-1942); drafts of articles about the culture and living conditions of the natives of the Marshall and Solomon Islands by Vice Admiral Wright (1944-1947); and newspaper clippings about Wright (1947-1971). There are also over 200 official U.S. Navy photographs of the living conditions of the natives of Faraulep, Fonepe, and Yap Islands (1947-1948); an Inspection Report of the Caroline and Marshall Islands (1946); reports on the fifth Battle of Savo of the Solomon Islands Campaign (Nov. 30, 1942); Report on Action Off Cape Esperance the Night of Nov. 3, 1942 from the Commander Task Force 67 to the Commander South Pacific Fleet (Nov. 30, 1942)). Notes: 2 cubic ft. (2 boxes); Named Corp: United States. Navy- Officers. Genre/Form:
Photographs. Geographic: Marshall Islands. Pacific Islands (Trust Territory); Notes: Bio/History: Carleton Wright (1892-1974) was Vice Admiral of the U.S. Navy. He graduated from the U.S. Naval Academy in 1912 as an Ensign. During World War I he was Executive Officer of the destroyer USS Jarvis which laid mines in the North Sea. During World War II he commanded the USS Augusta which operated on patrol duty in the Caribbean and Atlantic Ocean areas during 1941-1942. He was awarded the Navy Cross for heroism during the Battle of Tassofaronga in the Solomon Islands, and he also received the Bronze Star and the Legion of Merit. From 1946-1947 he was the General Inspector of the Pacific Fleet and Pacific Ocean areas and Deputy Commander of the Mariana Islands. He served as Administrator of the Military Government of the former Japanese Mandate in the Mariana, Caroline, and Marshall Islands. From 1947-1948 he was the Deputy High Commissioner of the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands. General Info: No finding aid available in repository. OCLC: 75965373.

Wukovits, John. Battle of Rennell Island: Setback in the Solomons- the Tactical Judgment of Admiral Robert C. Giffen may have Contributed to the Loss of the Cruiser USS Chicago. no. July 2007, Abstract: Lieutenant Commander Joji Higai could not have been more pleased in late January 1943. Touted by cohorts throughout the Imperial Japanese Navy as one of its best torpedo plane commanders, he had been handed a plum assignment that suited his reputation. He and his 15-plane unit from the 701st Air Group, in coordination with a second group of 16 Mitsubishi G4M torpedo bombers, were ordered to rise from Rabaul’s airfields, head southwest, and attack American naval and air forces in the Solomon Islands in one of World War II’s first nighttime torpedo attacks. Approximately 700 miles to the southeast, U.S. Navy Rear Adm. Robert C. “Ike” Giffen cautiously guided a conglomeration of carriers, cruisers, escort carriers and destroyers toward the Solomon Islands. His superior, Admiral William F. Halsey, after recharging the American defensive stand at Guadalcanal, hoped Giffen’s foray would be the first of many U.S. offensive actions in the region. For months the American Marines and Navy had been knocked on their heels by the victorious Japanese, but Halsey’s arrival infused renewed energy in the U.S. forces fighting in the region. A speedy series of American land and sea triumphs pushed the foe backward and gave a slim advantage to the United States. As 1943 dawned, Halsey optimistically said: “December had shown us faint signs that the tide was turning. By January no one could doubt that it had begun to run with us.” Halsey realized that victory in the Solomons had not yet been guaranteed and that he needed more reinforcements, additional ships and aircraft, and tons of ammunition. Nevertheless, he felt confident that U.S. forces were “strong enough to attempt a modest offensive.” He eagerly awaited developments as Giffen’s force steamed toward Guadalcanal. The action began unfolding in late January, when American aerial reconnaissance spotted indications of a Japanese buildup at their major port of Rabaul, on the island of New Britain, and at Buin, on the island of Bougainville. An increasing number of troop transports and freighters mingled with destroyers at those locations, and Japanese carriers and battleships appeared to be on the prowl north of Guadalcanal. Radio intelligence supported the theory that a Japanese move was imminent. Since the Japanese had repeatedly poured reinforcements into the struggle for the Solomons, American planners at Pearl Harbor concluded that this was yet another such operation. Halsey was under pressure to relieve the 2nd Marine Division, weary from months of vicious combat with crack Japanese land forces on Guadalcanal. The aggressive admiral jumped at an opportunity to combine two operations—he intended to send in troop transports to bring out the 2nd Marine Division while shielding the transports with as much naval power as he could gather in the South Pacific. By doing so, he hoped to entice the Japanese into a surface engagement. Notes: This article was written by John Wukovits and originally appeared in the
March 2000 issue of World War II magazine. URL:
http://www.historynet.com/magazines/world_war_2/3026046.html


Yetka, John, interviewee. Driscoll, John K. and Wisconsin Veterans Museum. 2006. Oral History Interview with John Yetka 2006. Descriptors: Veterans- Wisconsin- Madison; Sailors- Wisconsin- Milwaukee; World War, 1939-1945- Personal narratives, American; Tarawa, Battle of, Kiribati, 1943; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- Aleutian Islands; World War, 1939-1945- Campaigns- New Guinea; Ceramic recording. Abstract: John Yetka describes his personal experiences while in Navy service before and during World War II as engineer aboard the USS Louisville and the USS Cape Esperance and subsequent work experiences in Wisconsin following the war. Yetka, growing up in Milwaukee during the depression years, rose to senior foreman in Civilian Conservation Corps (CCC) before joining the Navy in 1939 (following in his brother’s footsteps). He attended basic training at the Great Lakes Training Center prior to assignment on the Louisville as an engineer in the “black gang.” Yetka touches upon USS Louisville’s good will cruise to Recife (Brazil) and Montevideo (Uruguay) in time to see the Graf Spee scuttled. Following a mission carrying gold and platinum bullion from South Africa to New York, Yetka’s brother came on board the Louisville prior to shipping out to the Philippines. Yetka reflects on providing escort for civilian transport ships from Philippines to American Samoa while not knowing that Pearl Harbor had been bombed. Yetka speaks of their surprise returning to Pearl Harbor and the people’s joy on seeing them. After a refit in the States, Yetka mentions his experience at the Battle of Guadalcanal, the Louisville being hit with a dud torpedo in the fire-room and standing watch as the torpedo bounced around while returning to Hawaii. He talks about Japanese activity in New Guinea and some boiler work he did for the British cruiser Sydney before the USS Louisville was sent to the Aleutian Islands to close the channel (sinking all Japanese ships and transports) and his thoughts on the Tarawa (Gilbert Islands) Assault. Yetka mentions his transfer to the USS Cape Esperance, encountering a storm that sunk escorts and destroyers, how USS Cape Esperance’s commander was a southern bully only thinking of Dixie, and Yetka’s reaction to the Japanese surrender. When on Mare Island, California, Yetka saw a sign on a civilian residence reading, “Sailors and dogs, keep off,” after which he mentions his impression of Americans at that time. After his discharge in 1945 at Walt Chamberlain Field (Minnesota), Yetka describes subsequent work with the Conservation Department, Goodyear Aircraft and General Motors where he gave the final approval for the mechanical portion of the guidance system used on the Apollo spacecraft. He concludes the interview mentioning additional anecdotes about the Louisville’s history, naval family life and his family. Notes: Transcript 7/8 ips; Named Person: Yetka, John, 1918-; Named Corp: United States. Navy- Civic operations. Louisville (CA: 28). Cape Esperance (CVE: 88). United States. Navy- Military life. Graf Speer. Geographic: Pearl Harbor (Hawaii)- Personal narratives, American.
Notes: Bio/History: Yetka (1918- ) born in Cloquet (Minnesota) and raised in Milwaukee, joined
the Navy in 1939 and served as an engineer with the Louisville during the Battle of Guadalcanal and Aleutian Islands. He was transferred to the Cape Esperance and made chief engineer before being discharged in 1945. Yetka worked in Arizona with Goodyear Aircraft before returning to Wisconsin and General Motors. Interviewed by John K. Driscoll on January 12, 2006 in Madison, Wisconsin. General Info: Copyright owned by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum/Forms part of: Wisconsin Veterans Oral History Project, conducted by the Wisconsin Veterans Museum. OCLC: 84911000.


Zemp, Hugo. 1990. Polyphonies Des Iles Salomon [Sound Recording]; Polyphonies of the Solomon Islands; Guadalcanal Et Savo; Guadalcanal and Savo. Paris: Chant du Monde: Distribution, Harmonia Mundi France. Chant du Monde LDX 274 663; Chant du Monde LDX 74 663; Chant du Monde CNR 274663, Descriptors: Mélanésiens; --; Solomon; Islands; Music; Folk; songs; Islanders. Abstract: Contents: Rihe mumu (2:31)- Toku (2:40)- Kikira (1:44)- Tei (2:19)- Kwe na bolo (2:14)- Mbumbusa (1:24)- Tselema (1:59)- Ratsi rope (1:37)- Sale mana oolo sale (1:21)- Manu mbulau (1:09)- Tsivi (1:23)- Tsomimbolo (1:09)- Kigho (:57)- Nginga ngere Keke (1:55)- Vinango (3:44)- Aiva lemeni tulo taolo (1:50)- Tabili boti (3:51)- Vevelugo (1:13)- Segela ragili (1:21)- Ovi udu goe (2:13)- Gelegele kuli (1:22)- Vararag (2:10)- Berceuse: Nyuba nunuli (2:08)- Buzubuzu (5:42)- Jejere dukuli (5:08). Notes: enregistrements de Hugo Zemp.1 sound disc: digital; 4 3/4 in. The 1st-7th works performed by an ensemble of pan pipes (called rihe mumu, also the title of the 1st piece), the 8th-14th and 19th-23rd by women’s voices, and the 15th-18th and 24th-25th by mixed voices. The 8th-14th and 21st-22nd pieces are rope (round dance) songs, the 15th-18th lalaa songs, the 19th-20th and 24th-25th sitting dance songs. The vocal parts of the pieces recorded in Guadalcanal either wordless or sung in Nginia; songs from Savo sung in Savosavo. Additional title on container: Guadalcanal et Savo = Guadalcanal and Savo. Compact disc.” New edition of [analog] record LDX 74663 [orig. issued in 1978 or 1979], revised and
augmented...”--Program notes, p. 31. Program notes by Hugo Zemp in French with English translation (32 p.: ill.) inserted in container. Field recordings made July 1974 in the village of Kakabona on Guadalcanal Island (1st-14th works), and Sept. 1974 in the villages of Panueli (15th-22nd, 24th-25th works), and Pagopago (23rd work) on Savo Island. Some of those recorded in Panueli performed with women singers from Sesepi and from Pagopago. Other Titles: Collection du Centre national de la recherche scientifique et du Musée de l’homme. OCLC Accesión Number: 007766573.


Zemp, Hugo and Centre national de la recherche scientifique (France). 1990. Polyphonies Des Iles Salomon. Paris: Chant du Monde. Volume: 1 sound disc, Descriptors: Folk music-Solomon Islands- Melanesian- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal- Music; Melanesians- Solomon Islands- Savo- Music; Folk songs, Melanesian- Solomon Islands- Savo; Folk songs, Melanesian-Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Women’s music- Solomon Islands- Savo; Women’s music- Solomon Islands- Guadalcanal; Musical recording (msr); LP recording (lps). Abstract: Musique de Guadalcanal. Ensemble de flûtes de Pan, rihe mumu. Rihe mumu (2:32); Toku (2:41); Kikira (1:45); Tei (2:20); Kwe na bos (2:16). Chants de femmes, rope. Ratsi rope (1:28); Sale mana oolo sale (1:21); Manu mbulau (1:10); Tsivi (1:23); Tsomimbolo (1:10); Kigho (0:58); Nginga ngere keke (1:55). Musique de Savo. Chant lalaa. Choeur mixte Vinango (3:48); Danse assise des femmes, vivi. Segela ragili (1:25); Ovi udu goe (2:16); Chant de femmes, rope Gelegele kuli (1:20); Berceuse, nyuba nunuli (2:10); Danse assise, silaru. Busubusu (5:40); Jejere dukuli (5:13). Notes: At head of title: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique. Additional title on container: Polyphonies of the Solomon Islands. Ethnographic, technical, and program notes in French and English by H. Zemp in container. Recorded July 1974, Guadalcanal, and Sept. 1974, Savo, by Hugo Zemp. Other Titles: Polyphonies of the Solomon Islands. Responsibility: enregistrements de Hugo Zemp. LDX 74 663; Chant du Monde. OCLC: 30588438.


Zimmerman, John L. United States; Marine Corps; History and Museums Division and Historical Branch. 1949, 1990. The Guadalcanal Campaign. Nashville, TeBattery Press. Descriptors: 189; Guadalcanal; Battle of, Solomon Islands, 1942-1943; United States. Marine Corps- History- World War, 1939-1945. Notes: Reprint. Originally published: Washington: Historical Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps, 1949. “Marine Corps monographs.” Includes bibliographical references (p. 170-172). Responsibility: John L. Zimmerman. “December 5, 1947. We struck at Guadalcanal to halt the advance of the Japanese. We did not know how strong he was, nor did we know his plans. We knew only that he was moving down the island chain and that he had to be stopped. We were as well trained and as well armed as time and our
peacetime experience allowed us to be. We needed combat to tell us how effective our training, our doctrines, and our weapons had been. We tested them against the enemy, and we found that they worked. From that moment in 1942, the tide turned, and the Japanese never again advanced.” -A.A. Vendegrift, General U.S. Marine Corps. ISBN: 0898391474; OCLC: 21576858; 66120337. URL: http://www.ibiblio.net/hyperwar/////USMC/USMC-M-Guadalcanal.html#4

USMC Photo. “The temporary resting place of a Marine killed in the fighting at Lunga Point is shown here. The grave marker was erected by his friends. The Marine's remains were later removed to the division cemetery on Guadalcanal, and further reburial at war's end either in his hometown or the Punchbowl National Cemetery in Hawaii with the honors due a fallen hero.” Shaw, Henry I. First Offensive.